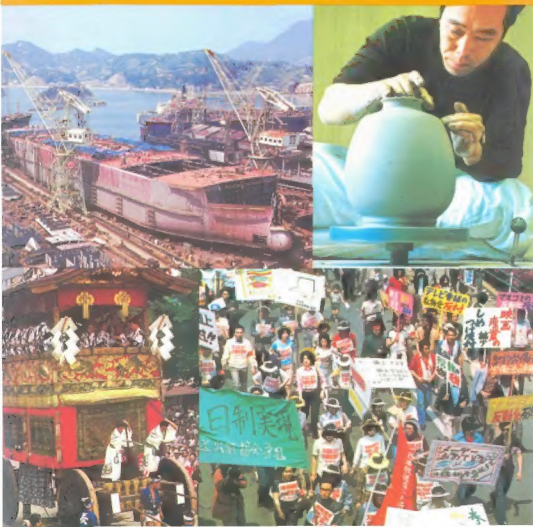


This textbook may not be reproduced in whole or part in any way for any purpose whatsoever without the express written permission of the publisher.

374 221

ISBN4-05-151308-4 C0081 P3600E



# JAPANESE FOR TODAY

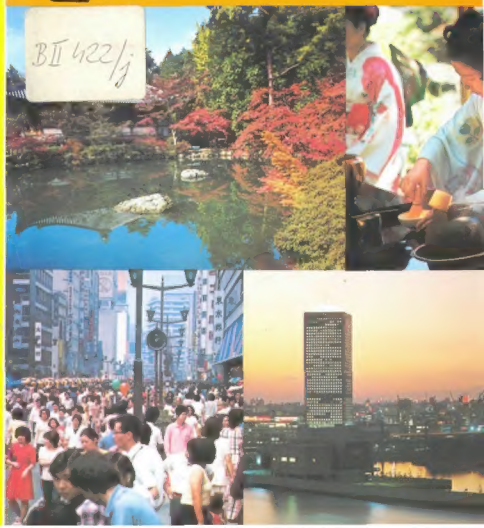
GAKKEN

# JAPANESE FOR TODAY

あたらしい日本語



Gakken



# JAPANESE FOR TODAY

"It seems clear to me that keen and competent students will everywhere welcome such a fine textbook."

(John B. Hanson-Lowe in *The Japan Times*)

"For foreign students... who wish to acquire an everyday-life conversational proficiency as well as the ability to read Japanese, JAPANESE FOR TODAY... is just the thing."

(*Asahi Evening News*)

"If you're in the market for a language course to do at your own speed—check out Gakken's latest."

(Paul Bryant in *Mainichi Daily News*)

"...undoubtedly one of the best Japanese language texts on the market and probably the easiest to use of any basic text now available."

(John McCaleb in *The Daily Yomiuri*)

This new text has been developed by specialists at the Special Intensive Course in Japanese for Foreign Students of the Osaka University of Foreign Studies, one of Japan's leading centers for language research.

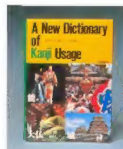
This comprehensive approach based upon long years of practical experience lays the foundations for active participation in Japanese life. The student who completes this course will have a firm grasp on contemporary written and spoken Japanese and will be able to conduct intelligent conversations as well as daily trivia.

The thirty lessons and eight tapes work together as an integrated whole to introduce the many diverse aspects of Japan today in "living" language.

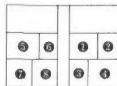
¥3,600 (in Japan) 日本国内定価 3,600円  
(本体 3,496円)

# A NEW DICTIONARY OF KANJI USAGE

Designed especially for the foreign student, this dictionary gives pronunciations, meanings, variant writings, syntactic functions, and 12,500 usage examples for the 2,000 most-important *kanji* arranged in order of modern usage frequency and cross-indexed by readings, English meanings, and stroke count for added convenience. Profuse notes make this an encyclopedic reference work for every student of Japanese language and culture.



This hardbound 504-page 21.6×15 cm (8½×6") book includes nearly 80 pages of indices and reference material.



Captions:

1 Autumn in Japan (Daigo-ji) 2 Outside tea ceremony (courtesy of DANDY PHOTO) 3 Pedestrian mall 4 Evening skyline in Tokyo (BONCOLOR PHOTO AGENCY) 5 Shipbuilding yard 6 Potter at work 7 Kyoto's Gion Festival 8 May Day demonstration

Gakken Co., Ltd./Publishers  
Tokyo, Japan

Printed in Japan

# Japanese Syllabary Chart

Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana
a	あ	A	ka	か	カ	sa	さ	サ	ta	た	タ	na	な	ナ	ha		
i	い	I	ki	き	キ	shi	し	シ	chi	ち	チ	ni	に	ニ	hi		
u	う	U	ku	く	ク	su	す	ス	tsu	つ	ツ	nu	ぬ	ヌ	fu		
e	え	E	ke	け	ケ	se	せ	セ	te	て	テ	ne	ね	ネ	he		
o	お	O	ko	こ	コ	so	そ	ソ	to	と	ト	no	の	ノ	ho		
ya	や	Y	kya	きゃ	キャ	sha	しゃ	シャ	cha	ちゃ	チャ	nya	にゃ	ニャ	hya		
yu	ゆ	Y	kyu	きゅ	キュ	shu	しゅ	シュ	chu	ちゅ	チュ	nyu	にゅ	ニュ	hyu		
yo	よ	Y	kyo	きょ	キョ	sho	しょ	ショ	cho	ちょ	チョ	nyo	にょ	ニョ	hyo		

		ga	が	ガ	za	ざ	ザ	da	だ	ダ				ba	
		gi	ぎ	ギ	ji	じ	ジ	ji	ぢ	ヂ				bi	
		gu	ぐ	グ	zu	ず	ズ	zu	づ	ヅ				bu	
		ge	げ	ゲ	ze	ぜ	ゼ	de	で	デ				be	
		go	ご	ゴ	zo	ぞ	ゾ	do	ど	ド				bo	
		gya	ぎゃ	ギャ	ja	じゃ	ジャ							bya	
		gyu	ぎゅ	ギュ	ju	じゅ	ジュ							byu	
		gyo	ぎょ	ギョ	jo	じょ	ジョ							byo	

Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana
は	ハ				ma	ま	マ	ra	ら	ラ	wa	わ	ワ	n	ん	ン
ひ	ヒ				mi	み	ミ	ri	り	リ						
ふ	フ				mu	む	ム	ru	る	ル						
へ	ヘ				me	め	メ	re	れ	レ						
ほ	ホ				mo	も	モ	ro	ろ	ロ	o	を	ヲ			
ひゃ	ヒャ				mya	みゃ	ミャ	rya	りゃ	リャ						
ひゅ	ヒュ				myu	みゅ	ミュ	ryu	りゅ	リュ						
ひょ	ヒョ				myo	みょ	ミョ	ryo	りょ	リョ						

ば	バ	pa	ぱ	パ												
び	ビ	pi	ぴ	ピ												
ぶ	ブ	pu	ぷ	プ												
べ	ベ	pe	ぺ	ペ												
ぼ	ボ	po	ぽ	ポ												
びゃ	ビャ	pya	ぴゃ	ピャ												
びゅ	ビュ	pyu	ぴゅ	ピュ												
びょ	ビョ	pyo	ぴょ	ピョ												

## Notes to the chart:

- This chart is also a nearly complete table of current Japanese syllable sounds, as well as an indispensable aid used by native-speaker students of the language studying traditional Japanese grammar.
- This chart is important in assisting the student using dictionaries and encyclopedias, since their entries are all in this same syllabic "alphabetical" order of the top five sounds, with the one exception that the ya group comes between the ma group and the ra group, and the finding of an entry is extremely chancy unless the student has memorized this order.
- Although ぢ(ヂ) and づ(ヅ) have the same sound values as じ(ジ) and ず(ズ) respectively, writing conventions limit their use to the following situations.

- The euphonic change in the initial consonant of the second element in a compound word, as when はな and ち join to make はなぢ (nosebleed) or ゆう and つき join to make ゆうつき (evening moon).
  - Repetition of the same sound, as in ちぢみ (crêpe) or つづく (to continue).
- The "h" in the ha and hya groups is thought to have been a "p" in proto-Japanese. Because of this, the Japanese "h" frequently changes to a "p" or a "p," this last being given the special name of semi-sonant. Examples are in counting cylindrical things, which begins (1) ip-pon, (2) ni-hon, and (3) san-bon, or in combining stone (ishi) with bridge (hashi) to make a stone bridge (ishi-bashi).
  - For reference, please see the relevant sections of the Introduction.

## Organization of the Lessons

Each of the thirty lessons consists of the following sections (twelve pages).

- (1) **Presentation** (1st & 2nd pages): The presentation of new sentence patterns in general spoken Japanese. This is mostly in the normal polite style, except in the monolog parts where the plain style is used. The instructor is strongly urged to present the patterns orally, using whatever visual aids are available, and *not* to begin a lesson by just having the student read the presentation.
- The romanized version of the Presentation is given on the 3rd page and the English translation on the 4th page.
- (2) **Grammatical explanations** for self-study or review (5th & 6th pages).
- (3) **Exercises** (7th & 8th pages): These exercises should also be conducted orally. Model answers to the Exercise questions are given on the 4th page.
- (4) **Conversation** (9th & 10th pages): This section introduces a variety of colloquial expressions, conversational phrases, and familiar and polite styles used between people in various relationships and situations. The English translation (on the inner sides of the pages) is not a word-by-word or sentence-by-sentence translation, but is intended to give the meaning of the total conversation.
- (5) **Reading** (11th page): This introduces Japanese as it is written. Beginning with Lesson 8, the normal written style is used, although phrases are separated with spaces until Lesson 20 to make it easier for the beginner to read. Here too, the English translation is to give the sense of the passage (12th page).

All new words are footnoted as they appear in each section. Verbs and Adjectives are given in their dictionary forms.

## Abbreviations and Notations:

N	Noun	Adv	Adverb
Nv	Nouns which can be used as Verb bases	P	Particle
	e.g. benkyō (Nv) → 'study'	Conj	Conjunction
	--(benkyō-suru) (V) 'to study'	PreN	Prenoun
Na	'na Adjective'	Pref.	Prefix
A	'i Adjective'	Suf.	Suffix
	(All A's are indicated by 'i' in the footnotes.)	Count.	Counter (See § 14)
V	Verb	onomat	Onomatopoeic words
Vi	Intransitive Verb	Cph	Conversational phrase
Vt	Transitive Verb (which takes a Direct Object)	(m)	male
	(A Verb is specified as Vi or Vt only when it has a formally related counterpart: e.g. hajimaru (Vi) 'begin'; hajimeru (Vt) 'begin')	(f)	female
--u	1st Group Verb (See § 42)	NB	(nota bene) Note well.
--ru	2nd Group Verb (See § 42)	Ex. or e.g.	example
		cf.	related expressions
		=	synonyms, or variants of the same word
		←	derived from
		/	or

## CONTENTS

Introduction	5
第1課 これはさくらです。	10
§ 1 N wa N desu. § 2 kore, sore, are, dore § 3 nan, dare, doko § 4 N no N	
Conversation: KONNICHI WA! Reading: ひらがな—1	
第2課 わたしたちの工場	22
§ 5 kono, sono, etc. § 6 N wa Adj desu. § 7 Adj+N § 8 konna, sonna, etc.	
§ 9 konna-ni, sonna-ni, etc.; kō, sō, etc. § 10 Adv § 11 ne, yo	
Conversation: KOKO WA DOKO? Reading: ひらがな—2	
第3課 へやの中	34
§ 12 arimasu, imasu § 13 ue, shita, etc. § 14 How to count § 15 N to/ya N	
Conversation: ANATA NO SHUMI WA? Reading: カタカナ	
第4課 わたし的一天	46
§ 16 V-masu § 17 o § 18 ni § 19 e § 20 kara, made § 21 de § 22 Conj § 23 goro, hodo, gurai	
Conversation: IKURA? Reading: あなたとわたし	
第5課 食堂で	58
§ 24 V-mashita § 25 Adv § 26 o § 27 ni § 28 o § 29 de § 30 V (Conj) as N	
Conversation: TSUKAREMASU! Reading: 日本	
第6課 ハイキング	70
§ 31 N deshita § 32 A-katta desu § 33 to § 34 ...ni ikimasu § 35 Two uses of Adj § 36 ga, kara	
Conversation: OMOSHIROKATTA? Reading: 日本の行事—1	
第7課 公園	82
§ 37 V-te-imasu § 38 V-te, ... § 39 V-tari § 40 V-te kara	
Conversation: GOMEN-KUDASAI Reading: 日本の行事—2	
第8課 夏休みの日記	94
§ 41 Polite vs. Plain style § 42 Conjugation of V (1st, 2nd, & 3rd Groups)	
Conversation: GENKI KAI? Reading: 日本の着物	
第9課 町の中	106
§ 43 N o/V-te kudasai. § 44 -nasai § 45 -nakereba narimasen § 46 -tewa ikemasen	
§ 47 -temo ii desu § 48 -ta hō ga ii desu § 49 -mashō (ka?)	
Conversation: OISHII Reading: 産業—1	
第10課 夏の手紙	118
§ 50 ...toki § 51 ...aida § 52 V-nagara § 53 V-ta mama § 54 A-kute, etc.	
Conversation: II TENKI DESU NE Reading: 日本の歴史—1	
第11課 教室で	130
§ 55 ...to iimasu § 56 ...to omoimasu § 57 X o Y to iimasu § 58 Y to iu X	
Conversation: SHUPPATSU-SHIMASU Reading: マスコット	
第12課 東京・京都・大阪	142
§ 59 Comparative § 60 Superlative § 61 de (Scope) § 62 onaji, hodo, bai, etc.	
Conversation: RYOKAN WA ARIMASU KA? Reading: 教育	
第13課 日本語の勉強	154
§ 63 hoshii desu, V-tai desu § 64 suki/kirai desu § 65 ...no, wa, kai?, dai?	
Conversation: OÔ SHIMASHITA? Reading: 手紙	
第14課 姉と音楽	166
§ 66 dekimasu, jōzu/heta/toku/nigate desu § 67 V (Dict. form)+koto	
Conversation: § 1 = ¥? Reading: 産業—2	

第15課 ドライブ	178
§ 68 N wa/niwa N ga arimasu § 69 V-ta koto ga arimasu § 70 N wa N ga Adj	
Conversation: ODOROKIMASHITA! Reading: 日本の文字	
第16課 老人問題	190
§ 71 V-(r)areru (Passive) § 72 V-(s)aseru (Causative)	
Conversation: KARA-TEREBI? Reading: 日本の歴史—2	
第17課 銀婚式	202
§ 73 ageru, morau, kureru (Giving and Receiving) § 74 V-te-agemasu, etc.	
Conversation: KIREI DESU NE! Reading: 日本人	
第18課 論文を書く	214
Will, Intent: § 75 V-masu § 76 V (ô/yô) to omoimasu § 77 tsumori § 78 Summary	
Conversation: HIKKOSU TSUMORI Reading: 日本の文学—1	
第19課 彼のこと	226
§ 79 ...deshô § 80 ...kamo shiremasen § 81 ...ni chigai arimasen	
Conversation: DÔZO KOCHIRA E Reading: 経済生活	
第20課 わたしのふるさと	238
§ 82 Potential forms § 83 Spontaneous forms	
Conversation: SOROMASHITA KA? Reading: 日本の芸術	
第21課 久しぶりの訪問	250
§ 84 V-te-aru § 85 V-te-oku § 86 V-te-iku § 87 V-te-kuru § 88 V-te-shimau § 89 V-te-miru	
Conversation: NOKOSHITE-OKITAI Reading: 企業	
第22課 冬の手紙	262
§ 90 A-ku/Na-ni (Adv) § 91 A-ku as N § 92 Onomatopoeia § 93 Idiomatic onomatopoeia	
Conversation: AME GA YAMIMASHITA Reading: 都市問題	
第23課 文章	274
Conditionals: § 94 -tara § 95 -reba § 96 -to § 97 Comparison	
Conversation: JIKO GA OKOREBA... Reading: 日本の芸術	
第24課 広告・宣伝・コマーシャル	286
§ 98 Sentence as a Noun modifier § 99 ... (ka dō) ka...	
Conversation: MOKUTEKI WA? Reading: 公告	
第25課 映画を見る	298
§ 100 Use of koto § 101 Use of no	
Conversation: MOSHI-MOSHI Reading: 日本の歴史—3	
第26課 ステレオを買う	310
§ 102 tokoro § 103 tama § 104 hodo § 105 tôri § 106 -tte	
Conversation: WASSHOI, WASSHOI! Reading: 日本の政治	
第27課 魚つり	322
§ 107 hazu § 108 wake § 109 noni	
Conversation: IRASSHAIMASE Reading: 日本の文学—2	
第28課 日本研究	334
§ 110 (furi)-sô desu § 111 (furu) sô desu § 112 rashii § 113 yô	
Conversation: GO-SHINPAI NE... Reading: 日本の宗教	
第29課 後援	346
§ 114 (ki, etc.) ga suru § 115 (katashi, etc.) o shite-iru § 116 Omission § 117 N wa	
N desu (Condensed Predicate)	
Conversation: YORU NI NARUTO... Reading: 日本の文学—3	
第30課 先生への電話	358
§ 118 Honorific forms § 119 Humble forms § 120 Additional remark	
Conversation: MOCHIRON YOROKONDE... Reading: はぎの露—親氏物語から—	
Appendix	370
Index	374

## INTRODUCTION

### I. Pronunciation

#### 1. Syllables

Japanese syllables are "open syllables" and almost always end in a vowel. Thus "hana" is syllabicated as ha-na, and "paipu" as pa-i-pu. At the same time, the language is also isochronous so that all syllables are the same sound duration. In all, there are seven kinds of syllables divisible into two groups.

Group	Kind	Example
i. General	i-i Consonant + vowel (most common)	"ka"
	i-ii Consonant + semi-vowel + vowel	"kya"
	i-iii Semi-vowel + vowel	"yu" or "wa"
	i-iv Vowel	"a"
ii. Special (Syllabics)	ii-i Special nasal syllabic	"N" of "saN"
	ii-ii Unpronounced consonant	"Q" of "iQpon"
	ii-iii Special syllabic for the second syllable of an extended vowel	"V" of "okaVsan"

Special mention should be made, however, that i-ii takes only "y" as its semi-vowel and only "a," "o," or "u" as its vowel, while in i-i "t" and "d" appear only before "e," "a," or "o." The syllabics of Group ii can never be pronounced alone, occurring only within or at the end of multisyllabic words and never at the beginning of a word.

#### 2. Sounds

Contemporary Japanese phonemes include 14 consonants, 2 semi-vowels, and 5 vowels.

- Consonants: k, g; p, b; t, d; c, z; s; r; h; m, n, ŋ
- Semi-vowels: y, w
- Vowels: a, e, i, o, u

These are pronounced as shown below.

#### (A) Letters (representing consonants)

- |    |  |
|----|--|
| b  | [b]  |
| ch | [tʃ] as in the English "choice"  |
| d  | [d]  |
| f  | a bi-labial voiceless fricative, not the English labio-dental fricative, used only in "fu" |
| g  | [g] when it begins a word and [ŋ] when it is not the initial letter                        |
| h  | [h], but this always becomes "f" before the vowel "u"                                      |
| j  | as in the English "join"   |
| k  | [k]  |

- m [m] and always followed by a vowel  
 n the common nasal [n] and [m] before [p], [b], or [m] and the syllabic "N" as in "Ki-n-e-n"  
 p [p]  
 r a sound peculiar to Japanese pronounced with the tip of the tongue moving midway in the mouth but not rolled. If the tongue is given slightly more tension, this sound easily becomes "d." It is like neither "r" nor "l" in English but is sort of between the two, like the Spanish "r" in "pero."  
 s [s] although this is written "sh" before the vowel "i"  
 sh like the English "sh" unstressed  
 t [t]  
 ts like the English voiceless affricate [ts] as in "cats" and always followed by the vowel "u"  
 z the voiced affricate [dz] as in the English "words" and not the "z" of the English "zoo"

NB: Unvoiced consonants usually change to voiced when they come at the beginning of the second element of compound words. In such cases, "h" often changes to "p" or "b." Ex. "yama" + "sakura" → "yama-zakura"; "ishi" + "hashi" → "ishi-bashi"

#### (B) Letters (representing semi-vowels)

- w [w] and always followed by the vowel "a"  
 y as in the English "yard"

#### (C) Letters (representing vowels)

- a as in the English "father"  
 e as in the French "être"  
 i as in the English "see"  
 o as in the English "comb"  
 u as in the English "doodling" but of shorter duration

### 3. Syllabics

"N," "Q," and "V" are called "syllabics" because they constitute syllables even though they are not vowels.

- "N" is a special nasal sound written as "n" as in "pa-n" and "sa-n-po."
- "Q" is the special one-syllable pause represented in Japanese *kana* by the small ゃ or ッ. In romanization, this is usually shown by doubling the consonant which follows it, as in "Nippon" and "Kitte."
- "V" is the second syllable of a prolonged or extended vowel. In Japanese, vowels can be either long or short, although this is not in the same sense as English "long" and "short" vowels. Rather, Japanese long vowels are double-length, two-syllable vowels, such as in To-o-kyo-o or hi-i-ta. These long vowels are indicated either by putting a line over the vowel (Tōkyō) or by writing the vowel twice (hiita).

### 4. Devocalization of Vowels

After a voiceless sound or between two voiceless sounds, the inaccentuated and narrow vowels "i" and "u" become voiceless, being pronounced very weakly as in "kusā," "hitō" and "āki."

### 5. Accent

The Japanese language has pitch accent, or musical accent, which is quite different from the stress accent in English, German, and other European languages, as well as some Asian languages. While stress accent pronounces the syllable louder, Japanese pitch accent pronounces the accentuated syllable of an independent word (not the particles or auxiliary verbs) at a higher pitch than the other syllables. In addition, the accentuated syllable should be pronounced at the same pitch throughout.

As a rule, n-syllable words can be accented in n+1 ways. For example, Japanese words of four syllables can be classified into five types according to accent pattern.

#### i. low-high-high-high followed by high



#### ii. low-high-high-high followed by low



#### iii. low-high-high-low followed by low



#### iv. low-high-low-low followed by low



#### v. high-low-low-low followed by low



Each word has only one accent summit, although the location of this peak depends upon the word.

Japanese accent today functions more to show the unity of words than to distinguish the meanings of words which sound the same (homonyms).

## II. Writing

### 1. General

i) Orthography in the European sense of the term is virtually non-existent in Japan, and there is very little effort made to adhere to any set standard. Thus "norikumi-in" (crew member) may be written のりくみいん, 乗り組み員, 乗組員, のりくみ員, or 乗組員 and all are accepted as correct, each with its own rationale. Nevertheless, there is a clearly discernible trend toward orthography and the schools teach 乗組員 as "standard." Regardless, there is still little popular concern with orthography and it would be incorrect to brand different writings of the same word as deviant or erroneous.

ii) This neglect of orthography comes from the fact that Japanese everyday writing uses a combination of *kanji* and *kana* (*hiragana* and *katakana*) with even some foreign writing occasionally mixed in.

Because the early Japanese encountered great difficulties in trying to express perfectly their polysyllabic Japanese language with Chinese-origin *kanji*, at once ideographic and phonetic, they devised *kanji* cursive forms (*hiragana*) and abbreviations (*katakana*) as phonetic symbols suited to the open-syllable Japanese. In so doing, *kanji* was retained primarily for the semantemes (such as the word roots

and stems) while the *kana* phonetics were used mainly for such morphemes as endings, derived parts, fixations, and particles.

For example, 起きる and 起こす have the same 起 *kanji* stems but differ in their *kana* endings, the former being "okiru" meaning to get up (Vi) and the latter "okosu" meaning to wake (Vt). By the same token, the *kanji* 上 meaning "up" is used in 上がる (ascend), 上げる (raise), and 上る (climb).

iii) There is no established custom of separating words and/or phrases in writing.

iv) There is no system of capital letters and small letters.

v) Although the European style of writing horizontally from left to right, top to bottom, has recently come into partial use, the traditional form is still to write vertically from top to bottom, right to left.

## 2. Kanji

i) Although there are said to be some 48,000 *kanji* characters in existence, only about 5,000 to 10,000 are commonly used. After World War II, the Japanese Government designated 1,850 basic characters as "Toyo *kanji*" and these are the only ones used in textbooks and official writings. Of these 1,850 *Toyo kanji*, 996 particularly basic characters have been selected for inclusion in the elementary school curriculum. Including these, this text uses the approximately 1,000 most commonly used characters according to recent statistical surveys.

ii) Each *kanji* usually has at least two readings. One is the "on" reading adapted from the ancient Chinese pronunciation and the other is the "kun" reading of the character's meaning in Japanese. It also frequently happens that a *kanji* has two or more "on" readings and/or "kun" readings, and thus the many different readings that may be given for a single character are all correct.

iii) As already noted, *kanji* are used for the roots of nouns, verbs, and adjectives. Naturally enough, words borrowed from the Chinese and given their "on" readings are, in principle, written in *kanji*.

## 3. Hiragana

*Hiragana* is used for Japanese words to which *kanji* cannot be easily fitted, words of sound symbolism, endings of words which conjugate, such as verbs and adjectives, particles, auxiliary verbs, and the like. In addition, pronouns, adverbs, conjunctions, and names of plants and animals are better written in *hiragana* (such as びくびく, わたしたち, and きつね).

## 4. Katakana

Foreign words, other than *kanji*, and onomatopoeia are written in *katakana* (such as ビール and ワンワン).

## 5. Roman Script

Although Western letters are not generally used, they have come into use recently for certain words such as units of measure and abbreviations. Examples are kg, Tel, PR, CM, SOS, Yシャツ, and PCB.

## 6. Notations

i. Sonant (ga, za, da, ba)

This is shown by \* to the upper right of the *kana* phonetic.

ii. Semi-sonant (pa)

This is shown by ° to the upper right of the *kana* phonetic.

iii. Reduplication

a. The mark ˘ indicates repetition of one syllabary.

b. The mark ˆ indicates repetition of the *kanji* character.

## III. Romanization

1. The romanization system adopted for transliteration in this text is the *Hyojun-shiki* (standard system), which is an adaptation of the Hepburn system.

2. The system used here has the following features.

i. Prolonged vowels are indicated by an ˉ over the vowel. However, the long "e" in all Chinese-origin words has been written "ei" and the long "i" of Japanese words as "ii."

ii. The syllabic "Q" has been shown by doubling the consonantal letter of words, such as in kitte (stamp) and kippu (ticket). However, the doubling of "ch," "sh," and "ts" have been written as "tch," "ssh," and "tts" respectively.

iii. The syllabic "N" has been consistently shown by "n" regardless of its actual sound value in the word.

iv. The hyphen has been adopted mainly to show the word structure of compound words.

## IV. Outline of the Sentence Structure

1. Although the sentence structure of Japanese is strikingly different from that of English, most of the "Content words" that make up a sentence can be categorized in roughly the same way as in English: Nouns (hon 'book'), Adjectives (atsui 'hot'), Verbs (yomu 'read'), Adverbs (yukkuri 'slowly'), Conjunctions, etc.

The "Function words," however, require special attention and more careful study: (1) Particles (ga, o, ni, kara), most of which are postposed to Nouns and indicate their grammatical relationships within the sentence; (2) Auxiliaries, which are postposed to Verbs or Adjectives to show negative, passive, causative, progressive, and so on.

2. The core of the sentence is the Predicate, which is always placed at the end of the sentence. Predicates are of three types: Verbal, Adjectival, and Nominal. The Nominal Predicate consists of a Noun and the Copula *desu* or its variants.

Preceding the Predicate are 'Noun+Particle' phrases which indicate Topic, Subject, Object, Location, Time, etc. These non-Predicate phrases may appear in any order and may be omitted whenever they are not necessary to understanding. When a word or a clause is modified by another word or clause, the modifier always precedes what it modifies.

3. The Predicate is inflected (conjugated) for Tense and Mood (Declarative, Imperative, Conditional, Volitional, etc.), all in at least the two styles of "Plain" and "Polite."

# 第 1 課

これは さくらです

TAPE  
No. 1  
Side 1

① これは <sup>1</sup>花<sup>2</sup>です。 <sup>3</sup>さくら<sup>4</sup>です。

それは <sup>5</sup>も<sup>6</sup>です。

あれは <sup>7</sup>ば<sup>8</sup>ら<sup>9</sup>です。

② これは <sup>10</sup>なん<sup>11</sup>ですか。

—それは <sup>12</sup>はな<sup>13</sup>です。

それは <sup>14</sup>にっぽん<sup>15</sup> <sup>16</sup>はな<sup>17</sup>です。

さくらの <sup>18</sup>はな<sup>19</sup>です。

それも <sup>20</sup>さくら<sup>21</sup>の <sup>22</sup>はな<sup>23</sup>ですか。

—はい、 <sup>24</sup>そう<sup>25</sup>です。

あれも <sup>26</sup>さくら<sup>27</sup>ですか。

—いいえ、 <sup>28</sup>あれは <sup>29</sup>さくら<sup>30</sup>ではありません。

あれは <sup>31</sup>ば<sup>32</sup>ら<sup>33</sup>です。

あれは <sup>34</sup>さくら<sup>35</sup>ですか、 <sup>36</sup>も<sup>37</sup>も<sup>38</sup>ですか。

—あれは <sup>39</sup>さくら<sup>40</sup>です。



## 語句

- 1 kore this See §2  
2 wa (a topic marker) See §1  
3 hana blossom, flower  
4 desu be See §1  
5 sakura cherry  
6 sore that, it See §2  
7 momo peach  
8 are that See §2  
9 bara rose  
10 nan=nani what See §3  
11 ka (a question marker) See §1  
12 Nippon Japan (Japanese say both "Nippon" and "Nihon." They are pronunciation variants of the same word.)

- 13 no of See §4  
14 mo also, too See §1  
15 Hai Yes  
16 sô so See §1  
17 iie No  
18 dawa arimasen be not See §1  
19 watashi I 20 buraun 'Brown'  
21 gakusei student  
22 anata you (sing.)  
23 kaisha-in company employee  
24 namae name  
25 imai (a family name)  
26 Nippon-jin Japanese (person)

③ わたしは <sup>19</sup>ブラウン<sup>20</sup>です。 <sup>21</sup>学生<sup>22</sup>です。

あなたも <sup>23</sup>学生<sup>24</sup>ですか。

—いいえ、 <sup>25</sup>そう<sup>26</sup>ではありません。 わたしは <sup>27</sup>かいしゃいん<sup>28</sup>です。 <sup>29</sup>会社員<sup>30</sup>です。

名まえは <sup>31</sup>いま<sup>32</sup>井<sup>33</sup>です。 <sup>34</sup>にっぽんじん<sup>35</sup>です。 <sup>36</sup>日本人<sup>37</sup>です。

彼女は <sup>38</sup>だ<sup>39</sup>れ<sup>40</sup>ですか。

彼女は <sup>41</sup>あんな<sup>42</sup>です。 <sup>43</sup>わたしの <sup>44</sup>いもうと<sup>45</sup>です。 <sup>46</sup>妹<sup>47</sup>です。

—かれは <sup>48</sup>だ<sup>49</sup>れ<sup>50</sup>ですか。

かれは <sup>51</sup>トム<sup>52</sup>です。 <sup>53</sup>わたしの <sup>54</sup>いとこ<sup>55</sup>です。 <sup>56</sup>いとこ<sup>57</sup>です。

—あなたがたは <sup>58</sup>カナダ<sup>59</sup>の <sup>60</sup>ひと<sup>61</sup>ですか。 <sup>62</sup>ひと<sup>63</sup>ですか。

はい、 <sup>64</sup>わたしたち<sup>65</sup>は <sup>66</sup>カナダ<sup>67</sup>人<sup>68</sup>です。 <sup>69</sup>カナダ<sup>70</sup>人<sup>71</sup>です。

\* \* \*

④ ここは <sup>39</sup>どこ<sup>40</sup>ですか。

—ここは <sup>41</sup>ぎんこう<sup>42</sup>です。 <sup>43</sup>銀行<sup>44</sup>です。

郵便局は <sup>45</sup>どこ<sup>46</sup>ですか。

—郵便局は <sup>47</sup>あそこ<sup>48</sup>です。 <sup>49</sup>あそこ<sup>50</sup>です。

切手の <sup>51</sup>売り場<sup>52</sup>は <sup>53</sup>ここ<sup>54</sup>ですか。 <sup>55</sup>ここ<sup>56</sup>ですか。

—いいえ、 <sup>57</sup>ここ<sup>58</sup>ではありません。 <sup>59</sup>そこ<sup>60</sup>です。 <sup>61</sup>そこ<sup>62</sup>です。



- jin people of (nationality)  
27 kanojo she  
28 dare who See §3  
29 Anna 'Anna'  
30 imôto younger sister  
31 kare he 32 Tomu 'Tom'  
33 itoko cousin  
34 anata-gata you (pl.)  
-gata (Plural Suf. for Human N;  
Polite)  
35 Kanada 'Canada'  
36 hito man, person  
37 watashi-tachi we  
-tachi (Plural Suf. for Animate N)

- 38 Kanada-jin Canadian (person)  
39 koko here See §2  
40 doko where See §2, §3  
41 ginkô bank  
42 yûbin-kyoku post office  
yûbin mail  
-kyoku bureau  
43 asoko over there See §2  
44 kitta postage stamp  
45 uri-ba place for selling  
uri ←-uru (sell) -ba place  
46 soko there See §2



# Dai 1-ka

## Kore wa sakura desu.

- 1 Kore wa hana desu. Sakura desu. Sore wa momo desu. Are wa bara desu.
- 2 Kore wa nan desu ka?  
—Sore wa hana desu. Sore wa Nippon no hana desu. Sakura no hana desu.  
Sore mo sakura no hana desu ka?  
—Hai, sō desu.  
Are mo sakura desu ka?  
—Iie, are wa sakura dewa arimasen. Are wa bara desu.  
Are wa sakura desu ka, momo desu ka?  
—Are wa sakura desu.
- 3 Watashi wa *Buraun* desu. Gakusei desu. Anata mo gakusei desu ka?  
—Iie, sō dewa arimasen. Watashi wa kaisha-in desu. Namae wa Imai desu. Nippon-jin desu. Kanojo wa dare desu ka?  
Kanojo wa *Anna* desu. Watashi no imōto desu.  
—Kare wa dare desu ka?  
Kare wa *Tomu* desu. Watashi no itoko desu.  
—Anata-gata wa *Kanada* no hito desu ka?  
Hai, watashi-tachi wa *Kanada-jin* desu.
- 4 Koko wa doko desu ka?  
—Koko wa ginkō desu.  
Yūbin-kyoku wa doko desu ka?  
—Yūbin-kyoku wa asoko desu.  
Kitte no uri-ba wa koko desu ka?  
—Iie, koko dewa arimasen. Soko desu.

# Lesson 1

## This is a cherry blossom.

- 1 This is a flower. This is a cherry blossom. That is a peach blossom. That is a rose.
- 2 What is this?  
—It is a flower. It is a Japanese flower. It is a cherry blossom.  
Is that a cherry blossom too?  
—Yes, it is.  
Is that a cherry blossom too?  
—No, it is not a cherry blossom. It is a rose.  
Is that a cherry blossom or a peach blossom?  
—It is a cherry blossom.
- 3 My name is Brown. I am a student. Are you a student too?  
—No, I am not. I am a company employee. My name is Imai.  
I am a Japanese. Who is she?  
She is Anna. She is my younger sister.  
—Who is he?  
He is Tom. He is my cousin.  
—Are you Canadians?  
Yes, we are Canadians.
- 4 What is this place?  
—It is a bank.  
Where is the post office?  
—It is over there.  
Is this the counter for postage stamps?  
—No, it is not. It is over there.



### ANSWERS (pp. 16, 17)

- I. (C) 1. Kore wa *Tomu* no *kanara* desu. 2. Kore wa *anata* no *tabako* desu. 3. Kore wa *kanojo* no *kasa* desu. 4. Kore wa *watashi* no *megane* desu. 5. Kore wa *imōto* no *tokei* desu.  
6. Kore wa *kare* no *denki-sutendo* desu.  
IV. 1. nan 2. doko 3. nan 4. anata; dare  
V. 1. (Watashi no *namae* wa) \_\_\_ desu. 2. (Watashi no *kuni* wa) \_\_\_ desu. 3. (Watashi no *kuni* no *shuto* wa) \_\_\_ desu.

## § 1 Identifying a Thing or Person

N<sub>1</sub> wa N<sub>2</sub> **desu**. 'N<sub>1</sub> is N<sub>2</sub>.'

e.g. Watashi wa gakusei desu. 'I am a student.'

Negation: N<sub>1</sub> wa N<sub>2</sub> **dewa arimasen**. 'N<sub>1</sub> is not N<sub>2</sub>.'

**Wa** is a Particle ('P') indicating that the Noun ('N') to which it is attached is the Topic of the sentence. A Topic can be anything that the speaker wants to talk about. Remember that it is not quite the same as the 'subject' in English grammar. The essential function of **wa** is to attract the listener's attention to the word or phrase to which it is attached.

**Desu** is a Copula (like 'to be' in English) used most commonly in medially polite spoken Japanese, and is inflected for negative (**dewa arimasen**), Past tense, etc. 'N desu' constitutes the Nominal Predicate.

**Wa** is replaced by **mo** when the same predicate also applies to another N.  
e.g. Watashi wa gakusei desu. 'I am a student.'

Tomu mo gakusei desu. 'Tom is a student too.'

Question: N<sub>1</sub> wa N<sub>2</sub> **desu ka?** 'Is N<sub>1</sub> N<sub>2</sub>?'  
↓

**Ka** is a Sentence-final Particle ('Ps') expressing question or doubt. In an answer to a question, the predicate alone is sufficient; the Topic may be omitted whenever it is understood.

e.g. Tomu wa gakusei desu ka? 'Is Tom a student?'

—Hai, gakusei desu. 'Yes, (he) is a student.'

The answer sentence can be further simplified by using **sō**, which stands for the 'N<sub>1</sub> wa N<sub>2</sub>' part of the question sentence.

e.g. Anata wa gakusei desu ka? 'Are you a student?'

—Hai, sō desu. 'Yes, I am.'

—Iie, sō dewa arimasen. 'No, I am not.'

## § 2 Demonstratives

Japanese has a set of Demonstratives used for the speaker to point at or refer to a thing, place, being, or state of affairs. This lesson introduces three subsets (in boldface below).

	Nominal			Prenominal	Adjectival	Adverbial	
	thing	place	direction			(1)	(2)
I	<b>kore</b>	<b>koko</b>	<b>kochira</b>	kono	konna	konna-ni	kō
II	<b>sore</b>	<b>soko</b>	<b>sochira</b>	sono	sonna	sonna-ni	sō
III	<b>are</b>	<b>asoko</b>	<b>achira</b>	ano	anna	anna-ni	ā
?	<b>dore</b>	<b>doko</b>	<b>dochira</b>	dono	donna	donna-ni	dō

I (**ko-** series)...for whatever is near the 1st person (speaker)II (**so-** series)...for whatever is near the 2nd person (listener)III (**a-** series)...for whatever is near neither the speaker nor the listener, but is seen or known by both? (**do-** series)...for a thing or state which the speaker is unable to point at, locate, or describe. This series usually appears in questions.

## § 3 Interrogative Nouns

Kore wa **[hon]** desu.

'This is a book.'

Sore wa **nan** desu ka?'What is that?'  
↑  
\*nan generally before  
t-, d-, n-, nani else-  
where.Kare wa **[Yamada]** desu.

'He is Yamada.'

Kare wa **dare/donata** desu ka?'Who is he?'  
↑  
\*\*more politeKoko wa **[Ginza]** desu.

'This is Ginza.'

Koko wa **doko** desu ka?

'Where is this?' or 'Where am I?'

§ 4 Connecting Two Nouns: N<sub>1</sub> **no** N<sub>2</sub> (roughly) 'N<sub>2</sub> of N<sub>1</sub>'

e.g. Watashi no hon 'my book' (literally, 'book of I')

Nippon-go no hon 'a book of/in/on Japanese'

N<sub>2</sub> is sometimes omitted when it is understood.

e.g. Kore wa watashi no desu. 'This is mine.'

I Use the chart to practice the patterns as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. (kitte) → Kore wa kitte desu.

1. (kamera<sup>1</sup>) 2. (tabako<sup>2</sup>) 3. (kasa<sup>3</sup>)

4. (megane<sup>4</sup>) 5. (tokei<sup>5</sup>) 6. (denki-sutando<sup>6</sup>)

(B) Ex. (pointing to Ex.) Kore wa nan desu ka?  
—Kitte desu.

(C) (Ex. + kare) → Kore wa kare no kitte desu.

1. (1 + Tomu) 2. (2 + anata) 3. (3 + kanojo)

4. (4 + watashi) 5. (5 + imōto) 6. (6 + kare)

II Make dialogs as shown in the example

Ex. Q: (hon?) Kore wa hon desu ka?

A: (Hai) Hai, sō desu.

(lie) (shinbun<sup>8</sup>) lie, sō dewa arimasen.

Shinbun desu.

1 Q: (shinbun) A: (Hai)

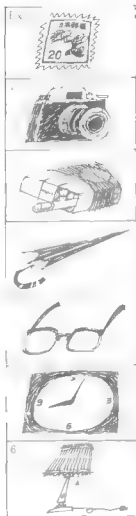
2 Q: (nōto<sup>9</sup>) A: (lie) (hon)

3 Q: (kitte) A: (Hai)

4 Q: (tokei) A: (lie) (kamera)

5 Q: (sakura no hana) A: (lie) (bara)

6 Q: (anata no kasa) A: (lie) (kare no)



語句

- 1 kamera 'camera'  
2 tabako 'tobacco,' cigarette  
3 kasa umbrella  
4 megane glasses  
5 tokei clock, watch  
6 denki sutando desk lamp, reading lamp  
denki electricity sutando 'stand'  
7 hon book 8 shinbun newspaper

- 9 nōto 'notebook'  
10 byōin hospital  
11 tosho-kan library  
toshō books, library  
-kan building, house  
12 Tōkyō eki Tokyo Station  
Tōkyō (the capital of Japan)  
eki station

III. Use the pictures to practice questions and answers as shown in the example.

Ex (ginkō) → Q Koko wa doko desu ka?

A: Koko wa ginkō desu.

1. (yūbin-kyoku) 2. (byōin<sup>10</sup>) 3. (toshō-kan<sup>11</sup>)  
4. (Tōkyō-eki<sup>12</sup>) 5. (daigaku<sup>13</sup>)

IV. Fill in the blanks.

Ex. "Kore wa (dare) no hon desu ka?"

"Sore wa watashi no hon desu."

1. "Sore wa ( ) no hon desu ka?"

"Kore wa Nippon-go<sup>14</sup> no hon desu."

2. "Kore wa ( ) no shashin<sup>15</sup> desu ka?"

"Sore wa Kyōto<sup>16</sup> no shashin desu"

3. "Are wa ( ) no kaisha desu ka?"

"Are wa jidōsha<sup>17</sup> no kaisha desu."

4. "Kore wa ( ) no bōru-pen<sup>18</sup> desu ka?" "lie,

sore wa watashi no bōru-pen dewa arimasen."

"Soredewa,<sup>19</sup> ( ) no bōru-pen desu ka?"

"Sore wa Tomu-san<sup>20</sup> no desu."

V. Answer the following questions.

1. Anata no namae wa nan desu ka?

2. Anata no kuni<sup>21</sup> wa doko desu ka?

3. Anata no kuni no shuto<sup>22</sup> wa doko desu ka?

13 daigaku university, college

14 nippon go Nihon go Japanese language

-go language, word

15 shashin photograph

16 kyōto an old capital of Japan

17 jidōsha automobile, car

18 bōru-pen 'ball-point pen'

19 soredewa well, then

20 san Suf for Human N or Name)  
Mr., Mrs., Miss, Ms

21 kuni country, nation, one's home land

22 shuto capital city



## KONNICHI WA!

Konnicchi wa.<sup>1</sup>Ohayō gozaimasu.<sup>2</sup>

Ohayō.

Konban wa.<sup>3</sup>Sayōnara.<sup>4</sup>Oyasumi-nasai.<sup>5</sup>

Oyasumi.

Yamada<sup>6</sup>: Hajimemashite.<sup>7</sup>

Watashi wa Yamada desu.

Dōzo<sup>8</sup> yoroshiku.<sup>9</sup>

Buraun: Hajimemashite.

Watashi wa Buraun desu.

Dōzo yoroshiku.

Y: Kore wa watashi no meishi<sup>10</sup> desu.B: Domo<sup>11</sup> arigatō<sup>12</sup> gozaimasu.Y: Shitsurei desu ga,<sup>13</sup>o-kuni<sup>14</sup> wa doko desu ka?B: Igirisu<sup>15</sup> desu.

Hello.

Good morning. (Polite)

Morning. (Familiar)

Good evening.

Good-bye.

Good night. (Polite)

Good night. (Familiar)

Y: How do you do?

(←This is the first time for me to meet you.)  
I am Yamada. I am pleased to meet you.  
(←I hope we shall become friends.)

B: How do you do?

I am Brown.

Pleased to meet you.

Y: This is my card.

B: Thank you very much.

Y: Excuse me, but where are you from?  
(←where is your country?)

B: England.

附句

1 Konnicchi wa (Cph: daytime greeting)

2 Ohayō (gozaimasu) (Cph: morning greeting)

gozaimasu exist, there is, we have (Super-polite form of desu; aru, arimasu)

3 Konban wa (Cph: evening greeting)

4 Sayōnara—Sayonara

(Cph. used in parting)

5 Oyasumi(-nasai) (Cph: greeting before going to bed,

-nasai (Polite imperative form of suru)

6 Yamada (a family name)

7 Hajimemashite (Cph when introduced)

8 dōzo please

9 (Dōzo) yoroshiku (Cph: all-purpose request for favorable consideration)

10 meishi name card

Y: (From) London?

B: Yes, London.

Y: What is your occupation?

B: I am an architect.

Y: Is that so?

My younger brother is also an architect.

Y: Hi, Mr. Tanaka.

This is Mr. Brown from England.

He is an architect.

T: How do you do?

I'm Tanaka.

B: I'm Brown. Glad to meet you.

11 dōmo very

12 arigatō (Cph) for expressing thanks)

13 Shitsurei desu ga (Cph)

Excuse me, but

shitsurei (Na/Nv) being impolite/rude  
ga but

14 o-kuni nation, country

o- (Pref. for politeness)

15 Igirisu 'England'

16 Rondon 'London'

17 E Yes (Informal)

18 shigoto work, job

19 kenchiku-ka architect  
kenchiku architecture  
ka specialist

20 So desu ka (Cph) Is that so?

21 otōto younger brother

22 Ya Hey, Hi

23 Tanaka (a family name)

24 kochira this person/side/place See §2

Y: Rondon<sup>16</sup> desu ka?B: E,<sup>17</sup> Rondon desu.Y: O-shigoto<sup>18</sup> wa nan desu ka?B: Kenchiku-ka<sup>19</sup> desu.Y: Sō desu ka.<sup>20</sup>

Watashi no otōto<sup>21</sup> mo kenchiku-ka  
desu.

Y: Yā,<sup>22</sup> Tanaka<sup>23</sup>-san, kochira<sup>24</sup> wa Igirisu  
no Buraun-san desu.

Kenchiku-ka desu.

T: Hajimemashite. Tanaka desu.

B: Buraun desu. Yoroshiku.

▼ Mt. Fuji



ひらがな <HIRAGANA> -1

あ	い	う	え	お
---	---	---	---	---

あい love あわ blue いう meet  
いえ house おおい many うえ above

か	き	く	け	こ
---	---	---	---	---

かく write いき voice けき station  
あかい red いけ pond きく chrysanthemum

さ	し	す	せ	そ
---	---	---	---	---

さけ sake せかい world あせ sweat  
さし a tie せし sushi さそ regulation

た	ち	つ	て	と
---	---	---	---	---

たつ stand つき moon ちかてつ subway  
たち outside たち land たち socks

な	に	ぬ	ね	の
---	---	---	---	---

なに what ぬの cloth ななつ seven  
ねこ cat いぬ dog ねづ fever

は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ
---	---	---	---	---

はな flower ひふ skin あさひ morning sun  
ふね ship へた unskillful ほそ slender

ま	み	む	め	も
---	---	---	---	---

うみ sea みなみ south むすめ daughter  
きもの kimono なまえ name まちあい waiting room

や	ゆ	よ
---	---	---

ゆき snow よい good やすみ rest  
よむ read よめ dream やま mountain

ら	り	る	れ	ろ
---	---	---	---	---

てら temple れきし history くら dark  
くろい black きれい pretty りかい understanding

わ	を
---	---

わたし I わたしを me  
へい peace わらう laugh  
にわ garden わるい bad

ん
---

ほん book きねん commemoration  
みほん sample きんえん No smoking  
しんせつ kind りろん theory

## 第 2 課

### わたしたちの 工場

TABLE  
1  
S. 1

① これは <sup>おおき</sup>大きい <sup>こうじょう</sup>工場 <sup>2</sup>ですね。 <sup>なんの</sup>なんの <sup>こうじょう</sup>工場 <sup>3</sup>ですか。

—この <sup>こうじょう</sup>工場 <sup>4</sup>は <sup>じどうしゃ</sup>自動車の <sup>こうじょう</sup>工場 <sup>5</sup>です。

あの <sup>こうじょう</sup>工場 <sup>6</sup>は <sup>こさい</sup>小さい <sup>7</sup>ですね。

—あれは <sup>じぜんしゃ</sup>自転車の <sup>こうじょう</sup>工場 <sup>8</sup>です。

あまり <sup>おほく</sup>大きく <sup>9</sup>ないです。

この <sup>たいや</sup>タイヤ <sup>10</sup>は <sup>つよ</sup>強い <sup>11</sup>ですか。

—はい、<sup>つよ</sup>強い <sup>12</sup>です。



② あの <sup>ふるい</sup>古い <sup>13</sup> <sup>れんが</sup>レンガの <sup>たてもの</sup>建物 <sup>14</sup>は <sup>なんですか</sup>なんですか。

—あれは <sup>びじゅつかん</sup>美術館 <sup>15</sup>です。 <sup>有名な</sup>有名な <sup>びじゅつかん</sup>美術館 <sup>16</sup>です。

この <sup>たてもの</sup>建物 <sup>17</sup>は <sup>ホテル</sup>ホテル <sup>18</sup>ですか。

—いいえ、これは <sup>げきじょう</sup>劇場 <sup>19</sup>です。

<sup>あらた</sup>新しい <sup>20</sup> <sup>げきじょう</sup>劇場 <sup>21</sup>ですか。

いいえ、あまり <sup>あらた</sup>新しく <sup>22</sup>ないです。

③ この <sup>あたり</sup>あたり <sup>23</sup>は <sup>しずか</sup>しずか <sup>24</sup>ですね。

#### 語句

1 oku+ large 2 wôô factory

3 ne , isn't it? See §11

4 kono this See §5

5 ano that See §5

6 chiisa+ small 7 jitensha bicycle

8 amari too, too much, excessively

amari nai not so

9 -ku nai See §6

10 taiya 'tire'

11 tsuyo+ strong, powerful

12 furu old 13 renga brick

14 tatemono building

15 bijutsu-kan art museum

bijutsu fine arts

16 yumei (Na) famous

17 hoteru 'hotel'

18 geki-jô theater

geki drama, play

-jô place, field

19 atarashi+ new, fresh

—はい、いつも <sup>25</sup> <sup>しずか</sup>しずか <sup>26</sup>です。 あなたの <sup>いへ</sup>家の <sup>27</sup> <sup>あたり</sup>あたり <sup>28</sup>は <sup>どうですか</sup>どうですか。

あまり <sup>しずか</sup>しずか <sup>29</sup>ではありません。

あなたの <sup>まち</sup>町 <sup>30</sup>は <sup>どんな</sup>どんな <sup>31</sup> <sup>まち</sup>町 <sup>32</sup>ですか。

西で <sup>有名な</sup>有名な <sup>33</sup> <sup>まち</sup>町 <sup>34</sup>です。 <sup>海</sup>海 <sup>35</sup>にも <sup>山</sup>山 <sup>36</sup>にも <sup>近い</sup>近い <sup>37</sup>です。 <sup>空気</sup>空気 <sup>38</sup>も

水も <sup>たいへん</sup>たいへん <sup>39</sup> <sup>きれい</sup>きれい <sup>40</sup>です。

▼ A sake factory



20 atar N neighborhood

kono atari this neighborhood

21 shizuka (Na) silent, quiet

22 itsumo always 23 ie house

24 do how See §9

25 machi town

26 donna what sort of See §8

27 sake alcoholic drink, Japanese wine

28 de with, for

-de yumei famous for

29 umi sea, ocean

30 ni to

31 yama mountain

32 chika+ near

-ni chikai near

33 kûki air

34 mizu water

35 taihen very See §10

36 kirei (Na) clean; pretty

## Dai 2-ka

### Watashi-tachi no Kōjō

1 Kore wa ōkii kōjō desu ne. Nan no kōjō desu ka?

—Kono kōjō wa jidōsha no kōjō desu.

Ano kōjō wa chiisai desu ne.

—Are wa jitensha no kōjō desu. Amari ōkiku nai desu.

Kono *taiya* wa tsuyoi desu ka?

—Hai, tsuyoi desu.

2 Ano furui renga no tatemono wa nan desu ka?

—Are wa bijutsu-kan desu. Yūmei-na bijutsu-kan desu.

Kono tatemono wa *hoteru* desu ka?

—Iie, kore wa gekijō desu.

Atarashii gekijō desu ka?

—Iie, amari atarashiku nai desu.

3 Kono atari wa shizuka desu ne.

—Hai, itsumo shizuka desu. Anata no ie no atari wa dō desu ka?

Amari shizuka dewa arimasen.

—Anata no machi wa donna machi desu ka?

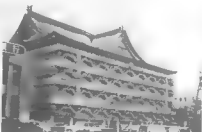
Sake de yūmei-na machi desu. Umi nimo yama nimo chikai desu.

Kūki mo mizu mo taihen kirei desu.

▼ The National Museum of Western Art



▼ Osaka's Shin-Kabuki-za



## Lesson 2

### Our Factory

2

1 This is a big factory, isn't it? What do they make here?

—This factory is an automobile factory.

That factory is small, isn't it?

—That is a bicycle factory. That is not so big.

Is this tire strong?

—Yes, it is strong.

2 What is that old brick building?

—That is a museum. It is a famous museum.

Is this building a hotel?

—No, it is not. This is a theater.

Is it a new theater?

—No, it is not so new.

3 It is quiet in this neighborhood, isn't it?

—Yes, it is always quiet. What is your neighborhood like?

It is not so quiet.

—What kind of a town is your town?

It's a town famous for *sake*. It is close to both the sea and the mountains.

Both the air and the water are very clean there

ANSWERS (pp. 28, 29.)

I. (A) 6. Q. Kono machi wa umi ni chikai desu ka? A: Iie, chikaku nai desu. Tōi desu.  
(C) 1. Q. Ano ōkii tatemono wa nan desu ka? A: Ano ōkii tatemono wa daigaku no tosho-kan desu. 2. Q. Ano wakai onna no hito wa dare desu ka? A: Ano wakai onna no hito wa watashi no sensei desu.

II. (A) 1. Kore wa nagai shōsetsu desu. 2. Kore wa takai kitte desu. 3. Kore wa watashi no atarashii jidōsha desu. 4. Kore wa benri-na *taipu-roite* desu. 5. Koko wa shizuka-na machi desu.

(B) 1. Kono benri-na *kamera* wa watashi no desu. Kono karui *kamera* wa dare no desu ka?  
2. Kono *chiisai* ie wa watashi no desu. Kono furui ie wa dare no desu ka? 3. Kono *shiroi* kasa wa watashi no desu. Kono akai kasa wa dare no desu ka?

III. 1. Kore wa yūmei-na shōsetsu desu. Kono shōsetsu wa taihen omoshiroi desu. (Kore wa) amari muzukashiku nai desu. 2. "Ano ōkii tatemono wa nan desu ka?" "Atarashii tosho kan desu." 3. "Kono *shiroi* hana no namae wa nan desu ka?" "Bara desu." 4. "Ano kirei-na onna no hito wa dare desu ka?" "Ano kirei-na onna no hito wa watashi tachi no Nippon-go no sensei desu."

§ 5 Prenominal Demonstratives: **kono, sono, ano, dono**

e.g. Kono hana wa bara desu. 'This flower (here) is a rose.'

Ano hito wa Amerika-jin desu. 'That person (= He) is an American.'

Yamada-san wa dono hito desu ka? 'Which person is Mr. Yamada?'

## § 6 Describing Things—Adjectival Predicates

N wa {  
A }  
[Na] } desu.

e.g. Kono kōjō wa ōkii desu. 'This factory is big.'

Kono machi wa shizuka desu.

'This town is quiet.'

Question: N wa A/Na desu ka?

Negation: N wa {  
A-ku nai desu.  
[Na dewa arimasen.]

e.g. Ōkiku nai desu. 'It is not big.'

shizuka dewa arimasen. 'It is not quiet.'

Adjectives are of two kinds: 'i Adjectives' ('A') and 'na Adjectives' ('Na')  
All A are indigenous Japanese adjectives, and they all end with '-i' in the present affirmative form (Dictionary form), e.g. ōkii 'big,' nagai 'long.' Na are mostly Chinese-origin words, some coming from other foreign languages, e.g. shizuka 'quiet,' kirei 'pretty,' sakan 'active, flourishing, popular,' etc. A and Na are conjugated in different ways

## § 7 Using A or Na as Noun Modifiers

A  
Na(-na) } +N

e.g. Ōkii kōjō 'a big factory'

shizuka-na machi 'a quiet town'

When foreign words are to be used as adjectives in Japanese, they conform to the Na pattern and not to the A pattern.

e.g. Sore wa nansensu desu. 'That's nonsense.'

nansensu-na hanashi 'a nonsensical story, a bit of nonsense'

modan-na tatemono 'a modern building'

NB: ōkii and chiisai, although they are 'i Adjectives,' sometimes take the '-na form' when used as Prenominal modifiers.

e.g. ōki-na kōjō (=ōki i kōjō) 'a big factory'

chiisa-na kōjō (=chiisai kōjō) 'a small factory'

## § 8 Adjectival Demonstratives (See Table in § 2)

The Demonstratives **konna, sonna, anna** are used before N, like Adjectives, expressing 'such ...' or '... like this that.' **Donna** means 'what kind of...'

e.g. Sono machi wa donna machi desu ka? 'What is that town like?'

Chiisai shizuka-na machi desu. 'It's a small, quiet town.'

## § 9 Adverbial Demonstratives (See Table in § 2)

When the particle **ni** is attached to **konna, sonna**, etc., they function as Adverbs and are used to modify other Adjectives, expressing degree.

e.g. Itsumo konna-ni samui desu ka? 'Is it always this cold?'

Ima sonna-ni isogashiku nai desu. 'I am not so busy (as you may suppose) now.' or 'I am not all that busy now'

Another set of Demonstratives **kō, sō, ā, dō**, are also used as Adverbs, but they are mainly used to modify Verbs, expressing manner.

e.g. Kyōto e wa dō ikimasu ka? 'How do I go to Kyoto?'

Kore wa dō desu ka? 'How is this?' or 'How do you like this?'

## § 10 Adverbs of Degree

e.g. taihen (ōkii) 'very (big)' totemo (kirei) 'very (pretty)'

taitei (ōkii) 'mostly (big)' amari (ōkiku nai) '(not) very (big)'

§ 11 Sentence-final Particles ('Ps'): **ne** and **yo**

In addition to **ka** (§ 1), the Ps which are most commonly used in spoken Japanese are **ne** and **yo**. The particle **ne** indicates that the speaker is expecting the listener's agreement, and **yo** that he is calling for the listener's particular attention to his statement. Others will be introduced later



## I. Make dialogs as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. Q: kono kasha, atarashi?, Kono kasha wa atarashi desu ka?

A: (lie, (furu) lie, atarashiku nai desu. Furu desu.

1. Q: (sono<sup>1</sup> hon) (omoshiro<sup>2</sup>, A: (lie tsumarana<sup>3</sup>,2. Q: (sono jidōsha, (takai<sup>4</sup> A: (lie) (yasui<sup>5</sup>)3. Q: (sono yama, (takai) A: (lie, (hikui<sup>6</sup>)4. Q: (Nippon-go) (muzukashi<sup>7</sup>) A: (lie) (yasashii<sup>8</sup>)5. Q: (kono taipu-raita<sup>9</sup>) (karui<sup>10</sup>, A: (lie) (omoi<sup>11</sup>,6. Q: (kono machi, um ni chika) A: (lie, (tōi<sup>12</sup>)

(B) Ex. Q: (Tōkyō) (kirei) Tōkyō wa kirei desu ka?

A: (taihen) Hai, taihen kirei desu.

(amari) lie, amari kirei dewa arimasen.

1. Q: (Tōkyō) (shizuka) A: (amari)

2. Q: (kono bijutsu-kan) (yūmei) A: (taihen)

3. Q: (kono kikai<sup>13</sup>) (benri<sup>14</sup>) A: (amari)4. Q: (ano byōin no hito-tachi<sup>15</sup>, (shinsetsu<sup>16</sup>) A: (taihen)

5. Q: (kanajo) (shinsetsu) A: (amari)

6. Q: (sono shōsetsu<sup>17</sup>) (yūmei) A: (amari)

7. Q: (anata no machi no kuki, (kirei) A: (amari,

(C) Ex. Q: furui tatemono Ano furui tatemono wa nan desu ka?

A: (bijutsu-kan) Ano furui tatemono wa bijutsu-kan desu.

1. Q: (ōkii) (tatemono) A: (daigaku no tosho-kan)

2. Q: (wakai<sup>18</sup>) (onna no hito<sup>19</sup>) A: (watashi no sensei<sup>20</sup>)

## 語句

- 1 sono that See §5  
 2 omoshiro-i amusing, interesting  
 3 tsumarana-i not interesting  
 4 taka-i expensive; high  
 5 yasui-i cheap 6 hiku-i low  
 7 muzukashi-i difficult

- 8 yasashi-i easy, gentle, tender  
 9 taipu raita 'typewriter'  
 10 karu-i light, not heavy  
 11 omoi-i heavy 12 tō-i far  
 13 kukai machine  
 14 benri (Na) convenient; useful

## II. Transform the following sentences as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. Kono hon wa omoshiroi desu. → Kore wa omoshiroi hon desu.

1. Kono shōsetsu wa nagai<sup>21</sup> desu.

2. Kono kitte wa takai desu.

3. Kono watashi no jidōsha wa atarashi. desu.

4. Kono taipu-raita wa benri desu.

5. Kono machi wa shizuka desu.

B. Ex. Kono jidōsha wa ōki. desu. → Kono ōki jidōsha wa watashi no desu.

(atarashi, → Kono atarashi jidōsha wa dare no desu ka?

1. Kono kamera wa benri desu.

(karui)

2. Kono ie wa chiisai desu.

(furu)

3. Kono kasa wa shiroi<sup>22</sup> desu.(akai<sup>23</sup>)

## III. Put the following into Japanese

This is a famous novel. This novel is very interesting. It is not very difficult.

2. "What is that big building?" "It is a new library."

3. "What is the name of this white flower?" "It is a rose."

4. "Who is that beautiful lady?" That beautiful lady is our teacher of Japanese."

- 15 hito-tachi people  
 16 shinsetsu (Na) kind(ness)  
 17 shōsetsu novel  
 18 waka-i young  
 19 onna no hito woman, lady  
 onna woman, female (person)

- 20 sensei teacher  
 21 naga-i long  
 22 shiro-i white  
 23 aka-i red

## KOKO WA DOKO?

Sumimasen<sup>1</sup> ga....

Koko wa Yotsuya<sup>2</sup> desu ka?

—Iie, chigaimasu.<sup>3</sup>

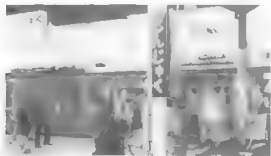
Yotsuya wa tsugi<sup>4</sup> desu.

Koko wa doko desu ka?

—Shinjuku<sup>5</sup> desu.

Ā,<sup>6</sup> sō desu ka. Dōmo arigatō.

—Dō itashimashite.<sup>7</sup>



Chotto<sup>8</sup> sumimasen ga....

Are wa *hoteru* desu ka?

—Iie, so dewa arimasen.

Ano *biru*<sup>9</sup> wa daigaku desu.

*Hoteru* wa sono muko<sup>10</sup> no takai *biru* desu.

Excuse me, but....

Is this (place) Yotsuya?

—No, it's not.

Yotsuya is the next station.

Where is this (place)?

(This is) Shinjuku.

Oh, is that so? Thank you.

Not at all.

Excuse me a minute.

Is that a hotel?

—No, it isn't.

That building is a university

The hotel is the tall building beyond that.

## 語句

- 1 Sumimasen (Cph: apology)
- 2 Yotsuya (a place name)
- 3 Chigaimasu You're wrong. It is not.  
chiga-u be different  
-masu See § 16
- 4 tsugi (N) next
- 5 Shinjuku (a place name)
- 6 Ā Oh
- 7 Dō itashimashite You're welcome. Not at all
- 8 chotto a little, a while
- 9 *biru* 'building'
- 10 muko (N) over beyond there

Is it close?

—Well, let me see....

It's not all that far.

It's about 5 minutes on foot.

Thanks.

Excuse me....

Where is Mr. Ota's house?

—Let's see Mr. Ota?

That's Mr. Ota the doctor, isn't it?

No, the painter.

—Mr. Ota the painter?

Then, . . . Taro Ota, is it?

Yes, that's it.

Is it around here?

—Yes, it's that house with the red roof.

Is that so? Thank you.

—You're welcome.

- 11 nē=ne See § 11
- 12 sonna ni nai not so
- 13 yo See § 11
- 14 aruite on foot  
aruk-u walk
- 15 fun —pun minute
- 16 gurai about/approximately
- 17 Ōta (a family name)
- 18 (o-)taku residence
- 19 E to Well, let me see
- 20 isha medical doctor
- 21 gaka painter
- 22 Tarō (a given name (m))  
yane roof  
uchi=ie house, home

Chikai desu ka?

—So desu ne<sup>11</sup>....

Sonna-ni<sup>12</sup> tōku nai desu yo.<sup>13</sup>

Aruite<sup>14</sup> go-fun<sup>15</sup> gurai<sup>16</sup> desu.

Arigatō.

Sumimasen....

Ota<sup>17</sup>-san no o-taku<sup>18</sup> wa doko desu ka?

—Ē...to,<sup>19</sup> Ōta-san desu ka?

O-isha<sup>20</sup>-san no Ōta-san desu ne?

Iie, gaka<sup>21</sup> desu.

—Gaka no Ōta-san?

Ā..., Ōta Tarō<sup>22</sup>-san desu ne?

Hai, hai, sō desu.

Kono atari desu ka?

—Ē, ano akai yane<sup>23</sup> no uchi<sup>24</sup> desu.

So desu ka. Domo arigatō.

—Iie, dō itashimashite.



ひらがな 《HIRAGANA》—2

が <sup>ga</sup>	ぎ <sup>gi</sup>	ぐ <sup>gu</sup>	げ <sup>ge</sup>	ご <sup>go</sup>	かぜ wind
でんわ telephone					
ざ <sup>za</sup>	じ <sup>ji</sup>	ず <sup>zu</sup>	ぜ <sup>ze</sup>	ぞ <sup>zo</sup>	こども child
かぞく family					
たばこ cigarette					
だ <sup>da</sup>	ぢ <sup>ji</sup>	づ <sup>zu</sup>	で <sup>de</sup>	ど <sup>do</sup>	さんぽ a walk
がくせい student					
ば <sup>ba</sup>	び <sup>bi</sup>	ぶ <sup>bu</sup>	べ <sup>be</sup>	ぼ <sup>bo</sup>	えんぴつ pencil
しんぶん newspaper					
は <sup>pa</sup>	ぴ <sup>pi</sup>	ぷ <sup>pu</sup>	ぺ <sup>pe</sup>	ぽ <sup>po</sup>	がいこくじん foreigner

Some Orthographical Rules

1. The difference between じ and ぢ (ji) and between ず and づ (zu) is not a matter of pronunciation but one of usage. じ and ず are generally used.

2. Double consonants are expressed by the small っ.

みっつ (mit-tsu) 'three' cf. みつ (mitsu) 'honey'

そっと (sotto) 'secretly' cf. そと (soto) 'outside'

もっと (motto) 'more' cf. もと (moto) 'origin'

3. (C<sup>+</sup>+) ō is usually written as (C+) o and う (u). \*consonant

ふうとう (fūtō) 'envelope'

ありがとう (arigatō) 'thank you'

べんきょう (benkyō) 'study'

Exceptions: Some are written as (C+) o and お (o).

おおきい (ōkii) 'big' おおい (ōi) 'many, much'

とお (tō) 'ten' とおる (tōru) 'pass'

とおい (tōi) 'far' こおり (kōri) 'ice'

4. The Particle wa (See § 1) is written は.

これは ほんです。'This is a book.'

ははは とうきょうに います。'My mother is in Tokyo.'

わたしは がくせいではありません。'I am not a student'

5. The Particle e (See § 19) is written え.

あなたは どこへ いきますか。'Where are you going?'

わたしは くにへ かえります。'I will go back to my country.'

こちらへ きてください。'Please come here.'

6. The Particle o (See § 17, § 26, § 28) is written お.

わたしは にっぽんごを ベンキョウ します。'I study Japanese.'

あなたは ごはんを たべましたか。'Did you eat?'

とりは そらを とびます。'Birds fly in the sky.'

きゃ <sup>kya</sup>	きゅ <sup>kyu</sup>	きょ <sup>kyo</sup>	にゃ <sup>nya</sup>	にゅ <sup>nyu</sup>	にょ <sup>nyo</sup>	ひゃく hundred
きゃく guest						
ぎゃ <sup>gya</sup>	ぎゅ <sup>gyu</sup>	ぎょ <sup>gyo</sup>	ひゃ <sup>hya</sup>	ひゅ <sup>hyu</sup>	ひょ <sup>hyo</sup>	ぎじゅつ technique
ぎゃねん last year						
しゃ <sup>sha</sup>	しゅ <sup>shu</sup>	しょ <sup>sho</sup>	びゃ <sup>bya</sup>	びゅ <sup>byu</sup>	びょ <sup>byo</sup>	でんしゃ electric train
しゃかん inn						
じゃ <sup>ja</sup>	じゅ <sup>ju</sup>	じょ <sup>jo</sup>	ぴゃ <sup>pya</sup>	ぴゅ <sup>pyu</sup>	ぴょ <sup>pyo</sup>	さんびゃく 300
しゃかい society						
ちゃ <sup>cha</sup>	ちゅ <sup>chu</sup>	ちょ <sup>cho</sup>	みゃ <sup>mya</sup>	みゅ <sup>myu</sup>	みょ <sup>myo</sup>	おちゃ tea
ちゅうい caution						
ぢゃ <sup>ja</sup>	ぢゅ <sup>ju</sup>	ぢょ <sup>jo</sup>	りゃ <sup>rya</sup>	りゅ <sup>ryu</sup>	りょ <sup>ryo</sup>	

# 第 3 課

## へやの中

TABLE  
No. 1  
Side 2

① ここは 営業課の へやです。

この へやには トアが 二つ あります。

へやの 中には つくえが たくさん あります。

人も たくさん います。

② —つくえは いくつ ありますか。

一つ、二つ、三つ、四つ、五つ……全部で 十五 あります。  
す。いすも 十五 あります。

—人は 何人 いますか。

今、一人、二人、三人、四人、五人……八人 います。

③ —課長さんの つくえは どこですか。

へやの 奥です。わたしの つくえは ことです。

つくえの 上には、本や ボールペンや 電話が あります。

本は 五さつ、ボールペンは 三本 あります。

### 語句

1 eigyō-ka sales section  
eigyō business, trade, sales  
-ka section (smaller than -bu)

2 heya room

3 ni in, at See § 12

4 dō 'door' 5 ga See § 12

6 futatsu two See § 14

7 aru exist See § 12

8 naka (N) inside 9 tsukue desk

10 takusan (N/Adv) many, much

11 iru exist, stay See § 12

12 iku-tsu how many; how old (age)

See § 14

13 hito-tsu one See § 14

14 mit-tsu three See § 14

15 yot-tsu four See § 14

16 itsu-tsu five See § 14

17 zenbu (N/Adv) all, whole

zenbu de in all

18 jū-go fifteen jū ten go five

19 isu chair

20 nan-nin how many people

nan- (+Count) how many; what

-nin (Count. for persons) See § 14

21 ima now 22 hito-ri one person

23 futari two persons

24 san-nin three persons

25 yo-nin four persons

へやの すみに 大きい 本だなが あります。 その 横に

カレンダーが あります。

まどの そばに ロッカーも あります。

計算機は 何台 ありますか。

全部で 三台 あります。 わたしの うしろと へやの ま

ん中と あの 黒板の 前に 一台ずつ あります。



26 go-nin five persons

27 hachi-nin eight persons

28 ka-chō section chief -chō chief

29 oku the end of a room, inner part

30 ue top; surface; upper part See § 13

31 ya and See § 15

32 denwa telephone

33 -satsu (Count. for books) See § 14

34 -bon -hon, -pon (Count. for cylind-

dical things) See § 14

35 sumi corner (seen from inside)

cf. kado (corner from outside)

36 hon-dana bookshelf

-dana tana shelf

37 yoko (N) beside, by

38 karenda 'calendar' 39 mado window

40 soba (N) beside, close by

41 rokka 'locker'

42 keisan-ki calculator, computer

keisan calculation -ki machine

43 -dai (Count. for machines) See § 14

44 ushiro (N) back, rear

45 to and See § 15

46 man-naka center, middle

man- -ma- at the height/center of

47 kokuban blackboard

48 mae (N) before, front

49 zutsu each

## Dai 3-ka Heya no Naka

### 1 Koko wa eigyō-ka no heyā desu.

Kono heyā niwa *doa* ga futa-tsu arimasu.

Heya no naka niwa tsukue ga takusan arimasu.

Hito mo takusan imasu.

### 2 —Tsukue wa iku-tsu arimasu ka?

Hito-tsu, futa-tsu, mit-tsu, yot-tsu, itsu-tsu...zenbu de jū-go arimasu.

Isu mo jū-go arimasu.

—Hito wa nan-nin imasu ka?

Ima, hito-ri, futa-ri, san-nin, yo-nin, go-nin...hachi-nin imasu.

### 3 —Ka-chō-san no tsukue wa doko desu ka?

Heya no oku desu. Watashi no tsukue wa kore desu.

Tsukue no ue niwa, hon ya *bōru-pen* ya denwa ga arimasu.

Hon wa go-satsu, *bōru-pen* wa san-bon arimasu.

Heya no sumi ni ōkii hon-dana ga arimasu.

Sono yoko ni *karendā* ga arimasu.

Mado no soba ni *rokko* mo arimasu.

—Keisan-ki wa nan-dai arimasu ka?

Zenbu de san-dai arimasu. Watashi no ushiro to heyā no man-naka to ano kokuban no mae ni ichi-dai zutsu arimasu.

## Lesson 3 Inside the Room

### 1 This is the sales section's room.

There are two doors to this room

There are many desks in the room.

There are also many people.

### 2 —How many desks are there?

One, two, three, four, five.... There are fifteen in all.

There are also fifteen chairs.

—How many people are there?

One, two, three, four, five.... There are eight persons here now.

### 3 —Where is the Section Chief's desk?

It is in the back of the room. This is my desk.

There are books, ball-point pens, and a telephone on the desk

There are five books and three ball-point pens

There is a big bookshelf in the corner of the room.

There is a calendar next to the bookshelf

There are also some lockers near the window.

—How many computers are there?

There are three in all. There is one behind me, one in the middle of the room, and one in front of that blackboard.

### ANSWERS (pp. 40, 41)

I. (B) 1. (Tokeri no migi ni) denwa ga arimasu. 2. (Tōburi no ue ni) ringo to fuboku ga arimasu. 3. (Hana wa) terebi no ue ni arimasu. 4. (Hon wa) terebi no shita ni arimasu. II. (B) 1. (Ki no shita ni) onna no ko ga imasu. 2. (Anata no yoko ni) Tomu to Jon ga imasu. 3. (Tarō wa) jūdōsha no naka ni imasu. 4. (Neko wa) isu no ue ni imasu. 5. (Tori wa) ki no ue ni imasu.

IV. 1. Q: Bijutsu-kan wa doko ni arimasu ka? A: (Bijutsu-kan wa) kōen no man-naka ni arimasu. 2. Q: Toshokan wa doko ni arimasu ka? A: (Toshokan wa) daigaku no soba ni arimasu. 3. Q: Anata no kazoku wa doko ni imasu ka? A: Watashi no kazoku wa *Kenoda* ni imasu. 4. Q: Byōin wa doko ni arimasu ka? A: (Byōin wa) yūbin-kyoku no mae ni arimasu. 5. Q: Ka-chō-san wa doko ni imasu ka? A: (Ka-chō-san wa) mado no soba ni imasu.

## § 12 Existence, Location, and Quantity

{(Location) {N (inanimate)}  
{N (animate)} } **ga** (Quantity) {**arimasu.**  
**imasu.**

e.g. Koko ni denwa ga arimasu. 'Here is a telephone.'

Asoko ni gakusei ga imasu. 'There is a student over there.'

The Particle **ni** is attached to N denoting place and expresses the location of something that exists. **Arimasu** (Dictionary form **aru**) is used for inanimate objects or abstract N such as books, telephones, problems, causes, etc., while **imasu** (Dictionary form **iru**) is used for living beings such as people, dogs, fish, birds, etc.

When the location or quantity of a particular thing or person is the focus of the sentence, the following pattern is used

N **wa** (Location) (Quantity) **arimasu/imasu.**

e.g. Anata no tsukue wa doko ni arimasu ka? 'Where is your desk?'

—(Watashi no tsukue wa) koko ni arimasu. 'My desk is here'

## § 13 Relative Position

N no	ue	ni	'on/over/above/on top of
	shita		'under/beneath/below
	mae		'in front of
	ushiro		'behind/at the back of
	naka		'in/inside
	soto		'outside of
	hidari		'to the left of
migi	'to the right of		

## § 14 How to Count Things or Persons (See Appendix)

Japanese has two different sets of Numerals: one native Japanese ('J' in the table below) and the other of Chinese origin ('C' below).

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
'J'	hito-	futa-	mi-	yo(n)-	itsu-	mu-	nana-	ya-	kokono-	tō
'C'	ichi	ni	san	shi	go	roku	shichi	hachi	ku/kyū	jū

When actually counting things, it is necessary to combine 'C' Numerals (with a few exceptions) and what are called Counters (or Counter-suffixes) depending upon the kind of thing to be counted. The Counters that are most commonly used are the following:

·mai for thin, flat objects like paper, plates, shirts, etc.

·hon for long, slender objects like trees, pencils, chalk, etc.

(h is replaced by p after 1, 6 and 10, and by b after 3. See Appendix.)

·satsu for books

·dai for automobiles, bicycles, typewriters, tape recorders, etc.

·hiki for small animals

·wa for birds (-pa after 6 and 10, and -ba after 3)

·nin for people

Exceptions: 'one person' = hito-ri; 'two —' = futa-ri; 'four —' = yo-nin

When expressing numbers in the abstract, as in mathematics, the 'C' Numerals alone are used. For things which are not clearly categorized or which are shapeless, the suffix -tsu is attached to the 'J' Numerals, e.g. stones, cups, boxes, stars, ideas, problems, etc.

## § 15 Noun-conjoining Particles: to and ya

N<sub>1</sub> to N<sub>2</sub>to N<sub>3</sub> 'N<sub>1</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, and N<sub>3</sub>' (implying that these three things are all that there are—'exhaustive')

N<sub>1</sub> ya N<sub>2</sub> ya N<sub>3</sub> 'N<sub>1</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, and N<sub>3</sub>' (among others —'non-exhaustive')



## ANATA NO SHUMI WA?

Anata no shumi<sup>1</sup> wa nan desu ka?

—Gorufu<sup>2</sup> desu.

Nippon niwa gorufu-jō<sup>3</sup> ga arimasu ka?

—Ē, takusan arimasu yo.

Hap-pyaku<sup>4</sup> gurai arimasu.

Hohō,<sup>5</sup> ōi<sup>6</sup> desu ne.

Anata wa doko no menba<sup>7</sup> desu ka?

—Hakone<sup>8</sup> Kantori Kurabu<sup>9</sup> desu.

Nan-yādo<sup>10</sup> gurai arimasu ka?

—Nana-sen-go-hyaku<sup>11</sup> desu.

Okii desu ne.

Kyadī<sup>12</sup> wa nan-nin gurai imasu ka?

—Hyaku-go-jū-nin<sup>13</sup> gurai desu.

Mina<sup>14</sup> ii<sup>15</sup> kyadī desu.

Mina otoko no kyadī desu ka?

—Iie, Nippon dewa<sup>16</sup> kyadī wa taitei<sup>17</sup> onna desu.

Tokorode,<sup>18</sup> anata no shumi mo gorufu desu ka?

Iie, watashi no shumi wa kitte no

What is your hobby?

Golf.

Are there any golf courses in Japan?

Yes, there are many.

There are about 800

Really! That's a lot.

Where are you a member?

Hakone Country Club.

About how many yards is it?

—7,500

Big, isn't it?

About how many caddies are there?

—About 150.

They are all good caddies.

Are all of them male caddies?

—No. Caddies are usually women in Japan.

By the way, is your hobby golf too?

No, my hobby is stamp-collecting.

## 語句

1 shumi hobby

2 gorufu 'golf'

3 gorufu-jō golf course

4 hap-pyaku 800

—pyaku = -hyaku, -byaku hundred

5 Hohō I see

6 ōi many; much

7 menba 'member'

8 Hakone (a place name)

9 kantori kurabu 'country club'

10 yādo 'yard'

11 nana-sen-go-hyaku 7,500

—sen -zen thousand

12 kyadī 'caddie'

13 hyaku-go-jū-nin 150 persons

14 mina minna (N/Adv) all

15 ii yo-i good

16 de in, at

17 taitei (N/Adv) mostly

Stamps are my younger

sister's hobby too.

We have all kinds of beautiful and rare stamps at home.

Is that so? By the way, how old is your younger sister?

—Sixteen. She is a high school student.

This is a picture of my younger sister.

My, what a pretty sister!

—No, not really.

Do you have a younger sister too?

No, I have two younger brothers.

We are three brothers. My immediately younger brother is 25 years old.

My youngest brother is still a student.

—What university (is he going to)?

University of London.

His hobby is music.

18 tokorode By the way

19 shūshū (Nv) collection

20 mezurashi-i rare

21 iroiro (N/Na/Adv)

variety, several kinds

22 jū-roku-sai 16 years old

—sai age, old

23 kōkō-sei high school student

kōkō = kōtō-gakkō high school

—sei student

24 Hō I see

25 iyā well, no

26 hodo degree See § 104 sore hodo to that degree

27 ni with See § 12, § 68

28 kyōdai brothers and/or sisters

29 ni-ju-go-sai 25 years old

30 mada still See § 25

31 ongaku music

shushū<sup>19</sup> desu.

—Watashi no imoto no shumi mo kitte desu. Uchi niwa kirei-na kitte ya

mezurashij<sup>20</sup> kitte ga iroiro<sup>21</sup> arimasu.

So desu ka. Tokorode, imoto-san wa iku-tsu desu ka?

—Jū-roku-sai<sup>22</sup> desu. Koko-sei<sup>23</sup> desu.

Kore wa imōto no shashin desu.

Hō<sup>24</sup>..., kirei-na imōto-san desu ne...

—Iyā<sup>25</sup>... sore hodo<sup>26</sup> demo arimasen.

Anata nimo<sup>27</sup> imōto-san ga imasu ka?

Iie, otōto ga futa-ri imasu.

Watashi-tachi wa san-nin kyōdai<sup>28</sup> desu.

Watashi no tsugi no otōto wa ni-jū-go-sai<sup>29</sup> desu.

Shita no otōto wa mada<sup>30</sup> gakusei desu.

—Doko no daigaku desu ka?

Rondon Daigaku desu.

Kare no shumi wa ongaku<sup>31</sup> desu.





## カタカナ 《KATAKANA》

1. *Katakana* is now used primarily for writing loan words (except Chinese) and foreign names. Its orthographical rules are the same as those mentioned on page 33, except for rule 3. Long vowels are expressed by -- in *katakana*.

'news'	ニュース	(nyūsu)
'coffee'	コーヒー	(kōhi)
'elevator'	エレベーター	(erebētā)

2. Because of the phonetic characters in Japanese, some foreign pronunciations cannot be transliterated properly. Vowels are inserted into consonant clusters and added when a foreign word ends in any consonant except n.

'street'	ストリート	(sutōr <u>ito</u> )
'Christmas'	クリスマス	(kuris <u>umasu</u> )

Some sounds which are different in a foreign language, l and r for example, are expressed as the same sound in Japanese.

'locker'	ロッカー	(rokkā)
'rocket'	ロケット	(roketto)
'ballet'	バレエ	(bare)
'volleyball'	バレーボール	(barēbōru)
'bus'	バス	(basu)
'bath'		

3. Long words are often abbreviated

'television'	テレビ	(terebi)
'building'	ビル	(biru)
'demonstration'	デモ	(demo)
'strike' (walkout)	スト	(suto)
'mass communication'	マスコミ	(masukomi)

ラジオ	radio
タクシー	taxi
レコード	record, disc
カメラ	camera
マッチ	matches
ミシン	sewing machine
フォーク	fork, folk
プレゼント	present, gift
ピンポン	ping-pong
ギター	guitar
ピアノ	piano

パン	bread
ビール	beer
ジュース	juice
サンドイッチ	sandwich
ノート	notebook
ボールペン	ball-point pen
ワイシャツ	white shirt
タイプライター	typewriter
テープレコーダー	tape recorder
バイオリン	violin
デパート	department store

アジア	Asia
アメリカ	America
タイ	Thailand
インド	India
マレーシア	Malaysia
フランス	France
イギリス	England
カナダ	Canada
オーストラリア	Australia
メキシコ	Mexico
モスクワ	Moscow
ロンドン	London
ノーベル	Nobel
ショパン	Chopin
ゲーテ	Goethe

アフリカ	Africa
ヨーロッパ	Europe
ビルマ	Burma
インドネシア	Indonesia
フィリピン	Philippines
ドイツ	Germany
スウェーデン	Sweden
ニュージーランド	New Zealand
アルゼンチン	Argentina
ブラジル	Brazil
ワシントン	Washington
ミュンヘン	Munich
ミケランジェロ	Michelangelo
プラトン	Plato
トルストイ	Tolstoy

# 第 4 課

## わたしの 一日<sup>1</sup>

TAPE  
1  
2

① わたしは 毎朝 六時半に 起きます。そして ラジオの 中国語の 勉強を 始めます。中国語の 発音は たいへん むずかしいです。七時半ごろ 朝ご飯を 食べます。

② わたしの 家は 郊外に あります。会社は 町の まん 中に あります。家から 駅まで 十分あまり 歩きます。そして 電車で 会社へ 行きます。家から 会社まで 五十五分 かります。電車は いつも たいへん こみます。

③ 会社は 九時に 始まります。仕事は たいてい 六時に 終わります。

ときどき 駅から タクシーで 帰ります。三分ぐらいて す。百七十円 かります。

### 語句

- 1 -nichi day
- 2 mai-asa every morning  
mai- every  
asa (N Adv) morning
- 3 -ji o'clock 4-han half
- 5 ni at See §18
- 6 okiru get up
- 7 soshite and, and then
- 8 radio 'radio'
- 9 Chugoku-go Chinese (language)  
Chugoku China
- 10 benkyō (Nv) study
- 11 o See §17
- 12 hajime-ru (Vt) begin, start
- 13 hatsuon (Nv) pronunciation
- 14 goro about (for time) See §23
- 15 asa-gohan breakfast  
gohan meal, boiled rice
- 16 tabe-ru eat 17 koga suburb

- 18 kara from See §20
- 19 made till, to See §20
- 20 -pun -fun minutes
- 21 amari a little over
- 22 densha tramcar
- 23 de with See §21
- 24 e to, toward See §19
- 25 ik-u go
- 26 kakaru (Vi) take, cost
- 27 kom-u get crowded
- 28 hajmaru (Vi) begin
- 29 taiter (Adv) usually
- 30 owaru (Vi) end
- 31 tokudoki sometimes, now and then
- 32 takushi 'taxi'
- 33 kaer-u (Vi) go/come home
- 34 en yen
- 35 ryokō-sha travel agency  
ryokō (Nv) travel -sha company

④ わたしの 会社は 旅行社です。わたしは 本社に いま す。支店は 全国に 八か所 あります。仕事は たいへん おもしろいです。

わたしたちは よく 出張します。来週は 九州へ 行きます。しかし、出張は とても つかれます。

⑤ 日曜日は ほとんどの 会社は 休みます。しかし、わたしの 会社は めったに 休みません。社員は こうたいで 休みます。

休みの 日は 一か月に 四回ほどです。その 日は 昼 ごろに 起きます。あまり 外出しません。うちで ゆっくり 小説を 読みます。夜は ビールを 少し 飲みます。そして ステレオで 音楽を 聞きます。ときどき テレビも 見ます。

- 36 hon-sha head office
- 37 shi-ten branch office
- 38 zenkoku the whole country
- 39 -ka-sho (number of) places
- 40 yoku often; well
- 41 shutchō (Nv) business trip
- 42 rai-shū next week  
rai- next, coming shū week
- 43 Kyushu (the southern island of Japan)
- 44 shikashi but, however
- 45 totemo totemo very much
- 46 tsukare-ru get tired; tiring
- 47 Nichi-yōbi Sunday  
-yōbi day of the week -bi day
- 48 hotondo (N/Adv) most, almost
- 49 yasum-u rest, have a holiday; be absent
- 50 mottanai seldom.
- 51 sha-in member of a firm
- 52 kōtai (Nv) shift, change  
kōtai de by turns, alternately
- 53 yasumi holiday, absence
- 54 hi day
- 55 ka-getsu (number of) months
- 56 ni in, per 57 -kai times
- 58 hodo about, approximately
- 59 hiru (N/Adv) noon, daytime
- 60 gaishutsu (Nv) going out
- 61 de at, in See §29
- 62 yukkuri leisurely; slowly
- 63 yom-u read
- 64 yoru (N/Adv) night
- 65 biru 'beer'
- 66 sukoshi (N/Adv) a little, some
- 67 nom-u drink 68 sutereo 'stereo'
- 69 kiku-u listen, hear
- 70 mi-ru see, watch

## Dai 4-ka Watashi no Ichi-nichi

**1** Watashi wa mai-asa roku-ji-han ni okimasu. Soshite *rajo* no Chūgoku-go no benkyō o hajimemasu. Chūgoku-go no hatsuon wa taihen muzukashi desu. Shichi-ji-han goro asa-gohan o tabemasu.

**2** Watashi no ie wa kōgai ni arimasu. Kaisha wa machi no man-naka ni arimasu. Ie kara eki made jū-pun amari arukimasu. Soshite densha de kaisha e ikimasu. Ie kara kaisha made go-jū-go-fun kakarimasu. Densha wa itsumo taihen komimasu.

**3** Kaisha wa ku-ji ni hajimarimasu. Shigoto wa taitei roku-ji ni owarimasu. Tokidoki eki kara *takushi* de kaerimasu. San-pun gurai desu. Hyaku-nana-jū-en kakarimasu.

**4** Watashi no kaisha wa ryōkō-sha desu. Watashi wa hon-sha ni imasu. Shi-ten wa zenkoku ni hachi-ka-sho arimasu. Shigoto wa taihen omoshiroi desu.

Watashi-tachi wa yoku shutchō-shimasu. Rai-shū wa Kyūshū e ikimasu. Shikashi, shutchō wa totemo tsukaremasu.

**5** Nichi-yōbi wa hotondo no kaisha wa yasumimasu. Shikashi, watashi no kaisha wa mettani yasumimasen. Sha-in wa kōtai de yasumimasu.

Yasumi no hi wa ik-ka-getsu ni yon-kai hodo desu. Sono hi wa hiru goro ni okimasu. Amari gaishutsu-shimasen. Uchi de yukkuri shōsetsu o yomimasu. Yoru wa *biru* o sukoshi nomimasu. Soshite *sutereo* de ongaku o kikimasu. Tokidoki *terebi* mo mimasu.

## Lesson 4 My Day

**1** I get up at 6:30 every morning. Then I (begin to) study Chinese over the radio. Chinese pronunciation is very difficult. I have breakfast around 7:30.

**2** My house is in the suburbs. Where I work is in the middle of town. It is about a ten-minute walk from my house to the train station. Then I take a train to my office. It takes about 55 minutes from my house to the office. The train is always very crowded.

**3** My workday begins at 9:00. I usually finish work around 6:00. Sometimes I go home from the station by cab. It takes about 3 minutes. It costs ¥170.

**4** I work for a travel bureau. I am in the main office. We have eight branches throughout the nation. My work is very interesting.

We make a lot of business trips. Next week I will go to Kyushu. But business trips are very tiring.

**5** Most companies have Sundays off. But we seldom take the day off where I work. The employees take turns taking days off.

We have about four days off a month. On those days, I get up around noon. I do not go out much. I read stories leisurely at home. In the evening, I have a little beer. Then I listen to music on my stereo. Sometimes I watch television too.

### ANSWERS pp 52, 53.

I. Watashi wa mai-nichi 1. roku-ji jū-go-fun ni asa-gohan o tabemasu 2. roku-ji han ni shinbun o yomimasu. 3. ku-ji jū-pun mae ni kaisha e/ni ikimasu 4. ku-ji ni shigoto o hajimemasu. 5. go-ji ni shigoto o owarimasu. 6. shichi-ji ni ie e/ni kaerimasu. 7. shichi-ji jū-go-fun ni *terebi* o mimasu 8. jū-ji ni *rajo* o kikimasu 9. jū-ichi-ji ni nemasu.  
III. 1. de 2. ni/e/ni 3. o/o/wa/de/o 4. ni,ni,e/ni,kara,made/de  
IV. 1. Rai-shū watashi wa (watashi no) itoko no ie e/ni ikimasu. Kare no ie wa Tōkyō no kōgai ni arimasu. Watashi no ie kara kare no ie made densha de ichi-ikan gurai desu/kakarimasu. Kare no ie no atari wa shizuka desu. 2. Kyūshū ni watashi no kaisha no shi-ten ga arimasu. Desukara watashi wa ni-ka-getsu ni ik-kai Kyūshū e shutcho-shimasu. Rai-shū watashi wa Kyūshū e ikimasu. Watashi wa itsumo Fukuoka e hikōki de ikimasu. Ichi-ikan han hodo/gurai kakarimasu.

## § 16 Expressing Actions or Events—Verbal Predicates

N wa/ga (Time) (Place) (Direction) (Object) V-masu.

Question. N wa . . . V-masu ka?

Negation: N wa . . . V-masen.

In ordinary polite speech, the present affirmative form of all Verbs ('V') ends with **-masu**: e.g. okimasu 'get up,' ikimasu 'go.' 'V-masu' expresses actions or events which regularly or repeatedly take place, or which are to take place in the future. (There is no 'future tense' as such in Japanese.) It may also express the speaker's will when N (ga/wa) is a first person Noun.

e.g. Watashi wa mai-asa 6-ji ni okimasu. 'I get up at 6:00 every morning.'

Anata wa rai-shū Hokkaidō e ikimasu ka? 'Will you go to Hokkaido next week?' 'Are you going to go to Hokkaido next week?'

→(affirmative answer) Hai, ikimasu. 'Yes, I will/am.'

→(negative answer) Iie, ikimasen. 'No, I won't/am not.'

Object, Direction, Place, Time, etc., are expressed, in any order, in the form 'N+P' as shown in the following sections. 'N ga' indicates that N is the performer of an action or that which exists or undergoes a change ('Subject'). 'N ga' or 'N o' ('Direct Object') changes to 'N wa' when N is the Topic. **Wa** may be attached to other 'N+P' or Adverbs when that part of the sentence is being contrasted with something else

§ 17 Direct Object: N o (+Vt) (Vt: 'Transitive Verb')

e.g. Watashi wa hon o yomimasu. 'I read books.'

I book read

Anata wa nani o tabemasu ka. 'What will you have (to eat)?'

—Tenpura o tabemasu. 'I'll have tempura.'

§ 18 Point of Time: N ni 'at (6:00),' 'on (Sunday)'

e.g. Watashi wa roku-ji ni okimasu. 'I get up at 6:00.'

NB Some N or N-Phrases expressing time, period, or frequency do not require -ni because of their Adverbial character.

e.g. kyō 'today,' kon-shū 'this week'

§ 19 Direction: N e 'to...', 'toward.'

e.g. Tōkyō e ikimasu 'go to Tokyo'

Ashita koko e kimasu. 'I'll come here tomorrow.'



§ 20 Starting Point: N kara 'from.'

Ending Point: N made 'till...', 'up to...', 'as far as...'

e.g. Kyōto kara Ōsaka made hashirimasu Kyōtō 9:00 Ōsaka 10:00  
ku-ji kara jū-ji made hashirimasu



NB: 'N made' is different from 'N e' in that 'N made+V' implies that the action or event expressed by V continues up to the point of N, while 'N e' merely shows a physical direction in which something moves. Thus 'e' cannot be attached to N expressing time. 'From 6 till (to) 10' \*6-ji kara 10-ji e

§ 21 Instrument or Means: N de 'with...', 'by.'

e.g. naifu de kirimasu 'cut with a knife'

Tōkyō e hikōki de ikimasu 'go to Tokyo by plane'



§ 22 Conjunctions

Soshite... 'And...'

Sore kara... 'And then...'

Shikashi... 'But...'

Keredomo... 'However, ...'

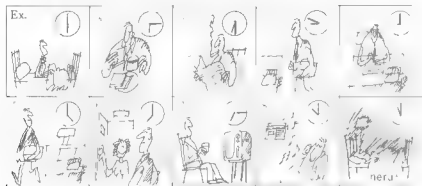
§ 23 Approximation: goro, hodo, and gurai

N (point of time) goro e.g. jū-ji goro '(at) about 10:00'

N (length of time or quantity) hodo/gurai e.g. jup-pun hodo/gurai

'(for) about 10 minutes' sen-en hodo/gurai 'about 1,000 yen'

I. Make sentences to suit the chart



Ex. (6-ji)→Watashi wa mai-nichi<sup>2</sup> roku-ji ni okimasu.

- |                                    |                  |
|------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. (6-ji 15-fun)                   | 6. (7-ji)        |
| 2. (6-ji-han)                      | 7. (7-ji 15-fun) |
| 3. (9-ji 10-pun mae <sup>3</sup> ) | 8. (10-ji)       |
| 4. (9-ji)                          | 9. (11-ji)       |
| 5. (5-ji)                          |                  |

II. Make dialogs as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. Q: (pon<sup>4</sup> o tabemasu) (mai-nichi)

Anata wa mai-nichi pon o tabemasu ka?

A: (Hai) Hai, mai-nichi pon o tabemasu.

(lie) lie, mai-nichi wa tabemasen. Tokidoki tabemasu.

1. Q (sanpo<sup>5</sup>-shimasu) (mai-asa) A: (lie)  
2. Q: (denwa o kakemasu<sup>6</sup>) (yoku) A (Hai)

語句

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 ne-ru sleep                           | 7 tegami letter, mail  |
| 2 mai-nichi every day                   | 8 kak-u write, draw    |
| 3 mae before                            | 9 mai-shū every week   |
| 4 pon bread                             | 10 mai-ban every night |
| 5 sanpo (Nv, stroll, walk               | ban (N/Adv, night      |
| 6 denwa o kake-ru make a telephone call | 11 su-u inhale         |
|   | tabako o su-u smoke    |

3. Q: (tegami<sup>7</sup> o kakimasu<sup>8</sup>) (mai-shū<sup>9</sup>) A: (lie)

4. Q: (sake o nomimasu) (mai-ban<sup>10</sup>) A: (lie)

(B) Ex. Q: (terebi o mimasu) (yoku) Anata wa yoku terebi o mimasu ka?

A: (mettani) lie, mettani mimasen.

1. Q: (tabako o suimasu<sup>11</sup>) (yoku) A: (mettani)  
2. Q: (shōsetsu o yomimasu) (yoku) A: (amari)  
3. Q: (shutcho-shimasu) (yoku) A: (mettani)

III. Fill in the blanks.

Ex. Watashi wa mai-asa shinbun (o) yomimasu.

1. Watashi wa itsumo bōru-pen ( ) tegami o kakimasu.  
2. Watashi wa mai-nichi shichi-ji ( ) ie ( ) kaerimasu.  
3. Watashi wa yoku terebi ( ) mimasu. Amari rajio ( ) kikimasen. Shikashi tokidoki rajio ( ) ongaku ( ) kikimasu.  
4. Watashi wa Tōkyō no kaisha ( ) imasu. Kōbe<sup>12</sup> ( ) kaisha no shiten ga arimasu. Desukara<sup>13</sup> watashi wa yoku Kōbe ( ) ikimasu. Tōkyō ( ) Ōsaka<sup>14</sup> ( ) Shin-kansen<sup>15</sup> ( ) ikimasu.

IV. Put the following into Japanese.

1. Next week I am going to my cousins'. His house is in the suburbs of Tokyo. It takes about an hour<sup>16</sup> by train from my house to his. It is quiet around his house.  
2. My company has a branch office in Kyushu. So I make a business trip to Kyushu every two months. Next week I am going to Kyushu. I always go to Fukuoka<sup>17</sup> by plane<sup>18</sup> It takes about an hour and a half.

12 Kōbe (a place name)

18 hikōki airplane

13 desukara thus, and so

14 Ōsaka (the second biggest city in Japan)

15 Shin-kansen New Trunk Line

16 jikan hour -kan for, during

17 Fukuoka (a place name)

## IKURA?

—Irasshaimase.<sup>1</sup>

Fuirumu<sup>2</sup> wa arimasu ka?

—Hai, gozaimasu. Kara<sup>3</sup> desu ka?

Ē, san-jū-roku-mai-dori<sup>4</sup> desu.

—Nega-kara<sup>5</sup> desu ka, poji<sup>6</sup> desu ka?

Nega desu. Ikura<sup>7</sup> desu ka?

—Yon-hyaku-ni-jū-en desu.

Zūmu renzu<sup>8</sup> wa arimasu ka?

—Hai, san-shurui<sup>9</sup> arimasu ga...

Shōto<sup>10</sup> zūmu, arimasu ka?

—Shōto zūmu desu ne.

Chotto o-machi-kudasai.<sup>11</sup>

Hai, o-matase-shimashita.<sup>12</sup> Kore desu.

Naruhodo<sup>13</sup>... Karui desu ne.

Nan-miri<sup>14</sup> kara nan-miri no zūmu desu

ka?

—Ē...to, yon-jū-san kara hachi-ju-roku-miri desu.

Benri desu yo.

—Can I help you?  
Do you have film?  
—Yes, we do. Color?  
Yes, with 36 exposures.  
—Negative color film (for prints) or positive (for slides)?  
Negative. How much is it?  
—420 yen.  
Do you have zoom lenses?  
—Yes, we have three different kinds.  
Do you have the short zoom?  
—Short zoom, is it?  
Wait a minute, please.  
Sorry to have kept you waiting. This is it.  
I see.  
Light, isn't it? From how many millimeters to how many millimeters (does this zoom lens work)?  
—Well, let me see. From 43 to 86 millimeters. It's very convenient.

- 1 irasshaimase (Cph) greeting of welcome
- 2 fuirumu 'film'
- 3 kara 'color'
- 4 mai-dori exposures (photo)
- 5 nega kara 'negative color,' film for prints
- 6 poji 'positive,' slides
- 7 ikura how much
- 8 zūmu renzu 'zoom lens'
- 9 shurui kinds
- 10 shōto 'short'
- 11 O-machi kudasai (Cph) mats-u wait
- 12 o-matase-shimashita (Cph) please
- 13 naruhodo Oh, I see
- 14 miri 'millimeter'
- 15 teika fixed/list price
- 16 man ten thousands
- 17 menzei (N) tax-free
- 18 pasupōto 'passport'
- 19 ja Then
- 20 satsu bank note
- 21 shibaraku for a while
- 22 tsure change, money
- 23 sore kara and then, after that
- 24 hoshō-sho warranty card
- hoshō (Nv) guarantee
- sho document
- See § 43

How much is it?  
—The list price is 34,000 yen, but (do you want to buy it) tax-free?  
Yes, tax-free.  
Here is my passport.  
—Well, in that case, it is 29,000 yen.  
OK, I'll take it.  
Here are three 10,000 yen bills.  
—Thank you.  
Wait a minute, please.  
Here is your 1,000 yen change. And this is your guarantee  
Thank you.

- ←kudasar-u
- 12 O-matase shimashita (Cph)
- o -suru (Polite form of suru)
- ase-ru See § 72
- 13 naruhodo Oh, I see
- 14 miri 'millimeter'
- 15 teika fixed/list price
- 16 man ten thousands
- 17 menzei (N) tax-free
- 18 pasupōto 'passport'
- 19 Ja Then
- 20 satsu bank note
- 21 shibaraku for a while
- 22 tsure change, money
- 23 sore kara and then, after that
- 24 hoshō-sho warranty card
- hoshō (Nv) guarantee
- sho document

Ikura desu ka?

—Teika<sup>14</sup> wa san-man<sup>16</sup>-yon-sen-en desu ga, menzei<sup>17</sup> desu ka?

Ē, menzei desu.

Watashi no pasupōto<sup>18</sup> wa koko ni arimasu.

—Soredewa..., ni-man-kyū-sen-en desu.

Ja,<sup>19</sup> sore o kudasai.

Hai, ichi-man-en-satsu<sup>20</sup> san-mai desu.

—Arigatō gozaimasu.

Shibaraku<sup>21</sup> o-machi-kudasai.

Hai, sen-en no o-tsure<sup>22</sup> desu.

Sore kara,<sup>23</sup> kore wa hoshō-sho<sup>24</sup> desu.

Domo arigatō gozaimashita.



# あなたとわたし

①あなたは 学生です。会社員ではありません。わたしも 会社員ではありません。学生です。

②あの 人は ジョーンズさんです。医者です。

③あなたは 何人ですか。

—わたしは 中国人です。名まえは ウーです。

④ジョーンズさんは 今 日本に います。かれの 家族は ニューヨークに います。

⑤それは なんですか。

これは 字引きです。

英語の 字引きですか。

—いいえ、そうではありません。

スペイン語の 字引きです。

⑥あしたは 五月 三日です。

けんぱう記念日です。

## Names of the MONTHS

一月 Jan.	七月 July
二月 Feb.	八月 Aug.
三月 Mar.	九月 Sept.
四月 Apr.	十月 Oct.
五月 May	十一月 Nov
六月 June	十二月 Dec

## 語句

- 1 Janzu 'Jones'
- 2 nani-jin What nationality  
nani-nan what
- 3 Chūgoku-jin Chinese (person)
- 4 Ū (a Chinese name)
- 5 Nya Yoku 'New York'
- 6 jibiki jisho dictionary
- 7 Ei-go English (language)  
cf Ei-koku (England)
- 8 Supein-go Spanish (language)  
Supein 'Spain'
- 9 ashita asu tomorrow
- 10 Go-gatsu May
- 11 mik-ka the third day (of the month)
- 12 Kenpō kinen bi Constitution Memorial Day
- 13 basu 'bus'
- 14 gakkō school
- 15 tabako-ya tobacco shop
- 16 hako box
- 17 -pon--hon, -bon See § 14
- 18 Italia 'Italy'
- 19 Roma 'Rome'
- 20 Doitsu-jin German (person)  
Doitsu Germany
- 21 Furansu-jin French (person)  
Furansu 'France'
- 22 budō shu wine  
budō grapes -shu liquor

⑦あなたの 自動車は 大きいですか。

—いいえ、大きくないです。小さいです。

⑧あなたは バスで 学校へ 行きますか。

—いいえ、電車で 行きます。

⑨たばこ屋は どこに ありますか。

—あの ビルの うしろに あります。

⑩はこの 中 へんびつが 二本と ボールペンが 六本 あります。

⑪イタリアの 首都は ローマです。ローマには 古い 建物が たくさん あります。

⑫ドイツ人は ビールを よく 飲みます。

フランス人は ぶどう酒を たくさん 飲みます。

## Names of the DAYS

1	tsu-tachi
2	futsu-ka
3	mik-ka
4	yok-ka
5	itsu-ka
6	mui-ka
7	nano-ka
8	yō-ka
9	kokono-ka
10	tō-ka
11	jū-ichi-nichi
12	jū-ni-nichi
13	jū-san-nichi
14	jū-yok-ka
15	jū-go-nichi
16	jū-roku-nichi
17	jū-shichi-nichi
18	jū-hachi-nichi
19	jū-ku-nichi
20	hatsu-ka
21	ni-jū-ichi-nichi
24	ni-jū-yok-ka
30	san-jū-n chū

Translation: ①You are a student. You are not a company employee. I am not a company employee either. I am a student.

②That man is Mr Jones. He is a doctor.

③What nationality are you?—I am Chinese. My name is Wu.

④Mr Jones is in Japan now. His family is in New York.

⑤What is that? This is a dictionary.

Is it an English dictionary?—No, it is not. It is a Spanish dictionary.

⑥Tomorrow is the third day of May. It is Constitution Day.

⑦Is your car big? No, it is not big. It is small.

⑧Do you go to school by bus? No, I go by train.

⑨Where is a tobacco shop?—There is one behind that building.

⑩There are two pencils and six ball-point pens in the box.

⑪The capital of Italy is Rome. There are a lot of old buildings in Rome.

⑫Germans drink much beer. French drink a lot of wine.

# 第 5 課

## 食堂で

1 APE  
No. 2  
y de 1

① 木村さん、あなたは もう 昼ご飯を 食べましたか。

—いいえ、まだです。

それでは いっしょに 地下の 食堂で 食べませんか。

② 大野さんは 木村さんと ろうかを 歩きました。そして エレベーターに 乗りました。食堂の 入り口で 木村さんは たばこを 買いました。—

③ —わたしは カレーライスを 食べます。大野さんは 何を 食べますか。

ぼくは きのうも おともいも カレーライスを 食べました。

それで、きょうは すしに します。

木村さんは ゆうべの 三チャンネルの コメディーを 見ましたか。

—いいえ、わたしは 見ませんでした。

うちでは みんな よく テレビを 見ます。ゆうべも ハ

### 語句

- 1 Kimura (a family name)
- 2 mō already 3 hiru gohan lunch
- 4 -mashita See §24
- 5 issho (N) the same, together  
-issho-ni (Adv. together)
- 6 chika underground
- 7 shokudō restaurant, dining hall
- 8 Ōno (a family name)
- 9 to See §33 10 roka corridor, hall
- 11 o See §28
- 12 erebēta "elevator"
- 13 ni See §27 14 nor-u ride, get on
- 15 in-guchi entrance 16 ka-u buy

- 17 karē raisu "curried rice"
- 18 boku I (male) 19 kinō yesterday
- 20 ototoi the day before yesterday
- 21 sorede therefore
- 22 kyō today
- 23 sushi (a Japanese food of vinegared rice and raw fish)
- 24 ni suru will take/decide on
- 25 yūbe last night
- 26 channeru "channel"
- 27 komedi "comedy"
- 28 minna minna (N/Adv) all
- 29 hayaku early; quick, fast+ -haya-

時から 九時半まで 家族で 見ました。木村さんは あまり 見ませんか。

—はい、あまり 見ません。いつも 晩 早く 寝ます。

その かわり、朝は 六時ごろ 起きます。

そうですね。早起きですね。

④ ところで、出張旅行の 切符を もう 買いましたか。

—はい、きのう 駅前の 交通公社で 買いました。

わたしは まだです。きょう 帰り、買います。座席指定券は まだ ありましたか。

—はい、ありました。しかし、寝台券は もう ありませんでした。

しかたが ありません。行きは 指定席ですね。

⑤ —二人は 食堂を 出ました。そして、隣の 喫茶店には いました。大野さんは コーヒーを 飲みました。木村さんは 紅茶を 飲みました。それから エレベーターに 乗りました。五階で 二人は 降りました。午後の 仕事が始まります。—

- 30 kawari substitute + kawa-u (change)  
sono kawari instead
- 31 haya-oku early rising/riser
- 32 shūtchō ryōkō business trip
- 33 kippu ticket
- 34 eki mae in front of the station
- 35 Kōtsū-kōsha (Japan Travel Bureau)  
kōtsū traffic kōsha corporation
- 36 kaeri ni on the way home +kaeri-u
- 37 zaseki-shitei ken reserved seat ticket  
zaseki seat (in trains, theaters, etc.)  
shitei (Nv) designation, specification  
ken ticket

- 38 shindai-ken sleeping-car ticket  
shindai bed, berth
- 39 shikata means, way, method  
shikata ga nai can't be helped
- 40 iki going +iku (go)
- 41 shitei seki reserved seat seki seat
- 42 o See §26
- 43 de-ru leave, go out, graduate
- 44 kissa-ten teahouse, coffee shop
- 45 hair-u enter 46 kōhi "coffee"
- 47 kōcha black tea 48 -kai floor
- 49 ori-ru get off, descend
- 50 gogo afternoon, p.m.



# Dai 5-ka

## Shokudō de

1 Kimura-san, anata wa mō hiru-gohan o tabemashita ka?

—lie, mada desu.

Soredewa issho-ni chika no shokudō de tabemasen ka?

2 —Ōno-san wa Kimura-san to rōka o arukimashita. Soshite *erebētō* ni norimashita. Shokudō no iri-guchi de Kimura-san wa *tabako* o kaimashita.—

3 —Watashi wa *karē-raisu* o tabemasu. Ōno-san wa nani o tabemasu ka? Boku wa kinō mo ototoi mo *karē-raisu* o tabemashita. Sorede kyō wa *sushi ni shimasu*. Kimura-san wa *yūbe no san-channeru no komedi* o mimashita ka?

—lie, watashi wa mimasen deshita.

Uchi dewa minna yoku *terebi* o mimasu. Yūbe mo hachi-ji kara ku-ji-han made *kazoku de* mimashita. Kimura-san wa amari mimasen ka?

—Hai, amari mimasen. Itsumo ban hayaku nemasu.

Sono kawari, asa wa roku-ji goro okimasu.

Sō desu ka. Haya-oki desu ne.

4 Tokorode, shutchō-ryokō no kippu o mō kaimashita ka?

—Hai, kinō eki-mae no Kōtsū-kōsha de kaimashita.

Watashi wa mada desu. Kyō kaen ni kaimasu. Zaseki-shitei-ken wa mada arimashita ka?

—Hai, arimashita. Shikashi, shindai-ken wa mō arimasen deshita.

Shikata ga arimasen. Iki wa shitei-seki desu ne.

5 —Futa-ri wa shokudō o demashita. Soshite, tonari no kissa-ten ni hairimashita. Ōno-san wa *kōhi* o nomimashita. Kimura-san wa *kōcha* o nomimashita. Sore kara *erebēta* ni norimashita. Go-kai de futa-ri wa orimashita. Gogo no shigoto ga hajimarimasu.—

# Lesson 5

## At the Restaurant

1 Kimura, have you had lunch already?

—Not yet.

Then let's eat at the restaurant in the basement

2 —Ōno walked down the hall with Kimura. They got in the elevator. Kimura bought some cigarettes at the entrance to the restaurant.—

3 —I'll have the curried rice. What will you have, Ōno?

I had curried rice yesterday and the day before yesterday So I'll have *sushi* today. Did you see the comedy on channel three last night, Kimura?

—No, I didn't see it.

We watch a lot of television at my house. Last night the whole family watched from 8:00 to 9:30. Don't you watch television very much, Kimura?

—No, I don't watch much. I always go to bed early. But I get up around 6:00 in the morning instead.

Is that so? An early-riser, are you?

4 Say, did you buy the ticket for your business trip yet?

—Yes, I got it yesterday at the JTB office in front of the station.

I haven't gotten mine yet. I'm going to get it on my way home today.

Did they still have some reserved seat tickets left?

—Yes, they did. But they didn't have any more sleeping car tickets.

It can't be helped. I'll have to go by reserved seat, won't I?

5 —They left the dining hall. Then they went into the coffee shop next door. Ōno had coffee. Kimura had tea. After that they got in the elevator. They got off at the fifth floor. The afternoon's work begins.—

### ANSWERS pp 64, 65

III Kesa watashi wa 6-ji-han (ni/goro) okimashita. Soshite 7-ji goro (kara) 8-ji goro (made) kōen (o) sanpo shimashita. Kyō wa Do-yōbi desu. Desukara watashi wa 9-ji (kara) 12-ji (made) kaisha (de) shigoto o shimashita. 12-ji-han ni kaisha (o) demashita. Soshite Shinjuku (e) ikimashita. Shinjuku (de) Ferenu (no) eiga (o) mimashita. Eiga wa 4-ji (ni/goro) owari-mashita. Eiga-kan (kara) chika-tetsu no eki (made) arukimashita. Chika-tetsu no eki (de) tomodachi ni arimashita. Watashi wa tomodachi to issho-ni chika-tetsu (ni) norimashita. Tomodachi wa Ginza (de) chika-tetsu (o) orimashita. Watashi wa massugu ie (ni/e) kaeri-mashita.

IV. Q: (Anata wa) itsu (dopoto e) ikimashita ka? A: (Watashi wa, kono mae no Nichi-yōbi ni (dopoto e) ikimashita. Q: (Anata wa) dare to ikimashita ka? A: (Watashi wa, imō to ikimashita. Q: Nani o kaimashita ka? A: (Fuku ya kutsu ya shita-gi o kaimashita.) Q: 7-kai no shokudo e ikimashita ka? A: Hai, ikimashita. Q: Nani o tabemashita ka? A: Sushi o tabemashita. Q: Nani o nomimashita ka? A: Kōhi o nomimashita. V. 1. Hai, hairimashita (lie, hairimasen deshita). 2. Hai, norimashita (lie, norimasen deshita). 3. Hai, (mō) yomimashita (lie, mada desu). 4. Watashi wa \_\_\_\_ Daigaku o demashita.

## § 24 Action or Event in the Past

N wa... V-mashita.

Negation: N wa... V-masen deshita.

- e.g. Watashi wa kyō Kyōto e ikimasu. 'I (will) go to Kyoto today.'  
 Watashi wa kinō Kyōto e ikimashita. 'I went to Kyoto yesterday.'  
 Kinō shinbun o yomimashita ka? 'Did you read the paper yesterday?'  
 —Hai, yomimashita. 'Yes, I did.'  
 —Iie, yomimasen deshita. 'No, I didn't.'

NB: 'V-mashita' indicates either (1) that an action or event took place in the past (= 'past tense' in English), or (2) that it has been finished at the time of speech (= 'present perfect' in English). This difference is shown often by Adverbs such as kinō ('yesterday'), mō ('already, yet'), etc., but sometimes only by context. When (1) is intended in a question of the form '.. mashita ka?', the negative answer to it is '.. masen deshita,' as seen above, whereas when (2) is intended, it should be 'mada masen,' or simply 'mada desu.'

- e.g. (Mō) hiru-gohan o tabemashita ka? 'Have you eaten lunch yet?'  
 —Iie, mada tabemasen. 'No, I haven't eaten yet.'  
 —Iie, mada desu. 'No, not yet.'

## § 25 Adverbs (2)

	+Aff. Predicate	+Neg. Predicate
mō...	'already'	'(no) more; (no) longer...'
mada...	'still'	'(not) yet'
mettani...		'seldom,' 'rarely'

## § 26 Movement Out of: N o+V

ie o demasu 'home' 'leave'   
 'leave home'  
 densha o orimasu 'train' 'get down'   
 'get off the train'

## § 27 Movement Into: N ni+V

o-furo ni hairimasu 'bath' 'enter'   
 'get into the bath'  
 densha ni norimasu 'train' 'get on'  
 'get on the train' 

NB: This ni is also sometimes used in place of e (See § 19).

## § 28 Walking, Flying, Passing, etc.: N o+V

kōen o sanpo-shimasu 'park' 'stroll'   
 'walk in the park'  
 Honkon o tōrimasu 'Hong Kong' 'pass'   
 'go by way of Hong Kong'

## § 29 General Expression of Place of Action: N de+V

- e.g. shokudō de gohan o tabemasu 'eat at the dining room'  
 Kyōto de densha ni norimashita 'got on the train in Kyoto'

## § 30 Nominal Use of the Conjunctive Form

The form to which -masu is attached is called the 'Conjunctive form.'  
 This form can be used as a Noun (like the '-ing form' in English).

- e.g. Kyōto e ikimasu 'go to Kyoto'  
 →Iki wa densha desu. 'Going is by train.'  
 →Kyōto-iki no densha 'Kyoto-going train,' 'train for Kyoto'  
 hajimarimasu 'begin'  
 →Hajimari wa 6-ji desu. 'Beginning (time) is 6:00.'

I. Use the chart on page 52 to make dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. Q Anata wa kinō nan-ji<sup>1</sup> ni okimashita ka?

A: Watashi wa kinō 6-ji ni okimashita.

II. Make dialogs as shown in the example

Ex. Q: (hiru-gohan) (tabemasu) (mō)

Anata wa mō hiru-gohan o tabemashita ka?

A: (hai) Hai, mō tabemashita.

(lie) (kore kara<sup>2</sup>) lie, mada desu. Kore kara tabemasu.

1. Q: (shigoto) (owarimasu) (mō) A: (Hai)

2. Q: (kono hon) (yomimasu) (mō) A: (Hai)

3. Q: (hōkoku-sho<sup>3</sup>) (kakimasu) (mō) A: (lie) (kore kara)

4. Q: (ginkō) (ikimasu) (mō) A: (lie) (kore kara)

5. Q: (ano eiga<sup>4</sup>) (mimasu) (mō) A: (lie) (rai-shū)

III. Fill in the blanks

Kesa<sup>5</sup> watashi wa 6-ji-han ( ) okimashita. Soshite 7-ji goro ( ) 8-ji goro ( ) kōen ( ) sanpo-shimashita. Kyō wa Do-yōbi<sup>6</sup> desu. Desu-kara watashi wa 9-ji ( ) 12-ji ( ) kaisha ( ) shigoto o shimashita.<sup>7</sup> 12-ji-han ni kaisha ( ) demashita. Soshite Shinjuku ( ) ikimashita. Shinjuku ( ) Furansu ( ) eiga ( ) mimashita. Eiga wa 4-ji ( ) owari-mashita. Eiga-kan<sup>8</sup> ( ) chika-tetsu<sup>9</sup> no eki ( ) arukimashita. Chika-tetsu no eki ( ) tomodachi<sup>10</sup> ni aimashita.<sup>11</sup> Watashi wa tomodachi to issho-ni

語句 -

1 nan-ji what time

2 kore kara from now

3 hōkoku-sho written report  
nōkoku report

4 eiga movies 5 kesa this morning

6 Do-yōbi Saturday 7 suru do

8 eiga-kan movie theater

9 chika tetsu subway  
chika underground  
-tetsu=tetsudō (railway)

chika-tetsu ( ) norimashita. Tomodachi wa Ginza<sup>12</sup> ( ) chika-tetsu ( ) orimashita. Watashi wa massugu<sup>13</sup> ie ( ) kaerimashita.

IV. Continue the following dialog, using the words in parentheses.

Q: Anata wa yoku *depōto*<sup>14</sup> e ikimasu ka?

A: (amari) lie, watashi wa amari *depōto* e ikimasen.

Q: (itsu<sup>15</sup>)?

A: (kono mae no<sup>16</sup> Nichi-yōbi)

Q: (dare to)?

A: (imōto to)

Q: (nani) (kaimasu)?

A: Fuku<sup>17</sup> ya kutsu<sup>18</sup> ya shita-gi<sup>19</sup> o kaimashita.

Q: (7(nana)-kai no shokudō) (ikimasu)?

A: (Hai)

Q: (nani) (tabemasu)?

A: (sushi)

Q: (nani) (nomimasu)?

A: (kōhi)

V. Answer the following questions.

1. Kyō anata wa kissa-ten ni hairimashita ka?

2. Kyō anata wa *takushi* ni norimashita ka?

3. Anata wa mō kyō no shinbun o yomimashita ka?

4. Anata wa dono<sup>20</sup> daigaku o demashita ka?

10 tomodachi friend 11 a-u meet

12 Ginza (a shopping street in Tokyo)

13 massugu (Na/Adv) straight

14 *depōto* 'department store'

15 itsu when

16 kono mae no last, previous

17 fuku clothes, suit 18 kutsu shoes

19 shita-gi underwear

-gi clothes cf. fudan-gi

20 dono which, what See § 5

## TSUKAREMASU!

O-taku kara kaisha made dore gurai<sup>1</sup>  
kakarimasu ka?

—So desu ne...

Ichi-jikan-han gurai desu.

Taihen<sup>2</sup> desu ne.

Mai-asa nan-ji ni okimasu ka?

—Roku-ji desu.

Soto<sup>3</sup> wa mada kurai<sup>4</sup> desu.

Uchi kara eki made ichi-kiri<sup>5</sup> hodo  
arukimasu.

Shichi-ji no kyūkō<sup>6</sup> ni norimasu.

Itsumo man'in<sup>7</sup> desu.

Sore wa tsukaremasu ne.

Kaeri no densha mo man'in desu ka?

—Ē, asa mo ban mo man'in desu.

Hiru-gohan wa doko de tabemasu ka?

—Taitei kaisha no shokudō de  
tabemasu.

Kaisha wa nan-ji ni owarimasu ka?

—Go-ji desu ga,

How long does it take  
from your house to your  
company?

—Well, let me see...

About an hour and a  
half.

It must be very hard for  
you.

What time do you get up  
every morning?

—Six o'clock.

It's still dark outside.

I walk about one kilo-  
meter from my house to  
the station.

I take the seven o'clock  
express.

It's always crowded.

It must be very tiring for  
you.

Is the train home crowd-  
ed too?

—Yes, the trains are  
crowded in the mornings  
and in the evenings.

Where do you have lunch?

—I usually eat in the  
company cafeteria.

What time does your office  
close?

—It closes at five, but I

usually stay on at the  
office until about eight.

Oh, you are so busy.

Do you get a good salary?

—So-so.

I entered this company  
the year before last.

My current salary is  
about 80,000 yen.

Is that so?

By the way,

when did you get married?

—Last spring.

Do you have any children?

—Yes, one born in Feb-  
ruary this year. A boy

Does he walk yet?

—Not yet.

taitei hachi-ji goro made kaisha ni  
nokorimasu.<sup>8</sup>

Isogashii<sup>9</sup> desu ne.

Kyūryō<sup>10</sup> wa ii desu ka?

—Mamā<sup>11</sup> desu.

Kono kaisha ni ototoshi<sup>12</sup> hairimashita.

Ima no kyūryō wa hachi-man-en gurai  
desu.

So desu ka.

Tokorode,

itsu kekkon<sup>13</sup>-shimashita ka?

—Kyo-nen<sup>14</sup> no haru<sup>15</sup> desu.

Kodomo-san wa imasu ka?

—Ē, kotoshi<sup>16</sup> no Ni-gatsu ni umare-  
mashita.<sup>17</sup> Otoko no ko desu.

Mo arukimasu ka?

—Mada desu.

▼A wedding ceremony



語句

- 1 dore gurai about how much/long dore which
- 2 taihen (Na) no easy task, lots of trouble
- 3 soto (N) outside
- 4 kura-i dark
- 5 -kiri 'kilometer/kilo-gram'
- 6 kyūko express
- 7 man'in (N) full (of people)
- 8 nokor-u remain

- 9 isogashi-i busy
- 10 kyūryō salary, wages
- 11 mamā moderate, so-so
- 12 ototoshi the year before last
- 13 kekkon (Nv) marriage
- 14 kyo-nen last year
- 15 haru spring
- 16 kotoshi this year
- 17 umare-ru be born

# 日本

日本は島国です。おもな島は北海道と、本州と、四国と、九州です。そのほか小さい島がたくさんあります。大きさはだいたい 370,000 km<sup>2</sup> (三十七万平方キロメートル)です。これはインドの  $\frac{1}{9}$  (九分の一)、アメリカの  $\frac{1}{25}$  (二十五分の一)、ソ連の  $\frac{1}{60}$  (六十分の一)です。しかし、人口は多いです。だいたい 100,000,000 人 (一億人) います。人口密度は 1 km<sup>2</sup>

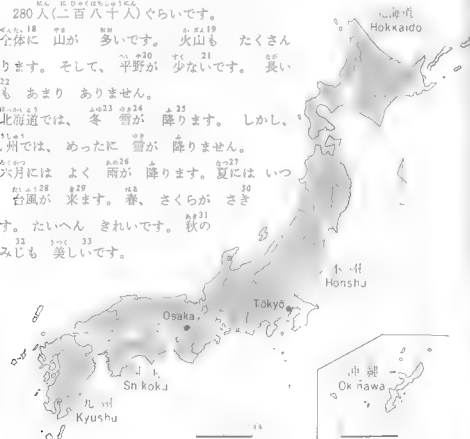
に 280 人 (二百八十人) ぐらいです。

全体に山が多いです。火山もたくさんあります。そして、平野が少いです。長い川もあまりありません。

北海道では、冬雪が降ります。しかし、九州では、めったに雪が降りません。

六月にはよく雨が降ります。夏にはいつも台風が来ます。春、さくらがさき

ます。たいへんきれいです。秋のもみじも美しいです。



Japan is an island country. The main islands are Hokkaido, Honshu, Shikoku, and Kyushu. Besides these, there are many small islands.

Japan is about 370,000 km<sup>2</sup> in size. This is 1/9 of India, 1/25 of the U. S. A., and 1/60 of the U. S. S. R. But Japan has a large population, about 100,000,000. The population density is about 280 people per km<sup>2</sup>

As a whole, Japan has many mountains, including many volcanos, but few plains. There are not many long rivers either.

In winter, it often snows in Hokkaido, but seldom in Kyushu. It rains a lot in June. There are typhoons every summer. In spring, the cherry blossoms come out. They are very pretty. The maple leaves in autumn are beautiful too.



▶ Asamayama

## 語句

- shima-gun: island country
- shima: island
- guni-kuni: country, nation
- omo (Na): main
- Hokkaidō (the northern-most island of Japan)
- Honshū (the main Japanese island)
- Shikoku (a southern Japanese island)
- hoka: other
- sono hoka: besides that
- ōki sa: size +ōki: (large)
- daitai: about, approximately
- heihō: the square (of a number)
- metoru: 'meter'
- Indo: 'India'
- (X)ibun no-(y) y/x
- Amerika: 'America'
- So-ren: the Soviet Union
- jinkō: population
- 16 oku: hundred million
- 17 jinkō-mitsudo: population density
- mitsudo: density
- 18 zentai (N, whole)
- zentai ni: as a whole
- 19 kazan: volcano
- 20 heiya: plain, open field
- 21 sukuna: few, little (quantity), scarce
- 22 kawa: river
- 23 fuyu: winter
- 24 yuki: snow
- 25 fur-u: fall (rain, snow, etc.)
- 26 ame: rain
- 27 natsu: summer
- 28 taifu: typhoon
- 29 kuru: come
- 30 sak-u: bloom
- 31 aki: autumn, fall
- 32 momiji: maple
- 33 utsukushi: beautiful

# 第 6 課

## ハイキング

TAPE  
No. 2  
Side 1

① き<sup>1</sup>のう<sup>2</sup>は 日曜日<sup>3</sup>でした。さいわい<sup>4</sup> 朝<sup>5</sup>から たいへん  
いい 天気<sup>6</sup>でしたから、わたしは 五人<sup>7</sup>の 友だち<sup>8</sup>と ハイキ  
ング<sup>9</sup>に 行<sup>10</sup>きました。大阪<sup>11</sup>から 京都<sup>12</sup>まで 電車<sup>13</sup>で 行<sup>14</sup>きまし  
た。京都駅<sup>15</sup>から バス<sup>16</sup>に 乗<sup>17</sup>りました。電車<sup>18</sup>も バス<sup>19</sup>も 人<sup>20</sup>て  
いっぱい<sup>21</sup>でした。バス<sup>22</sup>は 山<sup>23</sup>の 中<sup>24</sup>を 走<sup>25</sup>りました。

② 高雄<sup>26</sup>に 着<sup>27</sup>きました。まず 高山寺<sup>28</sup>へ 有名<sup>29</sup>な 鳥獣戯画<sup>30</sup>  
を 見<sup>31</sup>に 行<sup>32</sup>きました。たいへん おもしろ<sup>33</sup>かったです。わた  
しらは 近く<sup>34</sup>の 茶店<sup>35</sup>に 昼ご飯<sup>36</sup>を 食<sup>37</sup>べに はい<sup>38</sup>りました。

▼ Chōjū-giga



語句

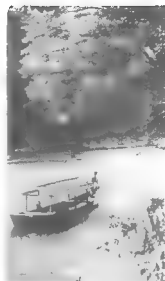
- 1 deshita See § 31
- 2 sawai (Na/Adv) luckily, fortunately
- 3 tenki (N) weather; good weather
- 4 kara (Conj) as, since, because  
See § 36
- 5 hōkingu 'hiking'
- 6 ni ik-u go (for ) See § 34
- 7 Kyōto-eki Kyoto station
- 8 ippai (N) full  
de ippai filled with

- 9 hashir-u run
- 10 Takao (a place name)
- 11 tsuk-u arrive
- 12 mazu firstly, before anything else
- 13 Kōzan-ji (a temple in Kyoto)  
-ji (Buddhist) temple
- 14 Chōjū-giga (an ink sketch of birds  
and beasts at play)
- 15 -katta desu See § 32
- 16 chikaku neighborhood ← chika-i (near)

③ そこから 山道<sup>39</sup>を 三キロほど<sup>40</sup> 歩<sup>41</sup>  
きました。道<sup>42</sup>は あまり 急<sup>43</sup>ではありま  
せんでした。山<sup>44</sup>の 空気<sup>45</sup>は たいへん  
きれい<sup>46</sup>でした。空<sup>47</sup>は とても 青<sup>48</sup>かつた  
です。山<sup>49</sup>の みどり<sup>50</sup>も 美<sup>51</sup>しかったです。

④ やがて 清滝<sup>52</sup>に 着<sup>53</sup>きました。む  
かし 芭蕉<sup>54</sup>は ここで 有名<sup>55</sup>な 俳句<sup>56</sup>を  
つくり<sup>57</sup>ました。滝<sup>58</sup>の 水<sup>59</sup>は たいへん  
冷<sup>60</sup>かったです。友だち<sup>61</sup>は 写真<sup>62</sup>を  
たくさん とり<sup>63</sup>ました。

⑤ わたしたちは 午後四時<sup>64</sup>ごろ 嵐山<sup>65</sup>に 着<sup>66</sup>きました。友だ  
ちは とても つかれましたが、わたしは あまり つかれま  
せんでした。足<sup>67</sup>も いたくな<sup>68</sup>かったです。たいへん 楽<sup>69</sup>しい  
ハイキング<sup>70</sup>でした。



▲ Arashi-yama

- 17 cha-mise old-fashioned tea house  
cha tea mise shop
- 18 yama-michi mountain path  
michi way, road
- 19 kyū (Na) steep; sudden; urgent
- 20 sora sky 21 ao-i blue; green
- 22 midori green
- 23 yagate presently, soon
- 24 Kiyo-taki (a place name)  
taki waterfall

- 25 mukashi olden times
- 26 Bashō (a haiku poet 1644-94,
- 27 haiku (a 5-7-5 syllabled poem,
- 28 tsukur-u make, produce, compose
- 29 tsumeta-i cold
- 30 tor-u take
- 31 Arashi-yama (a place name)
- 32 ashi foot, leg
- 33 ita-i painful, hurt
- 34 tanoshi-i pleasant

## Dai 6-ka Haikingu

1 Kinō wa Nichi-yōbi deshita. Saiwai asa kara taihen ii tenki deshita kara, watashi wa go-nin no tomodachi to haikingu ni ikimashita. Ōsaka kara Kyōto made densha de ikimashita. Kyōto-eki kara basu ni norimashita. Densha mo basu mo hito de ippai deshita. Basu wa yama no naka o hashirinashita.

2 Takao ni tsukimashita. Mazu Kōzan-ji e yūmei-na Chōjū-giga o mi ni ikimashita. Taihen omoshirokatta desu. Watashi-tachi wa chikaku no cha-mise ni hiru-gohan o tabe ni hairimashita.

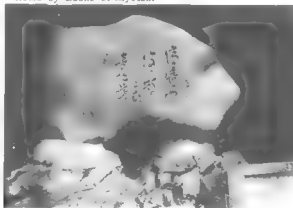
3 Soko kara yama-michi o san-kiro hodo arukimashita. Michi wa amari kyū dewa arimasen deshita. Yama no kōki wa taihen kirei deshita. Sora wa totemo aokatta desu. Yama no midori mo utsukushikatta desu.

4 Yagate Kiyo-taki ni tsukimashita. Mukashi Bashō wa koko de yūmei-na haiku o tsukurimashita. Taki no mizu wa taihen tsumetakatta desu. Tomodachi wa shashin o takusan torimashita.

5 Watashi-tachi wa gogo yo-ji goro Arashi-yama ni tsukimashita. Tomodachi wa totemo tsukaremarashita ga, watashi wa amari tsukaremasen deshita. Ashi mo itaku nakatta desu. Taihen tanoshii haikingu deshita.

▼ Haiku by Bashō at Kiyotaki

清意や  
皮に散り  
青松葉  
こむり  
芭蕉



## Lesson 6 Hiking

1 Yesterday was Sunday. Happily, it was a very nice day since morning, so I went hiking with five of my friends. We took the train from Osaka to Kyoto. From Kyoto station, we took a bus. Both the train and the bus were filled with people. The bus ran through the mountains.

2 We got to Takao. First we went to Kozan-ji Temple to see the famous "Chōju-giga." It was very interesting. We went into a nearby tea house to have lunch.

3 After that we walked the mountain paths for some three kilometers. The paths were not very steep. The mountain air was very clear. The sky was very blue. The mountain greenery was very beautiful too.

4 Soon we came to Kiyotaki. A long time ago, Bashō composed a famous haiku here. The water in the waterfall was very cold. My friends took a lot of pictures.

5 We got to Arashiyama around 4:00 in the afternoon. My friends were very tired, but I was not very tired. My feet did not hurt either. It was a very enjoyable outing.

### ANSWERS (pp. 76, 77)

- I. 1. ... 4-gatsu 3(mik)-ka, Do-yōbi deshita. 2. 4-gatsu 6(mu)-ka, Ka-yōbi desu. 3. Moku (-yōbi deshita.) 4. ... Kin-yōbi desu. 5. ... Sun-yōbi deshita. 6. 3-gatsu 28(nichi) deshita.) 7. 4-gatsu 8(yō)-ka desu.
- II. 1. Q: Kare no hanashi wa nagakatta desu ka? A: Iie, nagaku nakatta desu. Mijikakatta desu. 2. Q: Kono ierabi wa yasukatta desu ka? A: Iie, yasuku nakatta desu. Takakatta desu. 3. Q: Kono mae no shiken wa muzukashikatta desu ka? A: Iie, muzukashiku nakatta desu. Yasashikatta desu. 4. Q: Shutchō no tetsuzuki wa kantan deshita ka? A: Iie, kantan dewa arimasen deshita. Fukuzatsu deshita. 5. Q: Sono ryōkō-sha no hito wa shinsetsu deshita ka? A: Iie, shinsetsu dewa arimasen deshita. Fu-shinsetsu deshita.
- III. Kinō wa ii tenki deshita. Sora ga taihen aokatta desu. Niwa no bara no hana mo taihen kirei deshita. Kinō watashi no kaisha wa yasumi deshita. Watashi wa hima deshita. Ototoi made totemo isogashikatta desu. Kinō watashi wa yukkuri yasumimashita. Uchi ni imashita. Ototoi kara watashi no kodomo wa byōki deshita. Shikashi kinō wa sukoshi genki deshita. Watashi wa gogo isha ni ai ni ikimashita.
- IV. (B) 1. amari shizuka dewa arimasen deshita. 2. . totemo shizuka deshita. 3. sukoshi shizuka deshita. 4. sukoshi mo shizuka dewa arimasen deshita. (D) 1. zutto byōki deshita. 2. . kyō mo mada byōki desu. 3. kinō made byōki deshita.
- V. Watashi wa kotoshi no 4-gatsu ni Nippon-go no benkyō o hajimemashita. Hajime wa Nippon-go wa taihen muzukashikatta desu. Shikashi ima wa amari muzukashiku nai desu. Nippon-go no hatsuon mo muzukashiku nai desu. Watashi wa mai-shū Ka-yōbi to Kin-yōbi ni Nippon-go o benkyō-shimasu. Kyō Nippon-go no jugyō ga arimasen deshita. Kyō no jugyō wa omoshirokatta desu. Atarashii kotoba o takusan narimashita.

## § 31 Past Tense Form of the Nominal Predicate

$N_1$  wa  $N_2$  **deshita.** 'N<sub>1</sub> was N<sub>2</sub>.'

Negation:  $N_1$  wa  $N_2$  dewa **arimasen deshita.** 'N<sub>1</sub> was not N<sub>2</sub>.'

e.g. Kyō wa Nichi-yōbi desu. 'Today is Sunday.'

Kinō wa Do-yōbi deshita. 'Yesterday was Saturday.'

Kinō wa yasumi deshita ka? 'Was yesterday a holiday?'

—lie, yasumi dewa arimasen deshita. 'No, it wasn't a holiday.'

## § 32 Past Tense Forms of A and Na

		Negation'	
$N$ wa	Na <b>deshita.</b>	—	Na dewa <b>arimasen deshita.</b>
	A-katta <b>desu.</b>		A-ku { <b>nakatta desu.</b> <b>arimasen deshita.</b>

e.g. Hanako-san wa kirei desu ne. 'Hanako is pretty, isn't she?'

Mukashi mo anna-ni kirei deshita ka? 'Was she that pretty before too?'

—lie, mukashi wa anna-ni kirei dewa arimasen deshita.

'No, she wasn't that pretty a long time ago.'

Ano eiga wa omoshirokatta desu ka? 'Was the movie interesting?'

—lie, amari omoshiroku nakatta desu. 'No, it wasn't very interesting.'

## § 33 Joint Actions: N to (V) ' (do...) with N'

e.g. Tomodachi to eiga ni ikimashita. 'I went to a movie with a friend.'

Watashi to pinpon o shimasen ka? 'Won't you play ping-pong with me?'

NB: This N must be Animate, typically Human.

## § 34 Purpose

N V (Conj. form)	} + ni	ikimasu.	'go	{ for ..' 'in order to.'
		kimasu.	'come	
		kaerimasu.	'go home	

e.g. *hikingu* ni ikimasu 'go hiking (go for a hike)'

Gohan o tabe ni kaerimasu. 'I go home to eat.'

NB: This expression of purpose is possible only when the main (following) Verb is *iku*, *kuru*, or *kaeru*. For all other Verbs, another pattern is necessary. (See § 103)

## § 35 Predicative vs. Prenominal Uses of Adjectives

Most of the 'i Adjectives' can be used as Prenominal modifiers for N as well as sentence predicates as seen in § 6 and § 7.

There are, however, a few Adjectives which take different forms depending upon whether they are used as Predicates or as Prenominal modifiers.

e.g. Sono mise wa chikai desu. 'That shop is near.'

Chikaku no mise de kaimashita. 'I bought it at a nearby shop.'

tōku no machi 'a faraway town' (cf. *tōi desu*. '...is far.')

ōku no hito 'many people' (cf. *ōi desu*. '...are many/much.')

There is also a group of words that are only used as Prenominal modifiers for N (abbreviated as 'PreN').

e.g. tonda 'awful' *sugureta eiga* 'an excellent movie'

## § 36 Conjunctive Particles

Sentence <sub>1</sub> + { <b>ga</b> <b>kara</b> }	Sentence <sub>2</sub>	'(S <sub>1</sub> ), but (S <sub>2</sub> )'
		'As/Because (S <sub>1</sub> ), (S <sub>2</sub> )'

e.g. *li tenki deshita kara, hikingu ni ikimashita.*

'As the weather was fine, I went hiking.'



## I. Complete the sentences.

Kyō wa 4(shi)-gatsu 5(itsu)-ka, Getsu-yōbi<sup>1</sup> desu.

Kinō wa 4-gatsu 4(yok)-ka, Nichi-yōbi deshita.

1. Ototoi wa \_\_\_\_\_

2. Ashita wa \_\_\_\_\_

3. 4-gatsu tsuitachi<sup>2</sup> wa \_\_\_\_ -yōbi deshita.

4. 4-gatsu 9(kokono)-ka wa \_\_\_\_\_

5. 3-gatsu 31(san-jū-ichi)-nichi wa \_\_\_\_\_

6. Sen-shū<sup>3</sup> no Nichi-yōbi wa \_\_\_\_\_ deshita.7. Kon-shū<sup>4</sup> no Moku-yōbi wa \_\_\_\_\_

Days of the Week
Nichi-yōbi
.....Sunday
Getsu-yōbi
.....Monday
Ka-yōbi
.....Tuesday
Sui-yōbi
.....Wednesday
Moku-yōbi
.....Thursday
Kin-yōbi
.....Friday
Do-yōbi
.....Saturday

## II. Make dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. Q: (kinō no pāti<sup>5</sup>) (omoshiroi)

Kinō no pāti wa omoshirokatta desu ka?

A: (lie) (tsumaranai)

lie, omoshiroku nakatta desu. Tsumaranakatta desu.

1. Q: (kare no hanashi<sup>6</sup>) (nagai)A: (lie) (mijikai<sup>7</sup>)

2. Q: (kono terebi) (yasui)

A: (lie) (takai)

3. Q: (kono mae no shiken<sup>8</sup>) (muzukashii)

A: (lie) (yasashii)

4. Q: (shutchō no tetsuzuki<sup>9</sup>) (kantan<sup>10</sup>)A: (lie) (fukuzatsu<sup>11</sup>)

5. Q: (sono ryokō-sha no hito) (shinsetsu)

A: (lie) (fu-shinsetsu<sup>12</sup>)

## III. Substituting kinō for kyō, change the entire passage to suit.

Kyō wa ii tenki desu. Sora ga taihen aoi desu. Niwa<sup>13</sup> no bara no hana

## 語句

- 1 Getsu-yōbi Monday  
 2 tsuitachi the 1st day of the month  
 3 sen-shū last week sen-last  
 4 kon-shū this week kon-this  
 5 pāti 'party'  
 6 hanashi story, talk +hanasu

- 7 mijikai short  
 8 shiken examination  
 9 tetsuzuki procedure, formalities  
 10 kantan (Na) not complicated, simple  
 11 fukuzatsu (Na) complicated  
 12 fu-shinsetsu (N/Na) unkid

mo taihen kirei desu. Kyō watashi no kaisha wa yasumi desu. Watashi wa hima<sup>14</sup> desu. Kinō made totemo isogashikatta desu. Kyō watashi wa yukkuri yasumimasu. Uchi ni imasu. Kinō kara watashi no kodomo wa byōki<sup>15</sup> desu. Shikashi kyō wa sukoshi genki<sup>16</sup> desu. Watashi wa gogo isha ni ai ni ikimasu.

## IV. Make sentences as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. (omoshiroi)→Ano eiga wa omoshirokatta desu.

1. (nagai) 2. (furui) 3. (tsumaranai)

(B) Ex. (taihen)→Sono heya wa taihen shizuka deshita.

1. (amari) 2. (totemo)  
 3. (sukoshi) 4. (sukoshi mo<sup>17</sup>)

(C) Ex. (totemo)→Watashi wa kinō totemo isogashikatta desu.

1. (sukoshi) 2. (amari)  
 3. (sukoshi mo) 4. (taihen)

(D) Ex. (kinō)→Watashi wa kinō byōki deshita.

1. (zutto<sup>18</sup>) 2. (kyō mo mada) 3. (kinō made)

## V. Put the following into Japanese

I began to study Japanese this April. At first,<sup>19</sup> Japanese was very difficult. But now it is not so difficult. Japanese pronunciation is not difficult either. I study Japanese every Tuesday and Friday. I had Japanese lessons<sup>20</sup> today. Today's lessons were interesting. I learned<sup>21</sup> many new words.<sup>22</sup>

- fu non- (Pref. expressing negative)  
 13 niwa garden  
 14 hima (Na) leisure, not busy  
 15 byōki (N) sick, sickness  
 16 genki (Na) healthy  
 17 sukoshi mo nai not at all

- 18 zutto (Adv) all the time  
 19 hajime beginning ←hajime-ru  
     hajime wa at first  
 20 jugyō class (lesson)  
 21 nara-u learn  
 22 kotoba language; word

## OMOSHIROKATTA?

—Kono mae no Nichi-yobi  
doko e ikimashita ka?

Kyoto e ikimashita.

—Kyōto kenbutsu<sup>1</sup> wa omoshirokatta  
desu ka?

E, omoshirokatta desu.

—Kyōto wa furui machi desu.

Yūmei-na o-tera<sup>2</sup> ya niwa ga takusan  
arimasu.

Kyoto no doko e ikimashita?

Heian-jingū,<sup>3</sup> Nanzen-ji,<sup>4</sup> Nijo-jo<sup>5</sup> nado<sup>6</sup> e  
ikimashita.

—Doko ga yokatta<sup>7</sup> desu ka?

Nijo-jo no niwa ga utsukushikatta desu.

—Hito wa sukunakatta desu ka?

Iie, taihen okatta desu.

—Sō desho.<sup>8</sup> Kyoto no meisho<sup>9</sup> wa  
itsumo hito ga oi desu.

Jū-nen<sup>10</sup> gurai mae wa motto<sup>11</sup> shizuka-

—Where did you go last  
Sunday?

I went to Kyoto

Was it interesting sight-  
seeing in Kyoto?

Yes, it was interesting.  
Kyoto is an old town.  
There are many famous  
temples and gardens.  
Where did you go in  
Kyoto?

I went to Heian Shrine,  
Nanzen-ji Temple, Nijo  
Castle, and so on.

—Where did you enjoy  
most?

The garden at Nijo Castle  
was beautiful.

—Wasn't it crowded?

(←Were there few peo-  
ple?)

Yes, it was crowded.

(←No, there were many.)

—That's what I expected.  
Famous places in Kyoto  
are always crowded.

It was a much quieter  
town about ten years  
ago

What did you buy in  
Kyoto?

I bought a lot of picture  
postcards.

They are beautiful.  
I also took a lot of pic-  
tures.

—Did you go to Nara too?  
Yes, I did.

The Great Buddha was  
very big.

Kasuga Shrine was also  
very beautiful.

—Weren't the deer there?  
There were many.

The fawns were quite cute.  
I took many pictures of  
the fawns. I'll send them  
to my younger sister at  
home.

na machi deshita.

Kyoto de nani o kaimashita ka?

E-hagaki<sup>12</sup> o takusan kaimashita.

Kirei-na e-hagaki desu.

Shashin mo takusan torimashita.

—Nara<sup>13</sup> e mo ikimashita ka?

E, ikimashita.

Daibutsu<sup>14</sup> wa taihen okikatta desu.

Kasuga-taisha<sup>15</sup> mo totemo kirei deshita.

—Shika<sup>16</sup> ga imasen deshita ka?

Takusan imashita.

Ko-jika<sup>17</sup> ga kawairashikatta<sup>18</sup> desu.

Ko-jika no shashin o takusan torimashita.

Kuni no imōto ni okurimasu.<sup>19</sup>

▼ Nara Park



## 語句

- 1 kenbutsu (Nv) sight-seeing
- 2 tera (Buddhist) temple
- 3 Heian-jingū (a Shinto shrine in Kyoto)
- 4 Nanzen-ji (a temple in Kyoto)
- 5 Nijo-jō (a castle in Kyoto)
- 6 nado and some others, et cetera
- 7 yoi-i=ii good, satisfactory
- 8 desho (Future or Presumptive form of desu)
- 9 meisho famous place
- 10 -nen year(s)

- 11 motto more
- 12 e-hagaki picture postcard
- 13 Nara (an old capital of Japan)
- 14 Daibutsu (Great Buddha statue)
- 15 Kasuga-taisha (a Shinto shrine in Nara)
- 16 shika deer
- 17 ko-jika young deer
- 18 kawairashi-i cute
- 19 okuru send

## 日本の 行事—1

日本の 行事は、たいてい 中国から 来しました。その 中の いくつかは もう なくなりました。しかし、今でも まだ ほとんどの 家庭で、いろいろな 行事を します。

まず 一月には 正月の 行事が あります。家の 入り口に 門松や しめなわ を かざります。朝は おもちを 食べます。たくさんの 人が、神社に 参ります。

二月の 初めに 節分が あります。長い 冬の 終わりで。節分の 夜には まめを まきます。まめで おにを 追い出します。そして 福の 神を 家の 中へ 招きます。

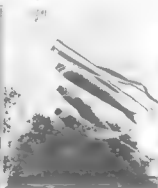
三月三日は ひな祭りで。女の子は ひな人形を へやの 中に かざります。五月五日の たんごの 節句は 男の子の 祭りで。こいのぼりを 立てます。

七月には たなばたが あります。星の 祭りで。牛かいの 星が 一年に 一度 この 夜だけ 天の川を わたります。そして おりひめの 星に 会います。この ロマンチックな 話は 中国の 伝説でした。

▼ Hina dolls



▼ Carp streamers



▼ Tanabata



## Ceremonial Events—1

Most of Japan's ceremonial events came from China. Some of them have since disappeared, but some are still celebrated in most families.

January begins with New Year's Day. People decorate the gates to their houses with pine branches and sacred ropes. They eat rice cakes for breakfast. Many go to the temples and shrines to worship.

Setsubun at the beginning of February means the end of the long winter. On that night, the people scatter beans to drive away the evil spirits and to invite in good luck.

Girls exhibit their Hina dolls on the Doll's Festival, March 3. May 5 is the Boy's Festival when boys put up their carp streamers.

Tanabata is in July. It is the Stars' Festival. According to a romantic Chinese legend, this is the one night of the year when the Cowherd Star is able to cross the Milky Way and meet the Weaver Star.

### 語句

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 gyōji ceremonial event   | 22 Hina-matsuri (Girl's Festival)                   |
| 2 ikutsu ka some, several  | matsuri festival                                    |
| 3 naku-nar-u vanish, be lost; die  | 23 Hina-ningyō (Girl's Festival dolls; ningyō doll) |
| 4 ima demo even now  | 24 Tango no Sekku (Boy's Festival)                  |
| 5 katei family, home   | 25 koi-nobori carp streamer                         |
| 6 Shō-gatsu New Year's Day(s)  | koi carp  |
| 7 kado-matsu Year's gate decorations as New Year's pine                    | nobori streamer, flag ←nobor-u (rise, climb)        |
| 8 shime-nawa (sacred rope)   | 26 tate-u hoist, make...stand; build                |
| nawa rope  | 27 Tanabata (Stars' Festival)                       |
| 9 kazar-u decorate   | 28 hoshi star                                       |
| 10 mochi (rice cake)   | 29 ushi-kai cowherd                                 |
| 11 jinja shrine  | ushi cow  |
| 12 mair-u go to worship  | kai ←ka-u (keep animals)                            |
| 13 no hajime the beginning of...   | 30 ichi-nen one year                                |
| 14 Setsubun (the day before the beginning of spring in the lunar calendar) | 31 ichi-do once                                     |
| 15 owaru end ←owar-u (end)   | do times (frequency)                                |
| 16 mame beans, peas  | 32 dake only  |
| 17 mak-u scatter   | 33 Ama no gawa the Milky Way                        |
| 18 oni ogre  | gawa←kawa (river)                                   |
| 19 odas-u drive away   | 34 watar-u cross                                    |
| 20 Fuku no kami God/Goddess of Luck  | 35 Ori-hime Weaver Princess                         |
| kami god   | ori ←or-u (weave) hime princess                     |
| 21 manek-u invite  | 36 romanchikku (Na) 'romantic'                      |
|  | 37 densetsu legend                                  |

# 第 7 課

## 公園

T \ \ P F  
No. 2  
S, de 2

① 公園には たくさん 花が さいています。木も たくさん あります。子どもが おおぜい 遊んでいます。小鳥が 木の 上で 歌っています。池には 橋が かけています。こいが およいでいます。赤い こいも 黒い こいも います。



② 向こうで 中学生が 写生をしています。男の子と 女の子が ぶらんこに 乗っています。女の子が そばで 見えています。こかげで 若い 男女が 話しています。公園の 中は 明るい 光で いっぱいです。

③ わたしたちは 先週の 土曜日、お弁当を もって、公園へ

語句

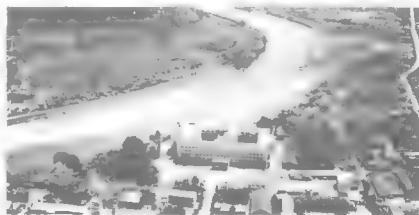
- 1 te-i-ru -de-i-ru See § 37
- 2 6zei a large number of people
- 3 asob-u play
- 4 ko-tori little bird
- 5 uta-u sing 6 ike pond
- 7 hashi bridge
- 8 kakar-u span, be built over
- 9 oyog-u swim 10 kuro-i black
- 11 chugaku sei junior high school student chugaku chū-gakkō junior high school
- 12 shasei (Nv) sketching
- 13 buranko swing

- 14 ko-kage shade of a tree
- kage shade; shadow; silhouette; image; reflection
- 15 dan-jo man and woman
- 16 hanas-u speak, tell, talk
- 17 akaru-i bright, light; cheerful
- 18 hikari light, ray
- 19 bentō lunch (to take out)
- 20 mots-u have, hold
- 21 kadan flower bed
- 22 -te kara after ing See § 40
- 23 mawar-u (Vi) go round; (make a) detour

行きました。花壇の 美しい 花を 見ながら、池を 回って、ベンチで 休みました。わたしは 本を 読みました。

妹は 写生を しました。それから こかげで 歌を 歌ったり、ハーモニカを ふいたりしました。小学生が ボールを 投げたり、すもうを とったりして 遊んでいました。わたしたちは うしろの 丘に 上って、町を 見おろしました。汽車が 走っていました。遠くに 川が 光っていました。

④ わたしたちは 川の 近くに 住んでいます。わたしは 川の こちらの 町は よく 知っています。しかし、川の 向こうがわの 町の ことは あまり 知りません。



- 1 bench 'bench'
- 25 uta song
- 26 -tari- dari See § 39
- 27 hamonika 'harmonica'
- 28 fuk-u (Vt) blow
- 29 shōgaku-sei primary school pupil shōgaku-shō gakkō primary school
- 30 bōru 'ball'
- 31 nageru throw
- 32 sumō (Japanese traditional wrestling) (ling)
- sumō o tor-u do sumo
- 33 oka hill

- 34 nobor-u climb, rise
- 35 mi-oro-u look down
- 36 kisha (steam-powered) train
- 37 tōku (N Adv) faraway place ←tō-i (far,
- 38 hikar-u shine, glitter
- 39 sunde-i-ru live, reside sum-u (live) See § 37 NB
- 40 shite-i-ru know
- shir-u get to know See § 37 NB
- 41 mukō-gawa that side, the other side -gawa side
- 42 koto thing, matter; fact, situation

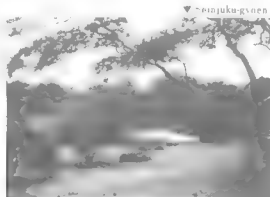
## Dai 7-ka Kōen

1 Kōen niwa takusan hana ga saite-imasu. Ki mo takusan arimasu. Kodomo ga ōzei asonde-imasu. Ko-tori ga ki no ue de utatte-imasu. Ike niwa hashi ga kakatte-imasu. Koi ga oyoide-imasu. Akai koi mo kurōi koi mo imasu.

2 Mukō de chūgaku-sei ga shasei o shite-imasu. Otoko no ko to onna no ko ga buranko ni notte-imasu. Onna no hito ga soba de mite-imasu. Ko-kage de wakai dan-jo ga hanashite-imasu. Kōen no naka wa akarui hikari de ippai desu.

3 Watashi-tachi wa sen-shū no Do-yōbi, o-bentō o motte, kōen e ikimashita. Kadan no utsukushii hana o mite kara, ike o mawatte, *benchi* de yasumi-mashita. Watashi wa hon o yomimashita. Imōto wa shasei o shimashita. Sore kara ko kage de uta o utattari, *hamonika* o fu-tari shimashita. Shōgaku-sei ga *bōru* o nagetari, *sumō* o tottari shite asonde-imashita. Watashi-tachi wa ushiro no oka ni nobotte, machi o mi-oroshimashita. Kisha ga hashitte-imashita. Tōku ni kawa ga hikatte-imashita.

4 Watashi-tachi wa kawa no chikaku ni sunde-imasu. Watashi wa kawa no kochira no machi wa yoku shitte-imasu. Shikashi, kawa no mukō-gawa no machi no koto wa amari shirimasen.



## Lesson 7 The Park

1 There are many flowers blooming in the park. There are many trees too. Many children are playing there. The birds are singing in the trees. There is a bridge over the pond. The carp are swimming. There are red carp and black carp.

2 Over there, some junior high school students are sketching. A boy and a girl are swinging on the swings. A woman is watching nearby. A young man and woman are talking in the shade of the trees. The park is filled with bright sunshine.

3 We took our lunches to the park last Saturday. Looking at the beautiful flowers in the flower beds, we went around the lake and rested on the benches. I read a book. My younger sister drew some sketches. Then we sang and played our harmonicas in the shade. Grade school children were throwing balls, wrestling, and playing other games. We climbed up the hill behind the park and looked down on the town. A train was going by. The river glittered in the distance.

4 We live near the river. I know the town on this side of the river very well. But I do not know the town on the other side of the river very well.

### ANSWERS 'pp 88, 89

I. A: Kono hito wa ima: 1. *piano* o hite imasu 2. hanashite-imasu 3. (uta o) utatte-imasu. 4. *terebi* o mite-imasu 5. shashin o totte-imasu. 6. oyoide-imasu. 7. hon o yonde-imasu 8. asonde-imasu. 9. *bōru* o matte-imasu

II. (A) 1. Watashi wa yoku *piano* o hitari, utattari shimasu 2. Watashi wa yoku tomodachi to hanashitari, asondari shimasu. 3. Watashi wa kinō hon o yondari, *terebi* o mitari shashin o tottari shimashita 4. Watashi wa kinō oyodari, hon o yondari shimashita.

III. (A) 1. Watashi wa kesa 7-ji ni okite sanpo-shimashita. 2. Watashi wa yūbe eiga o mite, ban gohan o tabete kaerimashita 3. Watashi wa kinō tomodachi ni atte, *biru* o nonde hanashimashita. 4. Watashi wa yūbe ie ni kaette *raji* o kiite, hon o yonde nemashita.

IV. 1. Kare wa kutsu o nuide heya ni hairimashita 2. Anata wa ima ikura o kane o motte-imasu ka? 3. "Anata wa kaisha no chikaku ni sunde-imasu ka?" "Iie, watashi no ie wa kaisha kara totemo taihen tōi desu." "Sore wa fu-ben desu ne." "Iie, watashi wa kuruma o motte imasu. Mai-nichi kuruma de kaisha e ikimasu." 4. "Anata wa kare no atarashii ie no denwa-bangō o shitte-imasu ka?" "Iie, furui bangō wa shitte imasu ga, atarashii bangō no wa shirimasen." 5. "Kyo *depato* hyakka-ten wa aite-imasu ka?" "Iie, shimatte-imasu Kyo wa Getsu-yōbi desu." 6. Kinō watashi wa ginkō e ittari, denwa o kaketari, tegami o kaitari shite totemo taihen isogashikatta desu

## § 37 Progressive (or Continuous) Form of Verbs

... V-te-imasu.

This form indicates

1. An action or event in progress (for V expressing continuous, durative actions or events, such as walking, eating, raining, etc.)

e.g. Kodomo ga asonde-imasu. 'Children are playing.'

Anata wa nani o shite-imasu ka? 'What are you doing?'

—Shasei o shite-imasu. 'I am sketching.'

2. A state resulting from a previous action or event (for V expressing instantaneous or momentary events or actions, such as beginning or arriving)

e.g. Matsuri wa mō hajimatte-imasu. (hajimatte←hajimaru 'to begin')

'The festival has already started (and is now going on).' (not 'is beginning')

Ginkō wa mada aite-imasu ka? 'Is the bank still open?'

—Iie, mō shimatte-imasu. 'No, it is already closed.'

3. A particular quality, state, condition, or manner of something

e.g. Ike ni hashi ga kakatte-imasu. (kakatte←kakaru 'to hang')

'There is (hanging) a bridge over the pond.'

Michi ga magatte-imasu. 'The road is curved.'

Tanaka-san wa futotte (yasete)-imasu. 'Tanaka is fat (thin).'

NB. (1) The 'V-te-imashita' form is the past counterpart of the 'V-te-imasu'

e.g. Kodomo ga asonde-imashita. 'Children were playing.'

Matsuri wa hajimatte-imashita. 'The festival had already started.'

(2) Remember that some events or actions may be seen as continuous in English but instantaneous in Japanese, and vice versa.

e.g. shinde-imasu (shinde←shinu 'to die') 'is dead,' not '(someone) is dying'

Hankachi ga ochite-imasu. (ochite←ochiru 'to fall') 'A handkerchief is lying on the ground'

(3) Some verbs such as the following are 'Stative verbs' in English, hence their equivalents must take the '-te-imasu' form in Japanese.

'know'→shitte-imasu 'have'→motte-imasu

'live (in Kyoto)'→(Kyōto ni) sunde-imasu

(4) For the formation of 'V-te,' see Appendix.

(5) The '-te-imasu' form of V is often used to express the speaker's immediate reaction to a particular state of affairs, and in that case, the Subject takes the Particle ga, and not wa.

## § 38 Succession of Two or More Actions or Events

... V-te, (...V-te,) ... V-masu -mashita.

e.g. Oka ni nobotte, machi o mimashita.

'We climbed the hill, and looked at the town.'

## § 39 Alternative (or Indefinite Number of) Actions or Events

... V-tari, ...V-tari shimasu shimashita.

e.g. Oka ni nobottari, machi o mitari shimashita.

'We did such things as climbing the hill, looking at the town (and maybe some other things, not necessarily in this order).'

## § 40 'After doing ...'

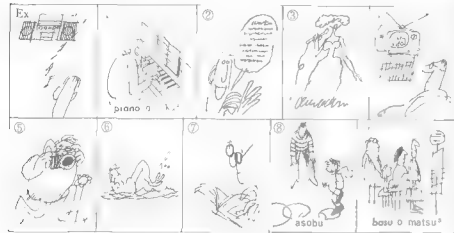
... V-te kara ...

e.g. Hana o mite kara, oka ni noborimashita.

'After looking at the flowers, we climbed the hill.'

NB: '-te, -te' also indicates the order in which the series of actions or events takes place, but '-te kara' makes it clearer.

## I. Use the chart to make dialogs as shown in the example.



Ex. Q: Kono hito wa ima nani o shite-imasu ka?

A: Kono hito wa ima ongaku o kiite-imasu.

## II. Use the chart to make sentences as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. (Ex)+1 (yoku) Watashi wa yoku ongaku o kiitari, piano o hiitari shimasu.

1. 1+3 (yoku)                      2. 2+8 (yoku) (tomodachi to)  
3. 7+4+5 (kinō)                  4. 6+7 (kinō)

(B) Ex. (Ex)+3 (kyō) Kyō watashi wa ongaku o kiite kara uta o utaimashita.

1. 4+3 (yūbe)    2. 1+7 (itsumo)    3. 7+8 (itsumo)  
4. 3+5 (kinō) (watashi-tachi)    5. 2+8 (kyō) (tomodachi to)  
6. 6+3 (kono mae no Nichi-yōbi)    7. 8+4 (kinō) (watashi-tachi)

## 語句

- 1 piano 'piano'  
2 hik-u play (musical instrument); pull  
3 mats-u wait  
4 ban-gohan supper  
5 furo bath  
6 furo ni hair-u take a bath  
7 yam-u stop (rain, snow, etc.)  
8 nug-u take off (clothes, shoes, socks, etc.)  
9 kane money (- o kane); metal

## III. Combine the sentences.

(A) Ex. (kyō) (Yūbin-kyoku e ikimasu.) (Kitte o kaimasu.)

Watashi wa kyō yūbin-kyoku e itte kitte o kaimasu.

1. (kesa) (7-ji ni okimasu.) (Sanpo-shimasu.)  
2. (yūbe) (Eiga o mimasu.) (Ban-gohan<sup>4</sup> o tabemasu.) (Kaerimasu.)  
3. (kinō) (Tomodachi ni aimasu.) (Biru o nomimasu.) (Hanashimasu.)  
4. (yūbe) (Ie ni kaerimasu.) (Rajio o kikimasu.) (Hon o yomimasu.) (Nemasu.)  
(B) Ex. (mai-asa) (Sanpo-shimasu.) (Asa-gohan o tabemasu.)

Watashi wa mai-asa sanpo-shite kara asa-gohan o tabemasu.

1. (kyō) (Shigoto ga owarimasu.) (Tomodachi ni aimasu.)  
2. (mai-ban) (O-furo<sup>5</sup> ni hairimasu.) (Nemasu.)  
3. (yūbe) (Ame ga yamimasu.) (Gaishutsu-shimasu.)

## IV. Put the following into Japanese.

1. He took off<sup>8</sup> his shoes and entered the room.  
2. How much money<sup>9</sup> do you have now?  
3. "Do you live near your office?"  
"No, I don't. My house is very far from my office."  
"It is inconvenient,<sup>10</sup> isn't it?"  
"No. I have a car.<sup>11</sup> I go to work by car every day."  
4. "Do you know the telephone number<sup>12</sup> at his new house?"  
"No. I knew his old number, but I don't know his new one."  
5. "Is the department store<sup>13</sup> open<sup>14</sup> today?" "No. It's closed.<sup>15</sup> Today is Monday."  
6. Yesterday I was very busy, going to the bank, making phone calls, and writing letters.

- 10 fu-ben (Na) inconvenient  
ben ← benri (Na) convenient; use-ful  
11 kuruma car; wheel  
12 denwa-bangō telephone number

- bangō number  
13 hyakka-ten -depōto department store  
14 ak-u (Vi) open, become available  
15 shimar-u (Vi) close

## GOMEN-KUDASAI

Gomen-kudasai.<sup>1</sup>

Taeko<sup>2</sup>-san wa irasshaimasu ka?

—Hai, orimasu.<sup>3</sup>

Dochira-sama<sup>4</sup> deshō ka?

*Rinda*<sup>5</sup> desu.

—Ā, *Rinda*-san! O-machi-shite-imashita.

Dōzo, kochira e.

O-jama<sup>6</sup> shimasu.

—Ara?! Irasshai!

Konnichi wa.

—O-kā-san,<sup>8</sup> kochira ga *Rinda*-san.

*Rinda*-san, watashi no haha<sup>9</sup> desu.

*Rinda* desu. Yoroshiku.

Kono atari wa totemo shizuka desu ne.

—Ē, kuruma mo amari tōrimasen<sup>10</sup> kara.

O-to-san<sup>11</sup> wa?

—Chichi<sup>12</sup> wa ima ni-kai de hon o yonde-  
imasu.

Excuse me.

Is Taeko at home?

—Yes, she is.

May I ask your name?

Linda

Ah, Linda! We have been waiting for you.

Please come this way.

Thank you very much.  
(+I'm sorry to intrude on you like this.)

—Hey! Come on in!

It's nice to see you.

—Mother, this is Linda.

Linda, this is my mother.

I am Linda. Glad to meet you.

This neighborhood is quiet indeed, isn't it?

—Yes, and we don't have very many cars passing by here either.

Your father is...?

—Father is upstairs reading a book now.

I'll introduce you later.

Your mother is a tea ceremony teacher, isn't she?

—Yes, on Sunday afternoons she teaches tea ceremony and flower arrangement.

How many students does she have?

—About thirty.

Taeko, do you make tea yourself?

—No, I can't.

I make very good coffee though.

Oh, that's interesting.

—This is my room

There are so many books, aren't there?

—On holidays, I read books or listen to records here.

You've got a lot of records too.

—I collect modern jazz records.

go. See §118

shōkai (Nv) introduction

15 o-cha tea ceremony, tea

16 ikebana flower arrangement

17 oshie-ru teach, show; tell

18 deshi (personal) student

19 o-cha o tate-ru make tea

20 dame (Na) no good

21 jōzu (Na) skillful, be good at

22 kōhi o ire-ru make coffee

ire-ru (Vt) put in

23 mā Oh (female)

24 rekōdo 'record,' disc

25 modan (Na) 'modern'

26 jazu 'jazz'

27 atsume-ru (Vt) collect, gather

Ato de<sup>13</sup> go-shōkai-shimasu.<sup>14</sup>

O-ka-san wa o-cha<sup>15</sup> no sensei desu ne?

—Hai, Nichi-yobi no gogo o-cha to

ikebana<sup>16</sup> o oshiete<sup>17</sup>-imasu.

O-deshi<sup>18</sup>-san wa nan-nin imasu ka?

—San-ju-nin gurai desu.

Taeko-san, anata mo o-cha o tatemasu<sup>19</sup>

ka?

—Watashi wa dame<sup>20</sup> desu.

Kōhi wa jōzu<sup>21</sup>-ni iremasu<sup>22</sup> ga....

Mā,<sup>23</sup> omoshiroi desu ne.

—Koko ga watashi no heya desu.

Hon ga takusan arimasu ne.

—Yasumi no hi wa, koko de hon o yondari rekōdo<sup>24</sup> o kiitari shimasu.

Rekōdo mo takusan arimasu ne.

—Modan<sup>25</sup> jazu<sup>26</sup> no rekōdo o atsumete<sup>27</sup>.  
imasu.





## 日本の行事-2

長男は二月、次男は八月におぼんがあります。おぼんには先祖のたましひを慰め、おぼんの最初の日に先祖のたましひを慰めます。日には火をつけて、たましひを送ります。有名な、大文字、火文字、そのほかの行事です。秋は、九月、十月、十一月、十二月、たいへんきれいです。九月の満月の日は、お月夜があります。

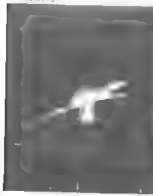
一月は、スポーツのシーズンです。学校では運動会があります。また人びとは、ハイキング、行ったり、サイクリングをしたりします。

お米の取り入れも始まります。そして、月、月には豊作を祝って、村や町で秋祭りがあります。

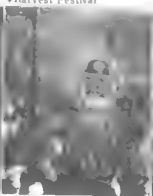
七月十五日は、七五三です。親が、一歳、九歳と七歳の子どもを連れて、神社に参ります。

年のくれば、みんなたいへんいそがしいです。大そうじをしたり、おもむきをついたりします。大みそかには、夜中の十二時から、除夜のかねを聞いて、新しい年をむかえます。

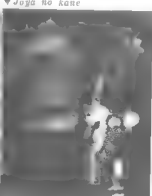
▼Daimonji



▼Harvest Festival



▼Joya no kane



## Ceremonial Events-2

We have the "Bon Festival" in July in the Kanto District and in August in Kansai. Our ancestors' souls come back to this world during Bon. We welcome them on the first day and see them off on the last day, lighting the way back. The famous Daimonji in Kyoto is one of these events.

In the autumn, the sky is clear and the moon is beautiful. We enjoy viewing the full moon in September. October is a good season for sports. Schools hold athletic events, and many people go hiking and cycling.

Autumn is also the season for harvest. Many villages and towns have festivals celebrating good crops in October and November.

November 15 is Shichi-go-san, when parents take their children aged three, five, and seven years old to the shrines.

Everyone is very busy at the end of the year, cleaning house and pounding rice for rice cakes. We welcome the new year with the bells of the temples at midnight on New Year's Eve.

### 語句

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 Kantō (Tokyo and the surrounding prefectures)                     | undō physical exercise  |
| 2 Kansai (Osaka, Kyoto, Kobe, and the surrounding prefectures)      | kai meeting   |
| 3 (o-bon) (Bon Festival: Buddhist)                                  | 21 mata and also; again   |
| 4 senzo ancestors   | 22 hito-bito people   |
| 5 tamashi spirit, soul  | 23 saikuru 'cycling'  |
| 6 saisho (N/Adv) the first  | 24 kome rice  |
| 7 mukae-ru welcome, receive   | 25 tori-ire harvest, crop   |
| 8 saigo (N) the last  | (take in; harvest)  |
| 9 hi fire   | 26 hosaku abundant harvest  |
| 10 tsuke-ru attach; turn on (light, TV, etc.)                       | 27 iwa-u celebrate  |
| 11 oku-ru see off, send   | 28 mura village   |
| 12 Dai-monji (the mountain bonfire shaped like the character 大)     | 29 aki-matsuri harvest festival   |
| dai- big, great   | 30 Shichi-go-san (festival for children three, five, and seven years old)                 |
| 13 no hito-tsu one of   | 31 oya parent   |
| 14 sunde-i-ru be clear  | 32 tsure-ru accompany, take   |
| ←su-u (get clear)   | 33 toshi year, age  |
| 15 tsuki moon, month  | 34 kure N toward the end  |
| 16 man getsu full moon  | 35 ô sôji general cleaning  |
| man- full getsu moon; month   | ô- big, large-scale   |
| 17 tsuki mi moon-viewing (ceremonially) cf hana-mi (flower-viewing) | sôji Nv, cleaning, sweeping   |
| 18 supaisu 'sports'   | 36 mochi o tsuk-u pound boiled rice into paste  |
| 19 shizun 'season'  | 37 ô misoka New Year's Eve  |
| 20 undō kai athletic meeting  | 38 yonaka midnight, (during) the night  |
|   | 39 joya no kane temple bells to ring out the old year and ring in the new year (Buddhist) |
|   | kane bell   |

# 第 8 課

## 夏休みの日記

TAP:  
N 2  
S 2

七月十日 (雨)

① きょうも 雨だった。きょうも また 雨だ。一週間 一度も 晴れなかつた。ことしは つゆ明けが おそい。

あすから 夏休みが 始まる。去年の 夏は 山に 登った。夏山は ほんとうに すばらしかった。雪も 高山植物も 美しかった。空も 雲も きれいだった。

② ことしの 夏休みには 北海道へ 行く。北海道では、札幌の 町や 摩周湖や 知床半島などを 回る。わたしは 北海道の ことは あまり 知らない。ときどき ガイドブックを 開いて、旅行の ことを 考えている。



▲Shiretoko National Park

語句

- 1 nikku diary
- 2 datta See §41 -ta See §41
- 3 mata again; also
- 4 da (Plain form of desu) See §41
- 5 is-shu-kan a week
- 6 -kan during, between
- 7 ichi-do mo nai never, not once
- 8 hare-ru clear up
- 9 -nakatta See §41
- 10 tsuyu ake end of the rainy season
- 11 tsuyu rainy season ake =ake-ru (end and begin anew)
- 12 cf. yo-ake (dawn)
- 13 oso-i late; slow
- 14 ashi tomorrow
- 15 natsu-yasumi summer vacation

- 13 nobor-u climb
- 14 natsu yama summer mountains
- 15 hontō (N) true, real
- 16 hontō-ni truly, really, indeed
- 17 subarashi-i wonderful
- 18 kōzan-shokubutsu alpine plants
- 19 kōzan high mountain
- 20 shokubutsu plants, vegetation
- 21 kumo cloud
- 22 Sapporo (the biggest city in Hokkaido)
- 23 Mashu-ko Lake Mashu
- 24 -ko lake
- 25 Shiretoko-hantō Shiretoko Peninsula
- 26 hantō peninsula
- 27 -nai See §41

八月九日 (晴れ)

③ ゆうべ 北海道から 帰った。北海道は 実に よかった。札幌は 北海道の 文化と 政治と 産業の 中心である。しかし 古い 町ではない。新しい ユニークな 町である。

わたしは 北海道の 自然に 感動した。青い 湖、広い 野原、地平線の 夕日。

④ 毎日毎日が 充実していた。わたしは 少しも つかえなかった。今度の 旅行の 収穫は けっして 小さな ものではな



▲Akan National Park

- 23 goido-bukku 'guidebook'
- 24 hirak-u (Vi/Vi) open
- 25 kangae-ru think, consider
- 26 hare fine weather +hare-ru
- 27 jitsu-ni really, truly, indeed
- 28 bunka culture
- 29 seiji politics
- 30 sangyō industry
- 31 chūshin center
- 32 de aru=da, desu
- 33 dewa nai See §41
- 34 yuniku (Na) 'unique'
- 35 shizen nature
- 36 kandō (Nv) being impressed/moved
- 37 mizuumi lake
- 38 hiro-i spacious, vast, broad

- 39 nohara field, plain (smaller than heiya)
- 40 chihe, sen horizon
- 41 sen line
- 42 yū hi setting sun cf. asa-hi
- 43 yū evening hi sun
- 44 jūtsu (Nv) fullness, completeness, be full/fulfilled
- 45 tsukare tiredness, fatigue
- 46 tsukare-ru (get tired)
- 47 kanji-ru feel
- 48 kondo (N/Adv) this time, next time
- 49 shukaku (Nv, harvest, yield
- 50 keshite nai never
- 51 chusa-na=chusa-i small See §7
- 52 mono thing

# Dai 8-ka Natsu-yasumi no Nikki

Shichi-gatsu tō-ka (Ame)

■ Kinō mo ame datta. Kyō mo mata ame da. Is-shū-kan ichi-do mo hare-nakatta. Kotoshi wa tsuyu-ake ga osoi.

Asu kara natsu-yasumi ga hajimaru. Kyo-nen no natsu wa yama ni nobotta. Natsu-yama wa hontō-ni subarashikatta. Yuki mo kōzan-shoku-butsu mo utsukushikatta. Sora mo kumo mo kirei datta.

■ Kotoshi no natsu-yasumi niwa Hokkaidō e iku. Hokkaidō dewa, Sapporo no machi ya Mashū-ko ya Shiretoko-hantō nado o mawaru. Watashi wa Hokkaidō no koto wa amari shiranai. Tokidoki *gaido-bukku* o hiraite, ryokō no koto o kangaete-iru.

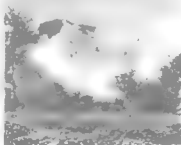
Hachi-gatsu kokono-ka (Hare)

■ Yūbe Hokkaidō kara kaetta. Hokkaidō wa jitsu-ni yokatta. Sapporo wa Hokkaidō no bunka to seiji to sangyō no chūshin de aru. Shikashi furui machi dewa nai. Atarashii *yuniku*-na machi de aru.

Watashi wa Hokkaidō no shizen ni kandō-shita. Aoi mizuumi, hiroi nohara, chihei-sen no yūhi

■ Mai-nichi-mai-nichi ga jūjitsu-shite-ita. Watashi wa sukoshi mo tsukare o kanjinakatta. Kondo no ryokō no shūkaku wa kesshite chiisa-na mono dewa nai.

▶ Akan National Park



# Lesson 8 Summer Vacation Diary

July 10 (Rainy)

■ It was rainy yesterday too. And it is rainy again today. It hasn't been clear once all week. The rainy season is late ending this year.

The summer vacation starts tomorrow. Last summer I went mountain climbing. The summer mountains were just fabulous. The snow and the alpine plants were beautiful. The sky and the clouds were beautiful too.

■ This summer vacation I'm going to go to Hokkaido. In Hokkaido, I'm going to go to Sapporo, Lake Mashu, the Shiretoko Peninsula, and lots of other places. I don't know much about Hokkaido. Sometimes I open my guidebooks and think about my trip.

August 9 (Clear)

■ I got home from Hokkaido last night. Hokkaido was really great. Sapporo is the center of Hokkaido culture, politics, and industry. But it is not an old city. It is a new and unique city.

I was impressed by Hokkaido's nature. The blue lakes, vast plains, and the sun setting on the horizon ...

■ Every day was full. I didn't feel tired in the least. I got a lot out of this trip.

## ANSWERS (pp. 100, 101)

I. (A) 1. . kōen o sanpo-suru. 2. . o-sake o nomu. 3. . kuni e kaeru. 4. . kōen ga aru. 5. Nippon-go o hanasu. 6. . pan o kau. 7. . sakana o takusan taberu. (B) 1. . eiga o minai. 2. . doko e mo ikanai. 3. . chikaku o tōranai. 4. . dare mo inai. 5. . denwa ga nai. (C) 1. . hon o katta. 2. . eki made aruita. 3. . jūko o shitta. 4. . yoku oyoida. 5. . 4-gatsu ni shinda. (D) 1. . pefi ni ikanakatta. 2. . depote e itta ga, nani mo kawa-nakatta. 3. . bori o matta ga, sonna-ni matanakatta. 4. . kaze ga fuita. Sorede hikōki wa tobanakatta

II. 1. (omoi; omoku nai; omokatta, omoku nakatta) 2. (karu, karuku nai; karukatta; karuku nakatta) 3. (yasui; yasuku nai; yasukatta; yasuku nakatta) 4. (takai; takaku nai; takakatta, takaku nakatta) 5. (benri da; benri dewa nai; benri datta, benri dewa nakatta) 6. (kirei da; kirei dewa nai; kirei datta, kirei dewa nakatta) 7. (Orando-sei da; Orando-sei dewa nai; Orando sei datta, Orando-sei dewa nakatta)

III. 1. (nai) 2. (shizuka dewa nai) 3. (datta); (da) 4. (datta); (kirei dewa nai) 5. (da); (da/hon da); (dewa nai/hon dewa nai)

IV. Watashi wa kyo-nen Nippon e kita. Ima Kyōto ni sunde-iru ga, amari Kyōto no koto o shiranai. Tokidoki yūmei-na o-tera o tazuneru Sen-shū Koke-dera e itta. Yumei-na niwa o mita. O-chaseki ga atta ga, watashi wa hairanakatta. Taiter watashi wa o tera de e hagaki o kau ga, sono hi wa ii e hagaki ga nakatta. Sorede, nani mo kawanakatta.

## § 41 Two Levels of Speech: Polite Style vs. Plain Style

All the Predicates have at least two forms ('styles') corresponding to the speaker's degree of politeness toward the listener. The forms we have been using so far in this book are examples of the Polite style, which is used most commonly in daily conversation between adults who are not close friends. The Plain style, on the other hand, is used between members of a family, classmates, or between people in similar relationships. It is also used in writing, such as books, theses, newspapers, diaries, etc. In writing letters, however, the Polite style is more common, since it is a more or less faithful copy of the spoken language.

		Polite style		Plain style
V	present	aff.	tabemasu	'eat' taberu
		neg.	tabemasen	tabenai
	past	aff.	tabemashita	tabeta
		neg.	tabemasen deshita	tabenakatta
A	present	aff.	osoi desu	'be late' osoi
		neg.	osoku nai desu osoku arimasen	osoku nai
	past	aff.	osokatta desu	osokatta
		neg.	osoku nakatta desu osoku arimasen deshita	osoku nakatta
N/Na + Copula	present	aff.	ame desu	'be rainy' ame da/de aru
		neg.	ame dewa arimasen	ame de(wa) nai
	past	aff.	ame deshita	ame datta/de atta
		neg.	ame dewa arimasen deshita (ame dewa nakatta desu)	ame de(wa) nakatta

NB dewa is sometimes contracted as ja or jã.

## § 42 Conjugation of Verbs: 3 Kinds of V

The Verb forms which we have been using so far, such as ikimasu, nomimasu, norimasu, tabemasu, mimasu, shimasu, etc., are composed of two parts: '-masu,' an Auxiliary expressing the Polite style, and the part that precedes it. The part preceding '-masu' is called the 'Conjunctive form,' and is used in various ways (besides being used as the 'base' for the 'V-masu form') as we will see later. The forms of V or A you find in the dictionary (called the 'Dictionary form') are the present affirmative forms in the Plain style of V or A. The Dictionary form of V or A is conjugated for Past, Negative, Past Negative, Imperative, Volitional, etc., just as the 'V-masu form' is conjugated for Negative, Past, etc., as we have seen in the preceding lessons.

Japanese Verbs are divided, in terms of conjugation pattern, into '1st Group' Verbs, '2nd Group' Verbs, and two 'Irregular' Verbs (suru 'do' and kuru 'come'). 1st Group V are those whose 'STEMS' (capitalized in the table below) end in consonants, and 2nd Group V are those whose STEMS end in vowels (e or i).

	Conj. + masu	Dict. form	Negative	'te'	'ta' (past)
1st Group	KAKimasu	KAKu	KAKanai	KAite	KAlta
	OYOGimasu	OYOGu	OYOGanai	OYOide	OYOida
	HANAShimasu	HANASu	HANASanai	HANASHite	HANASHita
	YOMimasu	YOMu	YOManai	YONde	YONda
	SHINImasu	SHINu	SHINanai	SHINde	SHINda
	TOBImasu	TOBu	TOBanai	TONde	TONda
	MACHImasu	MATsu	MATanai	MATte	MATta
	NORImasu	NORu	NORanai	NOTte	NOTta
	KAImasu	KA(W)u	KAWanai	KATte	KATta
2nd Group	TABEmasu	TABeru	TABEnai	TABEte	TABEta
	MImasu	Miru	MInai	MItte	MItta
Irreg.	Shimasu	Suru	Shinai	Shite	Shita
	KImasu	Kuru	Konai	Kite	Kita

NB: Certain sound changes occur at the final part of the STEM of 1st Group V in forming the 'te' or 'ta' form.

## I. Rewrite the following sentences in the Plain style

- (A) 1. Watashi wa mai-nichi kōen o sanpo-shimasu.  
 2. Watashi wa mai-ban o-sake o nomimasu.  
 3. Watashi wa rai-nen<sup>1</sup> kuni e kaerimasu.  
 4. Kono machi niwa kirei-na kōen ga arimasu.  
 5. Kare wa jōzu-ni Nippon-go o hanashimasu.  
 6. Watashi wa itsumo kono mise de *pan* o kaimasu.  
 7. Nippon-jin wa sakana<sup>2</sup> o takusan tabemasu.
- (B) 1. Watashi wa amari elga o mimasen.  
 2. Kotoshi no natsu wa doko e mo ikimasen.  
 3. Kono *basu* wa watashi no ie no chikaku o tōrimasen.  
 4. Ano heya niwa dare mo imasen.  
 5. Kono heya niwa denwa ga arimasen.
- (C) 1. Kinō *depōto* de hon o kaimashita.  
 2. Kesa eki made arukimashita.  
 3. *Terebi* de sono jiko<sup>3</sup> o shirimashita.  
 4. Kyo-nen no natsu wa yoku oyogimashita.  
 5. Watashi no haha wa kotoshi no 4-gatsu ni shinimashita.<sup>4</sup>
- (D) 1. Watashi wa kinō no *pāti* ni ikimasen deshita.  
 2. Kinō *depōto* e ikimashita ga, nani mo kaimasen deshita.  
 3. Watashi wa teiryū-jo<sup>5</sup> de 10-pun hodo *basu* o machimashita ga, kyō niwa sonna-ni machimassen deshita.  
 4. Yūbe tsuyoi kaze<sup>6</sup> ga fukimashita.<sup>7</sup> Sorede hikōki wa tobimasen<sup>8</sup> deshita.

## 語句

- 1 rai-nen next year  
 2 sakana fish 3 jiko accident  
 4 shin-u die  
 5 teiryū-jo streetcar/bus stop

- jo=-sho place  
 6 kaze wind 7 fuku (Vi) blow  
 8 tob-u fly; jump  
 9 Oranda-sei made in Holland

II. Replace the underlined words by the words in parentheses, and make sentences as shown in the examples

Ex. Kanojo no jitensha wa atarashii *desu*.

- a. Kanojo no jitensha wa atarashii.  
 b. Kanojo no jitensha wa atarashiku nai.  
 c. Kanojo no jitensha wa atarashikatta.  
 d. Kanojo no jitensha wa atarashiku nakatta.

1. (omoi) 2. (karui) 3. (yasui) 4. (takai)  
 5. (benri-na) 6. (kirei-na) 7. (Oranda-sei<sup>9</sup>)

III. Fill in the blanks using Plain style verbs.

1. Kono machi niwa tosho-kan wa aru ga, bijutsu-kan wa ( ).  
 2. Kyōto wa shizuka-na machi da. Shikashi Tōkyō wa amari ( ).  
 3. Kinō made kare wa byōki ( ). Shikashi kyō wa mō genki ( ).  
 4. Mukashi kono kawa no mizu wa kirei ( ) ga, ima wa mō amari ( ).  
 5. Kore wa watashi no hon ( ). Are mo watashi no ( ). Shikashi sono ōkii hon wa watashi no ( ).

IV. Rewrite the following in the Plain style.

Watashi wa kyo-nen Nippon e kimashita. Ima Kyōto ni sunde-imasu ga, aman Kyōto no koto o shirimasen. Tokidoki yūmei-na o-tera o tazune-masu.<sup>10</sup> Sen-shū Koke-dera<sup>11</sup> e ikimashita. Yūmei-na niwa o mimashita. O-cha-seki<sup>12</sup> ga arimashita ga, watashi wa hairimasen deshita. Taitei watashi wa o-tera de e-hagaki o kaimasu ga, sono hi wa ii e-hagaki ga arimasen deshita. Sorede, nani mo kaimasen deshita.

- Oranda 'Holland'  
 -sei made in .. e.g. Nippon-sei  
 10 tazune-ru visit; ask  
 11 Koke-dera (a Kyoto temple famous

- for its moss garden)  
 koke moss -dera=tera temple  
 12 (o-)cha-seki tea ceremony; place  
 where tea ceremony is performed

## GENKI KAI?

Tarō: Yā, genki kai'?

Hanako: Ē, genki yo.

Anata mo kuroku natta<sup>3</sup> wa ne.<sup>4</sup>Oyogi<sup>5</sup> ni itta no<sup>6</sup>?T: Iya,<sup>7</sup> yama e itta yo.

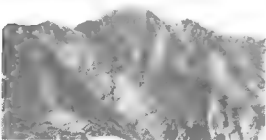
H: Doko no yama e itta no?

Hodaka<sup>8</sup>? Soretomo,<sup>9</sup> Norikura<sup>10</sup>?T: Iya, Minami-Arupusu<sup>11</sup> ni nobotta.Kita-dake<sup>12</sup> ga yūdai<sup>13</sup> de

taihen yokatta.

H: Nan-nichi hodo itta no?

T: Is-shu-kan da.

Yama-goya<sup>14</sup> ni tomattari<sup>15</sup> tento<sup>16</sup> ohattari<sup>17</sup> shite tanoshikatta yo.Kimi<sup>18</sup> wa doko e itta?

T: Hi, you OK?

H: Yes, I'm OK.

You look so tan.

Did you go swimming?

T: No, I went to the mountains

H: What mountain did you go to?

Hodaka, or Norikura?

T: No, I went climbing in the Southern Alps.

Kita-dake was majestic and very exciting.

H: How many days were you there?

T: One week.

We had a fantastic time staying in mountain huts and sometimes in a tent. Where did you go?

## 語句

1 kai See § 65

2 Hanako (a given name (f))

3 kuroku naru get sunburnt nar-u become

4 wa ne See § 65

5 oyogi swimming

←oyog-u (swim)

6 no (Ps. indicating a question (Familiar))

7 Iya No, not that

8 Hodaka (name of a mountain)

9 soretomo or else

10 Norikura (name of a mountain)

11 Minami-Arupusu Southern Alps (in Japan.

minami south

Arupusu 'Alps'

12 Kita-dake (name of a mountain)

kita north

-dake high mountain

H: I went to Shonan Beach and had a nice time swimming, playing games, and singing songs around the campfire at night, it was great

T: How many people were there in your group?

H: There were four of us. This same group is going to go again to a swimming pool

T: Always having fun, aren't you?

What about your studies?

H: Of course. They're OK

T: Well, see you again, then

H: I went to Shonan Beach and had a nice time swimming, playing games, and singing songs around the campfire at night, it was great

T: How many people were there in your group?

H: There were four of us. This same group is going to go again to a swimming pool

T: Always having fun, aren't you?

What about your studies?

H: Of course. They're OK

T: Well, see you again, then

H: I went to Shonan Beach and had a nice time swimming, playing games, and singing songs around the campfire at night, it was great

T: How many people were there in your group?

H: There were four of us. This same group is going to go again to a swimming pool

T: Always having fun, aren't you?

What about your studies?

H: Of course. They're OK

T: Well, see you again, then

H: I went to Shonan Beach and had a nice time swimming, playing games, and singing songs around the campfire at night, it was great

T: How many people were there in your group?

H: There were four of us. This same group is going to go again to a swimming pool

T: Always having fun, aren't you?

What about your studies?

H: Shōnan-kaigan<sup>19</sup> de asonda wa.Oyoidari gemu<sup>20</sup> o shitari,yoru wa kyanpu-faiya<sup>21</sup> o kakonde<sup>22</sup>

uta o utattari shite

tanoshikatta wa.

T: Nan-nin hodo no gurupu<sup>23</sup> datta?H: Yo-nin de itta no.<sup>24</sup>Onaji<sup>25</sup> gurūpu de mata pūru<sup>26</sup> ni iku

no.

T: Asonde bakari<sup>27</sup> da ne.Benkyō wa daijōbu<sup>28</sup> kai?H: Mochiron<sup>29</sup> yo.

T: Jā, mata ne.

13 yūdai (Na) majestic

14 yama-goya mountain hut

-goya=koya hut, small house

15 tomar-u (Vi) stay (overnight), stop

16 tento 'tent'

17 har-u stretch, pitch (a tent)

18 kimi you (sing. Friendly)

19 Shōnan-kaigan Shonan Beach

kaigan beach

20 gemu 'game'

21 kyanpu faiya 'campfire'

22 kakom-u surround

23 gurupu 'group'

24 no , you know (fem )

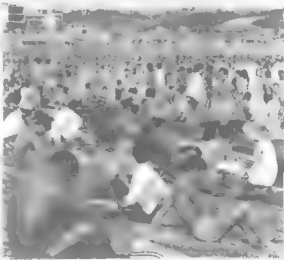
25 onaji same

26 pūru 'pool' swimming pool

27 bakari only, just

28 daijōbu all right

29 mochiron of course



## 日本の 着物

紀の、の、日、の、本、日本の、着物について、書いてい  
る。日本人は、当時、大きい、布に、あなを、あけて、頭から、かぶってい  
た。三世紀から、七世紀ごろの、古墳の、はにわの、人形は、いろいろな  
着物を、着ている。これが、当時の、日本の、服装であった。この、ころ  
は、ワンピースから、ツーピースに、かわって、男女とも、はかまを  
はいた。

八世紀の、初めの、法律では、役人の、服装  
が、決まっていた。だいたい、和服、朝服  
の、服装と、にていた。  
平安時代、宮廷の、婦人は、きれいな、着  
物を、たくさん、重ねて、着ていた。これが  
十二ひとえである。  
鎌倉時代ごろから、下着の、小そでを、ふだ  
ん着として、着た。次の、室町時代では、婦  
人は、正式な、服装としても、小そでを、着た。  
それが、今の、着物に、発達した。  
着物は、日本人の、スタイルにも、日本の  
気候にも、適している。しかし、そでや、す  
そが、長いから、活動には、適していない。  
若い、人は、いつも、洋服を、着て、お  
正月や、結婚式などの、特別な、機会に、しか  
着物を、着ない。



▲A modern kimono

## Kimono

A Chinese history book written in the 3rd century says that the Japanese cut holes in large pieces of cloth and wore them at that time. The clay images found in the old tombs made from the 3rd to the 7th centuries show the costume of the people in those days. Around that time they began to wear two-piece clothes, an upper garment and a skirt.

In the early 8th century, there was a law regulating the government officials' costumes, which resembled those in China and Korea.

In the Heian Period the court ladies wore *Junihitoe*, several beautiful *kimonos* one over another. People started wearing *kosode*, which they used to wear as undergarments, as home wear in the Kamakura Period, and ladies wore *kosode* even as formal clothing in the following, the Muromachi, period. This has developed into the *kimono* which we wear today.

*Kimono* is suitable both for the Japanese build and climate. But it limits a person's movement, since it has long sleeves and is ankle-length. Young people wear Western clothes in every day life and *kimonos* only on special occasions such as New Year's Day and weddings.

語句

- 1 seiki century
- 2 rekishi history
- 3 kimono (traditional Japanese clothing)
- 4 ni tsuite about, concerning
- 5 tōji at that time, those days
- 6 nuno cloth
- 7 ana hole
- 8 ake-ru (Vi) open
- 9 atama (upper part of) head
- 10 kabur-u put on (hat, pullover sweater, etc.) put over one's head
- 11 kofun old mound
- 12 haniwa clay image
- 13 ki-ru wear (shirts, dress)
- 14 fukusō style of dress, costume
- 15 no koro the time/age/days of
- 16 wanpisu 'one-piece'
- 17 tsupisu 'two-piece'
- 18 kawaru (Vi) change
- 19 tomo both/all together
- 20 hakama (a formal kimono skirt)
- 21 hak-u put on, wear (trousers, skirt, socks, shoes)
- 22 hōritsu law
- 23 yakunin government worker, official
- 24 kimaru (Vi) get fixed/decided
- 25 cf. kime-ru (Vi)
- 26 shiki ceremony
- 27 Chōsen Korea
- 28 nite-iru resemble
- 29 Heian-jidai Heian Period (794-1192)

- jidai period, age
- kyūtei imperial court
- fujin lady
- kasane-ru fold, put one on top of another
- jū-ni-hitoe (a special kind of kimono)
- Kamakura-jidai Kamakura Period (1192-1333)
- Kamakura (a place name)
- kosode (a kind of kimono)
- sode sleeve
- fudan-gi everyday clothes
- fudan everyday, usual
- to shite as
- Muromachi-jidai Muromachi Period (1338-1573)
- seishiki (N/Na) formal
- hattatsu (Nv) develop
- utsuru 'style' 40 kikō climate
- teki-suru be suitable for, suit
- suso hem of clothes/skirt/trousers
- katsudō (Nv) activity
- yō-fuku Western clothes
- yō- Western of yō-shiki (Western style) yō-sho (imported book)
- kekkon-shiki wedding ceremony
- shiki ceremony
- tokubetsu (N/Na/Adv) special
- kikai occasion, opportunity
- shika nai only

# 第 9 課

## 町の中

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99  
100

① 車が たくさん 通りますね。

—はい、この へんは いつも 自動車や バイクで いっぱいですから、 気を つけて 歩いてください。この 前の 日曜日にも すぐ そこで 事故が ありました。

信号は どこに ありますか。

—百メートル 先の 交差点まで ありません。あの 交差点で あちら側へ 渡りましょう。この へんは むかしは 静かな いい 町でしたが、今は すっかり 変わりました。

空気も よく ないですね。

—子どもは いつも 家の 中で 遊ばなければなりませんから、かわいそうです。

② —今 信号は 青ですが、もう 赤に 変わります。

今から 渡らない ほうが いいですね。待ちましょうか。

—ええ、ちょっと 待った ほうが いいです。次の 青

語句

1 hen the area of; around	achira there, yonder
2 baiku 'bike,' motorcycle	11 -mashō let us See § 49
3 ki mind, care	12 sukkari completely, quite
4 ki o tsuke-ru be careful	13 -nakereba nanara-i have to See § 45
5 -te-kudasai See § 43	14 kawaiso (Na) pitiful
6 sugu (Adv) soon, near	15 ao (N) blue; green +ao-i
sugu soko right over there	16 aka (N) red +aka-i
7 shingō signal, traffic light	17 hō ga ii had better See § 48
8 saki (N) ahead, away, tip; future	18 ao shingō green light
9 kosa ten intersection	19 -ni naru become
kosa cross ten point	20 Sā Now, Well
10 achira-gawa that side	21 tōri street

信号まで 待ちましょう。

ああ、青.. になりました。さあ、渡りましょう。

この 通りは だいぶん 静かですね。お宅は もう すぐ ですね。

—はい、あと 二百メートルほどです。ああ、向こうから 一郎が 来ました。

③ —おとうさん、お帰り。公園へ 遊びに 行っても いい。

—お客さんに あいさつを しなさい。

—おじさん、今日は。

やあ、今日は。

—もう おそいから いっしょに 帰ろう。

これこれ、そんなに 道の まん中に 出ては いけません。さあ、もっと 右の ほうを 歩きなさい。

④ ああ、ちょっと 待ってください。いい 店が ありました。ケーキを 買いましょう。……一郎くん、はい。

—おじさん、ありがとう。

—どうも ありがとうございます。しかし、この 次からは そんなに 気を つかなくていいです。

22 daibun daibu fairly, largely	See § 46
23 ato the rest; after	33 hō side, direction
24 ichirō (a given name (m))	34 kēki 'cake'
25 O kaeri (Cph) Welcome home.	35 -kun Mr. (Suf used by men, usually to men of equal or lower status/age
26 temo ii may, can, be allowed to See § 47	36 Hai Here it is, Yes
27 kyaku guest, visitor, customer	37 kono tsugi next time
28 aisatsu (Nv) greeting	38 tsuka-u use
29 -nasai See § 44	ki o tsuka-u be attentive/considerate
30 o-j-san Sir!, Mister!; uncle	
31 Kore kore! Here, here.	
32 -tewa ikenai should not, ought not	



## Dai 9-ka Machi no Naka

### 1 Kuruma ga takusan tōrimasu ne.

—Hai, kono hen wa itsumo jidōsha ya *baiku* de ippai desu kara, ki o tsukete aruite-kudasai. Kono mae no Nichi-yōbi nimo sugu soko de jiko ga arimashita.

Shingō wa doko ni arimasu ka?

—Hyaku-mētoru saki no kōsa-ten made arimasen. Ano kōsa-ten de achira-gawa e watarimashō. Kono hen wa mukashi wa shizuka-na ii machi deshita ga, ima wa sukkari kawarimashita.

Kōki mo yoku nai desu ne.

—Kodomo wa itsumo ie no naka de asobanakereba narimasen kara, kawaiisō desu.

### 2 —Ima shingō wa ao desu ga, mō aka ni kawarimasu.

Ima kara wataranai hō ga ii desu ne. Machimashō ka?

Ē, chotto matta hō ga ii desu. Tsugi no ao-shingō made machimashō.

Ā, ao ni narimashita. Sā, watarimashō.

Kono tōri wa daibun shizuka desu ne. O-taku wa mō sugu desu ne.

—Hai, ato ni-hyaku-mētoru hodo desu. Ā, mukō kara Ichirō ga kimashita.

### 3 O-tō-san, o-kaeri. Kōen e asobi ni ittemo ii?

—O-kyaku-san ni aisatsu o shi-nasai.

—Oji-san, konnichi wa!

Yā, konnichi wa!

—Mō osoi kara ishsho-ni kaerō. Kore-kore, sonna-ni michi no man-naka ni detewa ikemasen. Sā, motto migi no hō o aruki-nasai.

### 4 Ā, chotto matte-kudasai. Ii mise ga arimashita. Kēki o kaimashō.

Ichirō-kun, hai.

Oji-san, arigatō.

—Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu. Shikashi, kono tsugi kara wa sonna-ni ki o tsukawanaide-kudasai.

## Lesson 9 In the Town

### 1 There sure are a lot of cars, aren't there?

—Yes. Watch where you're walking, since this area is always filled with cars and motorcycles. Last Sunday there was an accident right over there.

Where's the traffic light?

—There isn't one until that intersection 100 meters on up.

Let's cross over that way at that intersection. This area used to be a nice quiet neighborhood, but it sure has changed.

The air isn't very good either.

—I feel sorry for the children, because they always have to play inside

### 2 —The light is green now, but it's changing to red.

We'd better not cross the street now. Let's wait, shall we?

—Yes, it's better to wait a bit. Let's wait for the next green light.

It's green. Well, let's go. This street is pretty quiet. It's only a little way more to your house, right?

—Right. It's about 200 meters more. Here comes Ichiro.

### 3 —Welcome home, Father. Can I go to the park to play?

—Say hello to our guest.

—Hello, sir.

Hello.

—It's late, so let's go home together. Hey, don't walk out into the middle of the street like that. Walk more on the right-hand side.

### 4 Wait up a minute, please. There was a very nice shop. Let's buy some cake.

Here you are, Ichiro.

—Thank you.

—Thank you very much. But please don't worry about things like that next time.

### ANSWERS (pp. 112, 113)

II. 1. made hatarate Nichi-yōbi ni yasumimasu. 2. nete asa hayaku 3. yoru ne-naide benkyō-shimasu. 4. yomanaide tarebi bakari 5. benkyō-shinaide itsumo 6.

matanaide tokushi de 7. kawanaide biru

III. 1. (ikanakutemo ii desu). 2. (nottewa ikemasen). 3. (katta hō ga ii desu). 4. (mamoranakereba narimasen). 5. "(konakereba narimasen ka)?" "(kite-kudasai)." 6. "(kaettemo ii desu ka)?" "(kaettewa ikemasen) (ite-kudasai)." 7. (utawanaide-kudasai). 8. (suttewa ikemasen). 9. (ikanai hō ga ii desu). 10. (doo o shime nasai).

IV. 1. Ashita watashi-tachi wa hoikingu ni ikimasu. Watashi-tachi wa asa kara ban made arukanakereba narimasen. Asa hayaku shuppatsu-shimasu kara, kon'ya wa hayaku nemashō 2. Ashita wa kaisha e konakutemo ii desu ga, asatte wa kanarazu kite-kudasai. 3. Kodomo wa o-sake o nondari, tobako o suttari shitewa ikemasen.

## § 43 Requesting a Thing or Action

N o	} kudasai.	'Please give me. '
... V-te		'Please do...(for me).'
Neg V-(a)naide		'Please do not... '

e.g. Mizu o kudasai. 'Give me water, please.'

Matte-kudasai. 'Please wait.' (matte ← matsu 'wait')

Matanaide-kudasai. 'Please do not wait.'

NB: matanaide is the '-te form' of matanai, which is the negative form of matsu 'wait.' For the formation of the Plain negative forms of the 3 kinds of V, see the table in § 42.

## § 44 Order or Command

V (Conj. form)-nasai.

e.g. Machi-nasai. 'Wait'

Koko ni namae o kaki-nasai. 'Write your name here.'

NB: This is a more straightforward way of ordering someone to do something, but still the style is polite. Its plain variation, which is a more blunt and harsh expression, is mate, kake, tabero, miro, etc. (formed by adding an 'e' to 1st Group V stems and 'ro' to 2nd Group V stems). The Irregular Plain imperatives are shiro (← suru) and koi (← kuru).

## § 45 Duty or Obligation

V-(a)nakereba narimasen. '... have to do....' 'must do...'

e.g. Watashi wa Nara e ikanakereba narimasen. 'I have to go to Nara.'

Anata wa isoganakereba narimasen. 'You have to hurry.'

NB Literally, this means, 'if.. do not do..., it won't work out.'

## § 46 Prohibition

V-tewa ikemasen. '...must not do. '

e.g. Koko de tabako o suttewa ikemasen. 'You may not smoke here.'

Koko o watattewa ikemasen. 'You must not cross the street here.'

## § 47 Permission

V-temo ii desu. 'It will be all right to do...'  
'You may do....'

e.g. Koko de tabako o suttemo ii desu ka? 'May I smoke here?'

—Hai, (suttemo) ii desu. 'Yes, you may (smoke).'

—Iie, (suttewa) ikemasen. 'No, you may not (smoke).'

## § 48 Advice

V-ta hō ga ii desu. 'It would be better if you did....'  
'You'd better do....'

Negation: V-(a)nai hō ga ii desu. 'It would be better not to do....'

NB. 'hō' is used in a sentence almost like any other Noun, although it never occurs without being modified by other words or phrases. Such Nouns are called Pseudo Nouns.

## § 49 Expressions of Will, Offering, or Inviting

V-mashō. 'Let us do...'; 'I will do...'  
V-masho ka? 'Shall we do...?'; 'Shall I do. ?'

e.g. Biru o nomimashō ka? 'Shall we have some beer?'

—Hai, nomimashō. —'Yes, let's (have some).'

Anata o machimashō ka? 'Shall I wait for you?'

—Hai, matte-kudasai. —'Yes, please (wait).'

## I. Transform the sentences as shown in the examples.

Ex. *Pen*<sup>1</sup> de kakimasu.(A) Q: *Pen* de kakanakereba narimasen ka?A: *Pen* de kakanakutemo ii desu ga, *pen* de kaite hō ga ii desu.(B) Q: *Pen* de kaitemo ii desu ka?A: *lie*, *pen* de kaitewa ikemasen. *Pen* de kakanaide-kudasai.(C) Q: *Pen* de kakimashō ka?A: *Hai*, *pen* de kaite-kudasai.(D) *Pen* de kaki-nasai.

1. Kyō Nagoya<sup>2</sup> e ikimasu.
2. Ashita koko e kimasu.
3. Kono hon o yomimasu.
4. Mado o shimemasu.<sup>3</sup>
5. Kono fuku o sentaku<sup>4</sup>-shimasu.
6. Kare o machimasu.
7. Ima o-kane o haraimasu.<sup>5</sup>
8. Nippon-go de hanashimasu.

## II. Combine the sentences

1. Watashi-tachi wa Getsu-yōbi kara Do-yōbi made hatarakimasu.<sup>6</sup> Soshite Nichi-yōbi ni yasumimasu.
2. Yoru hayaku ne-nasai. Soshite asa hayaku oki-nasai.
3. Kare wa tokidoki yoru nemasen. Soshite benkyō-shimasu.
4. Kare wa mettani shinbun o yomimasen. *Terebi* bakari mite-imasu.
5. Sono kodomo wa benkyō-shimasen deshita. Itsu mo asonde-imashita.
6. Watashi-tachi wa *basu* o machimasen deshita. *Takushi* de ikimashita.
7. *Watashi* wa sono o-kane de hon o kaimasen deshita. (Sono o-kane de) *biru* o nomimashita.

## 語句

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1 <i>pen</i> 'pen'                                  | 5 <i>hara-u</i> pay                |
| 2 Nagoya (a name of a city between Tokyo and Osaka) | 6 <i>hatarak-u</i> work            |
| 3 <i>shime-ru</i> (Vt) close, shut                  | 7 <i>tomar-u</i> stop              |
| 4 <i>sentaku</i> (Nv) washing (clothes)             | 8 <i>jisho-jubiki</i> dictionary   |
|   | 9 <i>kisoku</i> regulations, rules |

## III. Complete the sentences.

1. Kyō wa Nichi-yōbi desu kara, *kaisha* e (need not go).
2. Kono densha wa anata no eki niwa tomarimasen<sup>7</sup> kara, (should not get on it).
3. Kono *jisho*<sup>8</sup> wa taihen ii *jisho* desu kara, (better buy it).
4. Watashi-tachi wa iroiro-na *kisoku*<sup>9</sup> o (should observe<sup>10</sup>).
5. "Ashita nan-ji ni koko e (have to come)?"  
"Kananazu<sup>11</sup> 9-ji ni koko e (please come)."
6. "Kyō wa tsukaremashita. *Mō* (may I go home)?" "lie, (please don't go home). *Mō* *sukoshi* koko ni (please stay)."
7. Kodomo ga nete-imasu. *Sonna-ni ōkii koe*<sup>12</sup> de (please do not sing).
8. Eiga-kan *dewa tabako* o (should not smoke).
9. *Netsu*<sup>13</sup> ga arimasu kara, kyō wa *kaisha* e (better not go).
10. *Samui*<sup>14</sup> kara (shut the door).

## IV. Put the following into Japanese.

1. Tomorrow we are going on a hike. We'll have to walk from morning till evening. We'll start<sup>15</sup> early in the morning, so let's go to bed early tonight.<sup>16</sup>
2. You don't have to come to work tomorrow, but be sure to come the day after tomorrow.<sup>17</sup>
3. Children must neither drink nor smoke.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 10 <i>mamor-u</i> keep (a promise), observe (the rules); obey, protect | <i>netsu</i> ga aru feverish              |
| 11 <i>kanarazu</i> (Adv) without fail                                  | 14 <i>samu-i</i> cold (for weather only)  |
| 12 <i>koe</i> voice  | 15 <i>shuppatsu</i> (Nv) departure, start |
| 13 <i>netsu</i> fever  | 16 <i>kon'ya</i> tonight                  |
|  | 17 <i>asatte</i> the day after tomorrow   |

## OISHII!

—Shokujī<sup>1</sup> ni ikimasho ka?

Ē, oishii<sup>2</sup> mise ni tsurete-itte<sup>3</sup>-kudasai.

—Nani ga ii desu ka?

Wa-shoku<sup>4</sup>? Soretomo, Chūka-ryōri<sup>5</sup>?

Wa-shoku ga ii desu.

—Jā, sushi-ya<sup>6</sup> e ikimashō.

Koko wa kirei-na sushi-ya deshō?

Tokidoki kimasu. Sonna-ni takaku nakute, oishii desu yo.

Sate,<sup>7</sup> nani ni shimasu ka?

Tekka<sup>8</sup> ni shimasu. Anata wa?

—Watashi wa moriawase<sup>9</sup> desu.

Akadashi<sup>10</sup> wa ikaga<sup>11</sup> desu?

Miso<sup>12</sup> supu<sup>13</sup> desu ne.

Chumon<sup>14</sup>-shite-kudasai.

—Chotto. Tekka to moriawase, sore ni<sup>15</sup> akadashi futa-tsu kudasai.

—Shall we go to eat?  
Yes, please take me to  
someplace good.

What would you like?  
Japanese food or Chi-  
nese food?

I prefer Japanese food.  
—OK, let's go to a *sushi*  
shop.

This is a good *sushi*  
shop, isn't it?  
I come here sometimes.  
It isn't so expensive and  
the food is delicious.  
Well, what'll you have?

I'll take *tekka*. How about  
you?

—I'll have *moriawase*.  
Don't you want *aka-  
dashi*?

That's 'miso' soup, isn't it?  
Please order.

—Say! Can we have one  
*tekka* and one *mori-  
awase*, and two *aka-  
dashi*?

## 語句

- 1 shokujī (Nv) meal, eat-  
ing
- 2 oishi-i delicious
- 3 tsurete-ku take (a per-  
son) to, accompany
- 4 wa-shoku Japanese  
food
- 5 Chūka-ryōri Chinese  
food
- 6 ryōri (Nv) cooking
- 7 sushi-ya sushi shop
- 7 Sate Well,
- 8 tekka (a kind of *sushi*)
- 9 moriawase (a kind of  
*sushi*)
- 10 akadashi (a kind of soup)

—What will you have to  
drink, sir?

—One bottle of beer,  
please.

—Sorry to have kept  
you waiting.

Well, beautiful, isn't it?  
Japanese cooking is always  
arranged so beautifully.  
It's just... it's never  
served warm.

—That's so. Soup and rice  
are better served hot,  
but *sushi* and *sashimi*  
are better cold.

—How is it? Is it good?  
Yes, very.

—O-nomimono<sup>16</sup> wa?

—*Biru* ip-pon kudasai.

—Hai, o-machidō-sama.<sup>17</sup>

Hō, kirei desu ne. Nippon no ryōri wa  
*mina taihen kirei desu*.

Tada,<sup>18</sup> amari atatakaku<sup>19</sup> nai desu ne.

—Sō desu ne. *Sūpu* ya gohan wa  
*atsui*<sup>20</sup> hō ga ii desu ga,  
*sushi* ya *sashimi*<sup>21</sup> wa tsumetai hō ga  
ii desu.

—Ikaga desu? Oishii desu ka?

Ē, totemo totemo.

- 1 ikaga? How do you like  
?; What about ?
- 12 miso bean paste
- 13 *sūpe* 'soup'
- 14 *chūmon* (Nv) order (a  
thing)
- 15 sore ni besides; more-  
over
- 16 *nomimono* something to  
drink
- 17 o-machidō-sama (Cph)
- 18 tada only
- 19 atataka-i warm
- 20 *atsui* hot
- 21 *sashimi* (raw fish)



## 産業—1

日本は もともと 農 業、戦後 工業が 急速に 発達して、  
 今では 世界の おもな 工業国の 一つである。労働人口の うち 約  
 19%が 農業や 水産業などの 第一産業、34%ぐらいが 工業などの  
 第二産業、約47%が サービス業などの 第三産業で 働いている。

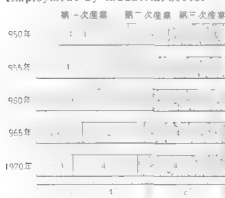
日本人は この 国で 働く 人々の 大半で、農産物も 機械化が  
 ずいぶん 進んでいる。むかしから 農産生産物のおもなものは 米だ。  
 日本は まわりの 海だから、むかしから 水産業が さかんだ。沿岸

では 工場の 廃水で 水が よごれていて、さかなが 減っているから、  
 魚や 貝類が ふえている

木材の 見ると 年々 ふえている。しかし 国内の 木材の 供給は  
 日本には 鉄や 銅などの 鉱物ほど ほとんど ない。石油も ほとんど  
 ない。石炭は むかしは たくさん あったが、今では たいへん 少ない。

これらの ものほとんど 外国から 輸入している。

### Employment by industrial sector



## Industry—1

Japan was originally an agricultural country, but the rapid industrial development since World War II has made her one of the world's main industrial countries. About 19% of the working population is engaged in primary industries such as agriculture and fishing, about 34% in secondary industries such as manufacturing, and about 47% in tertiary industries such as service.

The farming population has fallen to about half what it was twenty years ago. Agriculture has also been mechanized considerably. Rice has been the main crop for many years.

Fishing has flourished for a long time in Japan, surrounded as it is by the sea. Lately, deep-sea fishing has been increasing because the coastal seas are polluted by foul drainage from factories, and this has cut catches there.

The demand for timber is increasing every year, but timber must be imported because the domestic supply is so small. Nor is Japan rich in mineral resources such as iron and copper. There is not much petroleum either. Japan used to have a lot of coal but she has only a little now. Thus Japan imports almost all of these raw materials.

### 語句

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 motomoto originally                          | the next step                                |
| 2 nō-gyō-koku agricultural country             | 22 nō gyō-seisan-butsu agricultural products |
| nō-gyō agriculture                             | seisan (Nv) production                       |
| -gyō vocation, profession                      | seisan-butsu product                         |
| -koku country, nation                          | seisan (Nv) production                       |
| 3 sen-go postwar                               | 23 mawari surroundings                       |
| 4 kō gyō engineering industry                  | 24 sakan (Na) flourishing                    |
| 5 kyusoku (Na) rapid                           | 25 engan (N) coast along                     |
| kyōsoku-ni rapidly                             | 26 haisui (Nv) drainage, sewage              |
| 6 sekai world                                  | 27 yogore-ru become dirty                    |
| 7 kō-gyō-koku industrial nation                | 28 en'yō-gyō-gyō deep-sea fishery            |
| 8 rōdō-jinkō working population                | en'yō deep-sea gyō-gyō fishery               |
| rōdō (Nv) labor                                | 29 fue-ru (Vi) increase                      |
| 9 no uchi among                                | 30 mokuzai timber, wood                      |
| 10 yaku about, approximately                   | 31 juyō (N) demand                           |
| 11 paiseito 'percent'                          | 32 nen-nen year after year                   |
| 12 suisang-gyō fisheries industry              | 33 koku-nai (N) within the country,          |
| 13 dai-ichi-jī-sangyō primary industry         | domestic -nai within                         |
| dai- (Pref expressing ordinal numbers)         | 34 kyōkyū (Nv) supply                        |
| dai- -jī the -th                               | 35 gaikoku foreign country                   |
| 14 dai-ni-jī-sangyō secondary industry         | 36 yunyū (Nv) import                         |
| 15 sobiū-gyō service industry                  | cf. yushutsu (export)                        |
| sobiū (Nv) 'service'                           | 37 tetsu iron                                |
| 16 dai-san-jī-sangyō tertiary industry         | 38 dō copper                                 |
| 17 hanbun half                                 | 39 kōbutsu mineral                           |
| 18 heru (Vi) decrease, be reduced              | 40 hotondo almost                            |
| 19 kikai-ka (Nv) mechanization, automatization | 41 sekiyu petroleum                          |
| -ka (Nv) -ization                              | 42 sekitan coal                              |
| 20 zuibun extremely; quite                     | 43 kore-ra these                             |
| 21 susum-u advance, progress, go on to         | -ra (Suf expressing plural)                  |

# 第 10 課

## 夏の 手紙

TAPE  
1  
2  
3

- ① マリアさん、毎日 暑い 日が続きますが、お元気が  
すか。きょうは 八月七日で、立秋です。しかし、「秋の  
始まり」も 名まえだけで、まだ 真夏の 暑さですね。
- ② 休みが 始まってから、もう 一か月 たちました。こ  
の 前 わたしが あなたの 家へ 行ってから、半月に なり  
ますね。この 半月の あいだ、わたしは 山に 登ったり、  
海水浴に 行ったりして、よく 遊びました。中部地方の 山  
は 高く きれいでした。山の 上には まだ 雪が 残  
っていました。わたしたちが 山に 登っている あいだは  
ずっと よい 天気でしたが、海へ 行っている あいだは  
よく 雨が 降りました。その のちは 毎日 むし暑くて  
たいへんです。
- ③ わたしは このごろ 毎朝 六時に 起きて、すずしい  
あいだに 二時間 フランス語の 勉強を します。夜は 暑

語句

- 1 Maria 'Maria'
- 2 atsu-i hot
- 3 tsuzuku (Vi) continue  
cf tsuzukeru (Vt)
- 4 do See § 54
- 5 Rissshu (the first day of autumn on  
the lunar calendar)
- 6 hajimari beginning ←hajimaru
- 7 ma-natsu midsummer  
ma- at the height center of
- 8 atsu-sa heat ←atsu-i
- 9 tats-u elapse
- 10 han-tsuki half a month
- 11 ni naru amount to

- 12 no aida during See § 51
- 13 kaisuyoku swimming at the beach  
kaisu sea water -yoku bathing
- 14 Chūbu-chihō (Nagoya and the sur-  
rounding prefectures)  
chihō district, locality
- 15 yama-yama many mountains  
cf. hito-bito, ie-ie (many houses)
- 16 nochi later, after
- 17 mushi-atsu-i sultry, hot and stuffy  
mushi- ←mus-u (steam)
- 18 -kute See § 54
- 19 kono-goro these days, recently
- 20 suzushi-i cool

- い ときは まどな あけたまま 寝ます。
- ④ 八月二十日は 土曜日で、ほんおどりの 日です。町  
の人々は みな 夜通し おどります。いつも 晩は 静か  
で さびしい 町も、その 夜だけは さわがしくて にぎや  
かな 町に なります。歌や わらい声 が 町じゅうに 流れ  
ます。みんな 歌いながら おどります。見物人も おどり  
の 輪を 見ながら いっしょに 歌います。ほんおどりは  
たいへん おもしろいからです、マリアさん、土曜の 夕方  
から ぜひ 来てください。いっしょに おどりましょう。ご  
ちそうを 作って 待っています。
- ⑤ まだ 暑さが 続きますから、どうぞ おからだに 気を  
つけてください。さようなら。
- 八月七日

友 子

- 21 Furansu-go French (language)
- 22 toku time, occasion See § 50
- 23 ake-ru open (Vt)
- 24 -ta mama See § 53
- 25 Bon-odori Bon Festival Dance  
odori dance ←odor-u
- 26 yo dōsh all night
- 27 odor-u dance
- 28 sabishi-i lonely, forlorn, desolate
- 29 sawagashi-i noisy
- 30 nigiyaka (Na) lively, animated
- 31 warai-goe sounds of laughter  
warai wara-u (laugh,  
goe goe-koe voice
- 32 machi-jū the whole town  
jū the whole, throughout
- 33 nagare-ru flow
- 34 -nagara while ing See § 52
- 35 kenbutsu-nin onlooker
- 36 wa circle, ring
- 37 Do-yō=Do-yōbī Saturday
- 38 yūgata evening
- 39 zehi by all means, without fail
- 40 gochisō good food, feast
- 41 tsukur-u make
- 42 karada body; health
- 43 Tomoko (a given name (F))

# Dai 10-ka Natsu no Tegami

1 *Maria-san, mai-nichi atsui hi ga tsuzukimasu ga, o-genki desu ka? Kyō wa Hachi-gatsu nano-ka de, Rissshū desu. Shikashi, 'aki no hajimari' mo namae dake de, mada ma-natsu noatsu-sa desu ne.*

2 *Yasumi ga hajimatte kara, mō ik-ka-getsu tachimashita. Kono mae watashi ga anata no ie e itte kara, han-tsuki ni narimasu ne. Kono han-tsuki no aida, watashi wa yama ni nobottari, kaisuiyoku ni ittari shite, yoku asobimashita. Chūbu-chihō no yama-yama wa takakute kirei deshita. Yama no ue niwa mada yuki ga nokotte-imashita. Watashi-tachi ga yama ni nobotte-iru aida wa zutto yoi tenki deshita ga, umi e itte-iru aida wa yoku ame ga furimashita. Sono nochī wa mai-nichi mushi-atsukute taihen desu.*

3 *Watashi wa kono-goro mai-asa roku-ji ni okite, suzushii aida ni ni-jikan Furansu-go no benkyō o shimasu. Yoru wa atsui toki wa mado o aketa mama nemasu.*

4 *Hachi-gatsu ni-jū-ni-nichi wa Do-yōbi de, bon-odori no hi desu. Machi no hito-bito wa mina yodōshi odorimasu. Itsumo ban wa shizuka de sabishii machi mo, sono yoru dake wa sawagashikute nigiyaka-na machi ni narimasu. Uta ya warai-goe ga machi-jū ni nagaremasu. Minna utainagara odorimasu. Kenbutsu-nin mo odori no wa o minagara issho-ni utaimasu. Bon-odori wa taihen omoshiroi desu kara, Maria-san, Do-yō no yūgata kara zehi kite-kudasai. Issho-ni odorimashō. Gochisō o tsukutte matte-imasu.*

5 *Mada atsu-sa ga tsuzukimasu kara, dōzo o-karada ni ki o tsukete-kudasai. Sayōnara!*

Hachi-gatsu nano-ka

Tomoko

# Lesson 10 A Summer Letter

August 7

1 Dear Maria,

The days continue hot, but I hope you are in good health. Today is August 7, *Rissshū*. But it is "the beginning of fall" in name only, and it is still as hot as midsummer.

2 It is already a month since our vacation started. And it is half a month since I went to your house, isn't it? During this half-month, I have been having a lot of fun, climbing mountains, going swimming in the ocean, and everything. The mountains in the Chubu area are high and beautiful. There was still some snow left on the mountain tops. All the time I was mountain climbing, the weather was good, but it rained a lot while I was at the beach. Since then, it has been terribly muggy every day.

3 Recently, I have been getting up every morning at 6:00 and studying French for two hours while it is still cool. At night when it is hot I sleep with my bedroom window open.

4 August 22 is a Saturday and the day of the *bon* dance. The people in our town dance all night. Even towns which are always quiet and lonely at night become noisy and lively that one night. The town rings with song and laughter. Everyone sings and dances. Even the spectators sing along while watching the circle of dancers. The *bon* dancing is very interesting, so I hope you will please come on Saturday evening. Let's dance together. I'll fix a big supper and be waiting for you.

5 The hot days are continuing yet, so please take care of your health. Good-bye.

Tomoko

## ANSWERS <pp 124, 125

- I. (A) 1. ( Rai-nen Yōroppa e ) iku toki (tomodachi to issho-ni ikimasu). 2. ( ga ) kita toki (watashi ). 3. ( ga ) nai toki (tomodachi ). 4. ( ga ) i toki (yoku ).
- (B) 1. ( ga ) futte-iru aida (kissa-ten ). 2. ( ) watashi ga Nippon ni inar aida (anata ). 3. ( ga ) byōki no aida (watashi ).
- (C) 1. ( o ) tabenagara (ferēbi ). 2. ( o ) abinagara (uta ). 3. ( o ) kangaenagara (kōen ). 4. (Hiru) hatarakinagara (yoru ).
- (D) 1. ( o ) haita mama (ie. ). 2. ( o ) aketa mama (asa ). 3. ( hayaku ) dekaketa mama (mada ). 4. ( ni ) suwatta mama (nagai ).
- (E) 1. a. Shūshoku-shite kara (kekkan ). b. Shūshoku suru mae ni (kekkan ). 2. a. ( e ) itte kara (Birū ). b. ( e ) iku mae ni (Birū ). 3. a. ( ni ) atte kara (shokuji ). b. ( ni ) au mae ni (shokuji ).
- II. 1. toki 2. toki 3. aida 4. tsuketa mama 5. utainagara 6. neru mae ni
- III. (A) 1. Nippon no dōro wa semakute abunai desu. 2. Kyōto wa shizuka de kirei desu. 3. Kare no ie wa eku kara tōkute fu-ben desu. (B) 1. Kanojo wa watashi no imōto de, namae wa Aa desu. 2. Kyō wa Nichi-yōbi de, karsha wa yasumi desu

## § 50 Phrases and Clauses Expressing Time

kono/sono/ano		'(at) this/that time'
N no		'(at) the time of ..'
Na-na		'(at) a...time'
A (Dict. form)	+ toki (ni)	'(at) a...time'
V (Dict. form)		'When ..'
V-ta		'When has/had done...'
V-te-iru		'When...is/was doing...'

**Toki** by itself means 'time,' but it is mostly used as a Pseudo Noun (See § 48), and it functions something like the conjunction 'when' in English. The Particle **ni** can be omitted because of **toki**'s Adverbial character.

e.g. ame no toki '(at) a time of rain'='when it rains'

hima-na toki '(at) a leisurely time'='when one is not busy'

samui toki '(at) a cold time'='when it is cold'

untten-suru toki '(at) a driving time'='when one drives'

Politeness (style) or Past (tense) need not be observed in the phrase or clause preceding **toki**, because it is a subordinate (or dependent) clause, and style and tense are expressed by the form of the Predicate at the end of the whole sentence. Thus when the main Predicate expresses the Past tense, then the V or A preceding **toki** may or may not take the Past tense form ('-ta form'). The '-ta form' of V usually shows that the action or event is finished at the time expressed by the main Predicate. Compare the following:

Nippon e kuru toki, kare ga kûkô made kite-kuremashita.

'When I came to Japan, he came to the airport (to see me off).'

Nippon e kita toki, kare ga kûkô made kite-kuremashita.

'When I came to Japan, he came to the airport to meet me.'

## § 51 Other Expressions of Temporal Relations

N no } +aida 'while...'; 'during the time of..'  
V-te-iru }

N no } +mae (ni) 'before'  
V (Dict.) }

N no } +ato (de) 'after...'  
V-ta }

## § 52 Two Simultaneous Actions

V<sub>1</sub> (Conj. form) + -nagara V<sub>2</sub> 'do(V<sub>2</sub>) while doing(V<sub>1</sub>)'

e.g. terebi o minagara gohan o taberu 'eat while watching TV'

## § 53 'as...is'

V<sub>1</sub>-ta + mama V<sub>2</sub>

This presupposes that the Subject is already in a certain state (expressed by V-ta, A, or some other modifier) and performs some action (V<sub>2</sub>) while maintaining the original state.

e.g. Watashi wa tatta (<tatsu 'stand') mama kôhi o nomimashita.

'(I had been standing and) I drank my coffee standing.'

## § 54 Conjoining Adjectival or Nominal Predicates

...A-kute, ...  
...Na de, ... '..., and...'  
...N de, ...

e.g. Kanojo wa wakakute, kirei desu. 'She is young and pretty.'



## I. Combine the following sentences.

(A) using 'toki'

1. (Rai-nen Yōroppa<sup>1</sup> e ikimasu.) (Tomodachi to issho-ni ikimasu.)
2. (Kare ga kimashita.) (Watashi wa mada nete-imashita.)
3. (O-kane ga arimasen.) (Tomodachi ni karimasu.<sup>2</sup>)
4. (Tenki ga ii desu.) (Yoku kōen de asobimasu.)

(B) using 'aida'

1. (Ame ga futte-imashita.) (Kissa-ten ni imashita.)
2. (Kotoshi no natsu watashi wa Nippon ni imasen.) (Anata wa watashi no ie o tsukatteru<sup>3</sup> ii desu.)
3. (Kodomo ga byōki desu.) (Watashi wa kaisha o yasumanakereba narimasen.)

(C) using 'nagara'

1. (Gohan o tabemasu.) (Terebi o mimasu.)
2. (Showā<sup>4</sup> o abimasu.<sup>5</sup>) (Uta o utaimasu.)
3. (Iroiro-na koto o kangaemasu.) (Kōen o sanpo-shimasu.)
4. (Hiru hatarakimasu.) (Yoru daigaku de benkyō-shimasu.)

(D) using 'mama'

1. (Kutsu o hakimasu.) (Ie ni haitewa ikemasen.)
2. (Mado o akemashita.) (Asa made nemutte<sup>6</sup>-imashita.)
3. (Kanojo wa asa hayaku dekakemashita.<sup>7</sup>) (Mada kaerimasen.)
4. (Kare wa sono isu ni suwarimashita.<sup>8</sup>) (Nagai aida ugokimasen<sup>9</sup> deshita.)

## 語句

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Yōroppa 'Europe'                           | 6 nemuru sleep cf. ne-ru (go to bed, |
| 2 kari-ru borrow cf. kas-u (lend)            | lie down, sleep)                     |
| 3 tsuka-u spend, use                         | 7 dekae-ru go out                    |
| 4 showa 'shower'                             | 8 suwaru sit                         |
| 5 abu-ru pour dash (water, etc) over oneself | 9 ugok-u (Vi) move                   |
|  | 10 mae ni See § 51                   |

(E) using '-te kara,' and then 'mae ni'<sup>10</sup>

1. (Shūshoku<sup>11</sup>-shimasu.) (Kekkon-shimasu.)
2. (Anata no ie e ikimasu.) (Biru<sup>12</sup> ni denwa o kakemasu.)
3. (Kare ni aimasu.) (Shokujī-shimashō.)

## II. Choose the correct word.

1. Watashi ga hōmu<sup>13</sup> ni tsuita (aida, toki), densha no ~~do~~ ga shimarimashita.
2. Watashi ga sono mise de kaimono<sup>14</sup> o shite-iru (aida, toki), kare ga mise no mae o tōrimashita.
3. Watashi ga sono mise de kaimono o shite-iru (aida, toki), kare wa watashi o matte-imashita.
4. Rajio o (tsuketa<sup>15</sup> mama, tsukenagara) asa made nemutte-imashita.
5. Minna de uta o (utatta mama, utainagara) yama ni noborimashita.
6. Yoru (neru mae ni, nete kara) ha<sup>16</sup> o migakimasu.<sup>17</sup>

## III. Make sentences using the key phrases.

(A) Ex. (kono tatemono) (ōki<sup>11</sup>) (atarashii)

→Kono tatemono wa ōkikute atarashii desu.

1. (Nippon no dōro) (semai<sup>18</sup>) (abunai<sup>19</sup>)
2. (Kyōto) (shizuka) (kirei)
3. (kare no ie) (eki kara tōi) (fu-ben)

(B) Ex. (kore) (toshō-kan) (are) (bijutsu-kan)

→Kore wa toshō-kan de, are wa bijutsu-kan desu.

1. (kanojo) (watashi no imōto) (namae) (An<sup>20</sup>)
2. (kyō) (Nichi-yōbi) (kaisha) (yasumi)

11 shūshoku (Nv) get find employment

12 Biru 'Bill'

13 hōmu 'platform'

14 kaimono shopping

15 tsuke-ru turn on

16 ha tooth

17 mōgaku polish, brush

18 semai small and narrow cf. hiroi

19 abunai dangerous

20 An 'Ann'

## II TENKI DESU NE

Tsutomu<sup>1</sup>: Ii tenki desu ne.

Do desu,<sup>2</sup> *tenisu*<sup>3</sup> o  
shimasen ka?

Emiko<sup>4</sup>: Ē, ii wa yo.<sup>5</sup>

Kigae<sup>6</sup> o shite kara iku wa.  
Sukoshi matte-ite ne.

T: Un,<sup>7</sup> jā boku wa *raкет*<sup>8</sup> to  
*bōru* o karite-kimashō.<sup>9</sup>

E: O-negai ne.<sup>10</sup> Sugu kuru wa.

E: O-machidō-sama.

T: Sā, ikimashō.

E: Mā, takusan no hito ne.

*Kōto*<sup>11</sup> ga hito-tsu mo<sup>12</sup> aite<sup>13</sup>-inai wa.

T: Do-yobi no gogo desu kara, hito ga  
ōi desu.

E: Dō shimasho?

T: Kono *benchi* ni kakete<sup>14</sup> sukoshi  
machimashō.

Honto<sup>15</sup>-ni ii o-tenki desu ne....

T: It's a nice day, isn't it?  
How about a game of tennis?

E: Yes, fine with me.  
I'll go after I change clothes.  
Wait a minute, will you?

T: Sure. I'll go borrow some rackets and balls.  
E: Please  
I'll be right back.

E: Sorry to have kept you waiting.  
T: Let's go.

E: My, there are so many people here. There is not a single court available.

T: It's because it's Saturday afternoon that there are so many people.

E: What shall we do?  
T: Let's sit down on this bench and wait a bit. It really is a nice day, isn't it?

## 語句

- 1 Tsutomu (a given name (m))
- 2 Dō desu (Cph) What do you say to ing?
- 3 *tenisu* 'tennis'
- 4 Emiko (a given name (f))
- 5 ii wa yo Fine with me. (fem)
- 6 kigae changing (clothes)
- 7 Un-Hai Ok (Familiar)
- 8 *raкет* 'racket'
- 9 karite kuru borrow and come -te-kuru See § 87
- 10 O-negai ne (Cph: short for 'O-negai-shimasu' and used when asking a favor) negai wishes, hopes -nega-u (wish)
- 11 *kōto* 'court'

E: Shall we have some juice while we are waiting?  
T: I'll go buy it.

E: It's cold and delicious. They are playing volleyball and basketball here too.

T: They are even playing baseball over there.

E: Autumn really is the season for sports, isn't it?

T: Look, there is a court free now. Let's begin.

E: Yes, let's go.  
Oh dear, I've left my tennis shoes behind. Is it all right to play in these shoes?

T: No, you can't go onto the court with those shoes on.  
I'll go get your tennis shoes.  
Can you wait here a moment?

E: I'm sorry, really.

E: Matte-iru aida, *jūsu*<sup>16</sup> demo<sup>17</sup>  
nomimasan ka?

T: Boku ga katte-kimasho.

E: Tsumetakute oishii wa.

*Bare-boru*<sup>18</sup> ya *basuketto-bōru*<sup>19</sup> mo  
shite-imasu ne?

T: Mukō dewa *yakyū*<sup>20</sup> mo *yatte*<sup>21</sup>-imasu.

E: *Supōtsu* no aki ne.

T: Ā, *kōto* ga akimashita.  
Hajimemashō ka?

E: Ē, hajimemashō.

Ara, *tenisu-shūzu*<sup>22</sup> o wasurete<sup>23</sup>-kita wa.  
Kono kutsu de shitemo ii kashira<sup>24</sup>?

T: Iya, sono kutsu de *kōto* ni haittewa  
ikemasen.

Boku ga *tenisu-shūzu* o totte-kimashō.<sup>25</sup>  
Koko de matte-ite-kudasai.

E: Gomen-nasai<sup>26</sup> ne.



## 日本の 歴史—I

わが国の いちばん 古い 歴史の本は「古事記」である。それより 前の ことは 考古学の 資料からしか わからない。そのころ 日本には「縄文文化」と「弥生文化」があって、「弥生時代」には 農業が 発達してきた。次の「古墳時代」は いわゆる 氏姓制度の 時代で、天皇家も 氏族の 一つであった。



▲Jomon pottery

中絶人子(しんれい) 初め、いかに 最初の 志を 作った。人子 は たいへん かしこくて、一度に 十人の うったえを 聞きながら 判断を下した。太子は 法隆寺など たくさんのお寺を 建てた。この時代から 710 年に 奈良に 都が 移る 前までの あいだが、「飛鳥時代」である。太子は また 留学生を 中国へ 送った。かれらは 日本に 帰って、中国の 政治制度を 伝えた。645 年の「大化の改新」や 672 年の「壬申の乱」の のち、天皇 中心の 政治体制が 確立した。

「奈良時代」に 中央政府は 都々地方に たくさんのお寺を 作って、それらを 人々の 精神的 中心にした。しかし、それで 財政的に 困った。その あいだに 藤原氏の 勢力が のびた。



▲Shotoku Taishi

## Japanese History 1

The oldest Japanese history book is *Kojiki*. Only archeological data can give us information on the ages before this, during which the Jomon and Yayoi cultures flourished. Agriculture was developed in the Yayoi Period. The Kofun Age was called the age of the clan system, the Imperial family being one of these clans.

Shotoku Taishi wrote the first Japanese Constitution at the beginning of the 7th century. He was clever enough to pass judgment on cases while listening to ten people's appeals at the same time. He built Horyu-ji and many other temples. The period from his rule until the capital was moved to Nara in 710 is called the Asuka Period. Taishi sent some students to China. They came back and introduced the Chinese political system. The emperor-centered political structure was strengthened after the Taika Restoration of 645 and the Jinshin Revolt of 672.

The central government built many temples in the Nara capital and in the countryside, making them the spiritual centers of the nation. But this also created financial difficulties. During this period, the Fujiwaras gained power.

### 語句

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 waga our, my  | 24 myako capital city, governmental site                |
| 2 waga kuni our country                                   | 25 utsuru (Vt) transfer, move                           |
| 3 ichiban the most; first See § 60                        | 26 Asuka-jidai Asuka Period (593-710)                   |
| 3 Kojiki (the oldest Japanese chronicle, compiled in 712) | 27 ryūgaku-sei foreign student, student studying abroad |
| 4 yori than See § 59                                      | ryūgaku (Nv) studying abroad                            |
| 5 kōko-gaku archaeology                                   | 28 kare-ra they   |
| gaku -ology; learning                                     | 29 seiji-seido political system                         |
| 6 shiryō data, information resource                       | 30 tsutae-ru convey (ideas, information)                |
| 7 wakar-u understandable, understand                      | 31 Taika-no-kaishin Taika Restoration                   |
| 8 Jōmon-bunka Jomon Culture (8-7000-300 B.C.)             | 32 Jinshin-no-ran Jinshin Revolt                        |
| 9 Yayoi-bunka Yayoi Culture (300 B.C.-1st A.D.)           | 33 chōshin centered on/in                               |
| 10 Yayoi jidai Yayoi Period                               | 34 seiji-taisei political structure                     |
| 11 Kofun-jidai Kofun Period                               | taisei structure, establishment                         |
| 12 iwayuru so-called                                      | 35 kakuritsu (Nv) establishing                          |
| 13 shisei-seido clan system                               | 36 Nara jidai Nara Period (710-794)                     |
| shisei clan, family seido system                          | 37 chūō-seifu central government                        |
| 14 Tennō-ke Imperial family                               | chūō center seifu government                            |
| Tennō Emperor of Japan                                    | 38 chihō local places                                   |
| -ke family  | 39 seishin-teki (Na) spiritual                          |
| 15 shizoku clan   | seishin spirit  |
| 16 Shotoku Taishi Prince Shotoku (574-622) taishi prince  | 40 ni suru make (something)                             |
| 17 kashiko-i wise, clever                                 | 41 zaisei-teki (Na) financial                           |
| 18 ichi-do ni at once, at the same time                   | zaisei finance  |
| 19 uttate appeal + uttate-ru (appeal, sue)                | 42 komaru-u be in trouble, be at a loss                 |
| 20 handan (Nv) judgment                                   | 43 Fujiwara-shū Fujiwara family                         |
| 21 handan o kudasu-u pass judgment; judge                 | -shū -uji family; clan                                  |
| 22 Hōryū-ji (a temple in Nara)                            | 44 seiryoku power, influence                            |
| 23 tate-ru build  | 45 nobi-ru extend, expand, increase                     |

# 第 11 課

## 教室<sup>1</sup>て

TABLE  
3  
3-12

- ① ブラウンさんか<sup>1</sup> 立<sup>2</sup>って 本<sup>3</sup>を 読<sup>4</sup>みます。

日本人<sup>5</sup>は ご飯<sup>6</sup>を 食<sup>7</sup>べる 前<sup>8</sup>に、「いただきます<sup>9</sup>」と 言<sup>10</sup>います。食<sup>11</sup>べおわ<sup>12</sup>った とき<sup>13</sup>に、「ごちそうさ<sup>14</sup>ま」と 言<sup>15</sup>います。朝<sup>16</sup> 人<sup>17</sup>に 会<sup>18</sup>った とき<sup>19</sup>には、「おはようご<sup>20</sup>ざいます」と 言<sup>21</sup>います。昼間<sup>22</sup> 人<sup>23</sup>に 会<sup>24</sup>った とき<sup>25</sup>は、「こんにち<sup>26</sup>は」と 言<sup>27</sup>って、日<sup>28</sup>が く<sup>29</sup>れてからは、「こん<sup>30</sup>ばんは」と 言<sup>31</sup>います。また、人<sup>32</sup>と 列<sup>33</sup>れる とき<sup>34</sup>は「さようなら<sup>35</sup>。」と 言<sup>36</sup>います。手紙<sup>37</sup>の 終<sup>38</sup>わりにも よく「さようなら<sup>39</sup>。」と 書<sup>40</sup>きます。晩<sup>41</sup> 寝<sup>42</sup>る 前<sup>43</sup>には、「おやす<sup>44</sup>みなさい<sup>45</sup>。」と 言<sup>46</sup>います。

- ② 「はい、け<sup>11</sup>っこうです。」と 先生<sup>12</sup>が 言<sup>13</sup>いました。その とき「先生<sup>14</sup>、質<sup>15</sup>問<sup>16</sup>あります。」と 一<sup>17</sup>人<sup>18</sup>が 言<sup>19</sup>いました。ビル<sup>20</sup>という 学<sup>21</sup>生<sup>22</sup>です。「何<sup>23</sup>ですか。どう<sup>24</sup>ぞ。」と 先生<sup>25</sup>は 答<sup>26</sup>え<sup>27</sup>ました。「英<sup>28</sup>語<sup>29</sup>の greetings は、日<sup>30</sup>本<sup>31</sup>語<sup>32</sup>で 何<sup>33</sup>と 言<sup>34</sup>いますか。」と ビル<sup>35</sup>は た<sup>36</sup>ず<sup>37</sup>ね<sup>38</sup>ました。「あいさ<sup>39</sup>つと 言<sup>40</sup>います。」「おはようござ<sup>41</sup>いますという ことば<sup>42</sup>は どん<sup>43</sup>な 意<sup>44</sup>味<sup>45</sup>ですか。」

1 kyosmitsu classroom  
-shitsu room

2 tats-u stand (up); start

3 itadakimasu (Cph)

itadak-u receive (things, food,  
drink, etc.) (Humble, hence polite,  
expression of mora-u)

4 i-u say

to i-u say that

5 -owar-u finish ing

6 .toku (ni) when See § 50

7 Gochisō sama (Cph)

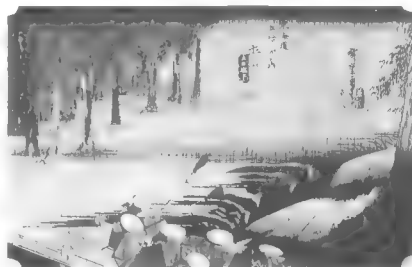
8 hru-ma during the day

9 kure-ru get dark, come to the end  
(of a day, year, etc.)

10 wakare-ru (Vi) part, separate

「It's very early! という 意<sup>11</sup>味<sup>12</sup>です。英<sup>13</sup>語<sup>14</sup>では Good Morning!  
と 言<sup>15</sup>いますね。」「よく わ<sup>16</sup>かりました。」

- ③ 「日<sup>11</sup>本<sup>12</sup>人<sup>13</sup>は あいさ<sup>14</sup>つ の 中<sup>15</sup>に、よく 天<sup>16</sup>気<sup>17</sup>や 季<sup>18</sup>節<sup>19</sup>の こ  
とば<sup>20</sup>を 使<sup>21</sup>います。これ<sup>22</sup>は 日<sup>23</sup>本<sup>24</sup>人<sup>25</sup>の 国<sup>26</sup>民<sup>27</sup>性<sup>28</sup>だ<sup>29</sup>と 思<sup>30</sup>い<sup>31</sup>ます。」



▲A scene from Iwasakage's "Fifty-three stages of the Tokaido"

11 kekkō (Na) satisfactory, good, fine

12 shitsumon (Nv) question

13 ...to i-u called/named See § 58

14 kotae-ru answer, reply

15 tazune-ru inquire; call on/at

16 imi (Nv) meaning

17 kisetsu season

18 kokumin-sei national character

kokumin citizens of a nation,  
people

-sei character

19 to omo-u think See § 56

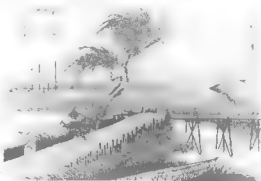
# Dai 11-ka Kyōshitsu de

## 1 Buraun-san ga tatte hon o yomimasu.

Nippon-jin wa gohan o taberu mae ni, "Itadakimasu" to iimasu. Tabe-owatta toki ni, "Gochisō-sama" to iimasu. Asa hito ni atta toki niwa, "Ohayō gozaimasu" to iimasu. Hiru-ma hito ni atta toki wa, "Kon-nichi wa" to itte, hi ga kurete kara wa, "Konban wa" to iimasu. Mafa, hito to wakareru toki wa "Sayōnara" to iimasu. Tegami no owari nimo yoku "Sayōnara" to kakimasu. Ban neru mae niwa, "O-yasumi-nasai" to iimasu.

2 "Hai, kekkō desu." to sensei ga iimashita. Sono toki "Sensei, shitsumon ga arimasu." to hito-ri ga iimashita. *Biru* to iu gakusei desu. "Nan desu ka? Dōzo." to sensei wa kotaemashita. "Ei-go no 'greetings' wa, Nippon-go de nan to iimasu ka?" to *Biru* wa tazunemashita. "Aisatsu to iimasu." "O-hayō gozaimasu to iu kotoba wa donna imi desu ka?" "It's very early!" to iu imi desu. Ei-go dewa 'Good morning' to iimasu ne." "Yoku wakarimashita."

3 "Nippon-jin wa aisatsu no naka ni, yoku tenki ya kisetsu no kotoba o tsukaimasu. Kore wa Nippon-jin no kokumin-sei da to omoimasu."



▶ A scene from Hiroshige's  
"Fifty-three stages of the Tokaido"

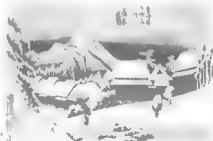
# Lesson 11 In the Classroom

## 1 Mr. Brown stands up and reads from his text

"Japanese say 'Itadakimasu' before they eat. After they have finished eating, they say 'Gochisōsama.' When they meet someone in the morning, they say 'Ohayo gozaimasu.' When meeting in the afternoon, they say 'Kon-nichi wa,' and after sundown they say 'Konban wa.' When parting with someone, they say 'Sayonara.' They often write 'Sayonara' at the end of letters too. Before going to bed they say 'Oyasuminasai!'"

2 The teacher said, "Yes, that's fine." Then one student said, "Sir, I have a question." It is a student named Bill. The teacher responded, "Yes, what is it?" Bill asked, "What is the Japanese for the English word 'greetings'?" "It is 'aisatsu.'" "What does the phrase 'Ohayo gozaimasu' mean?" "It means 'It's very early.' But in English it translates as 'Good morning!'" "I see."

3 "The Japanese also often use weather or seasonal expressions in their greetings. I think this is part of the Japanese national character."



▶ A scene from Hiroshige's  
"Fifty-three stages of the Tokaido"

## ANSWERS \*pp. 136, 137,

1. Kare wa Takahashi to iu Nippon no *pioniruta* desu.
  2. Ano hito wa Yamada to iu Nippon-go no sensei desu.
  3. Watashi wa Tachikawa to iu Tōkyō no chūkaku no machi ni sunde-imasu
  4. Ima 'Kokoro' to iu shōsetsu o yonde-imasu
  5. Watashi wa kono anda Tōkyō de Shinjuku-gyoen to iu kirei-na niwa o mimashita
  6. Kokutetsu de Hakone e iku toki Odawara to iu eki de densha o norikaerakereba narimasen
- III 1. hana 2. hon/kyōka-sho 3. hito
- V. 1. 'Ball-point pen' wa Nippon-go de nan to iimasu ka? *Bōru-pen* to iimasu.
  2. 'Newspaper' wa Nippon-go de nan to iimasu ka? *Shinbun* to iimasu
  3. 'To introduce' wa Nippon-go de nan to iimasu ka? *Shōkai-suru* to iimasu
  - VI. 1. Kare wa ashita koko e konai to omoimasu. 2. Kaigi wa mō owatta to omoimasu.
  3. *Tomu*-san wa byōki da to omoimasu. 4. Sono eiga wa omoshiroi to omoimasu
  5. Kono kasa wa *Semizu* san no da to omoimasu

## § 55 Quoting

**N wa/ga ... to iimasu.** 'N says....'

e.g. Tarō wa ohayō gozaimasu to imashita. 'Taro said, "Good morning."  
— Ohayō gozaimasu to Tarō wa imashita.

The Verbs of Saying, besides I(W)-u, include: kotae-ru 'answer, reply';  
hanas-u 'tell, talk'; kak-u 'write'; happyō-suru 'announce, make public'; etc.

NB: When N is a third person, it is better to use 'te-iru form' instead of  
the simple Present form. The Past form can be used for any person.

e.g. Tarō wa kaeru (kaerimasu) to itte-imasu. 'Taro says he is going home.'  
Rajio wa taifū ga kuru to itte-imasu.

'The radio says a typhoon is on its way.'

## § 56 Telling What Someone Thinks

**N wa ... to omoimasu.** 'N thinks that ...'

e.g. Watashi wa kare wa/ga Nippon-jin da to omoimasu.

'I think (that) he is a Japanese.'

NB: (1) The Predicate expressing the thought content (the Predicate preceding  
'to') normally takes the Plain style, unlike the part quoted by the Verbs of  
Saying

(2) When the sentence is in the Present tense, the N, unless otherwise specified,  
is assumed to be the speaker himself in a statement and the addressee in a ques-  
tion. Thus, a sentence like

Yamada-san wa ma ni au to omoimasu.

means only, 'I think Mr. Yamada will be in time.' and not, 'Yamada thinks....'

In other tenses, however, it is often necessary to specify.

## § 57 Calling or Naming

**(N wa) X o Y to iimasu.** '(N) calls X Y.'

e.g. Nippon-jin wa kore o hashi to iimasu.

'Japanese people call these "hashi" ('chopsticks').'

When the N is an unspecified and indefinite number of people, 'N Wa' is  
omitted, and 'X o' changes to 'X wa,' X becoming the Topic of the sentence.

e.g. Kore wa 'hashi' to iimasu. 'These are called "hashi".'

When one introduces himself, he says, 'Watashi wa ...to iimasu (or mōshi-  
masu, a Humble form of iimasu).' instead of saying, 'Watashi no namae wa  
... desu.'

e.g. Watashi wa Sumisu to mōshimasu. 'I am called "Smith".'

## § 58 Changing the above pattern into a Nominal Construction

**Y to iu X** 'X (which is) called Y'

e.g. Sumisu to iu hito 'a man called/named Smith'

o-hashī to iu mono 'something called o-hashī'

'Pisu' to iu tabako 'cigarettes named "Peace"'

Question: Kore wa nan to iu mono desu ka? 'What is this called?'

You will find that some such constructions are equivalent to the 'Appositive  
construction' in English. Compare the following.

Kinō (watashi wa) Tarō ga kekkon-shita to iu shirase o kikimashita.

'Yesterday I heard *the news that* Taro got married.'

Watashi wa Nippon-go o Rōma-ji-ka shita hō ga to iu iken o motte-  
imasu (or...to iu iken desu). 'I have *the opinion* (or, I am *of the opinion*)

*that* it is better to Romanize Japanese.'

Kare wa sensō ga owatta to iu koto o shiranakatta.

'He did not know *the fact that* the war had ended.'

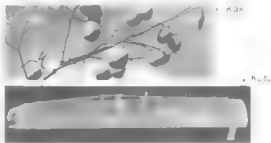
## I. Make dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. (kore) (tabemono<sup>1</sup>) (sushi) Q: Kore wa nan to iu tabemono desu ka?

A. Sushi to iu tabemono desu.

1. (kore) (kudamono<sup>2</sup>) (kaki<sup>3</sup>)2. (kore) (gakk<sup>4</sup>) (koto<sup>5</sup>)3. (kore) (tori) (uguisu<sup>6</sup>)

4. (koko) (o-tera) (Koke-dera)

5. (koko) (eki) (Kanda<sup>7</sup>)6. (koko) (tokoro<sup>8</sup>) (Ueno<sup>9</sup>)

## II. Combine the sentences.

Ex. (Kore wa Nippon no gakk<sup>1</sup> desu.) (Namae wa koto desu.)→Kore wa koto to iu Nippon no gakk<sup>1</sup> desu.1. (Kare wa Nippon no pianisto<sup>10</sup> desu.) (Namae wa Takahashi<sup>11</sup> desu.)

2. (Ano hito wa Nippon-go no sensei desu.) (Namae wa Yamada desu.)

3. (Watashi wa Tōkyō no chikaku no machi ni sunde-imasu.) (Machi no namae wa Tachikawa<sup>12</sup> desu.)4. (Ima shōsetsu o yonde-imasu.) (Shōsetsu no namae wa 'Kokoro'<sup>13</sup> desu.)5. (Watashi wa kono aida<sup>14</sup> Tōkyō de kirei-na niwa o mimashita.) (Niwa no namae wa Shinjuku-gyoen<sup>15</sup> desu.)6. (Koku-tetsu<sup>16</sup> de Hakone e iku toki, sono eki de densha o norikaenake.<sup>17</sup> reba narimasen.) (Eki no namae wa Odawara<sup>18</sup> desu.)

## 語句

1 tabemono food

2 kudamono fruit

3 kaki persimmon

4 gakk<sup>4</sup> musical instrument

5 koto (a Japanese musical instrument)

6 uguisu nightingale

7 Kanda (a place name)

8 tokoro place

9 Ueno (a place name)

10 pianisto 'pianist'

11 Takahashi (a family name)

12 Tachikawa (a place name)

13 Kokoro (the title of a novel by

Natsume Soseki)

kokoro heart, mind

14 kono aida the other day

15 Shinjuku gyoen Shinjuku Royal

Garden

16 Koku tetsu Japan National

Railways

## III. Fill in the blanks.

1. Sakura to iu ( ) wa haru ni sakimasu.

2. Watashi-tachi no Nippon-go no kyōka-sho<sup>19</sup> wa 'Atarashii Nippon-go' to iu ( ) desu.3. Kinō anata no rusu<sup>20</sup> no aida ni Sumisu<sup>21</sup>-san to iu ( ) kara anata ni denwa ga arimashita.<sup>22</sup>

## IV. Answer the following questions.

1. Nippon-jin wa hito to wakareru toki, 'Sayōnara' to imasu. Anata no kuni dewa nan to iimasu ka?

2. Nippon-go de denwa o kakeru toki, hajime ni 'Moshi-moshi'<sup>23</sup> to iimasu. Anata no kuni dewa nan to iimasu ka?3. Nippon-jin wa ie o hōmon<sup>24</sup>-suru toki, genkan<sup>25</sup> de 'Gomen-kudasai' to iimasu. Anata no kuni dewa nan to iimasu ka?4. Nippon-go de o-iwai<sup>26</sup> o iu toki, 'Omedetō'<sup>27</sup> to iimasu. Anata no kuni dewa nan to iimasu ka?

## V. Practice the following pattern.

Ex. "Stamp" wa Nippon-go de nan to iimasu ka? —Kitte to iimasu.

1. "ball-point pen" 2. "newspaper" 3. "to introduce"

## VI. Expand the following sentences with "to omoimasu."

1. Kare wa ashita koko e kimasen.

2. Kaigi<sup>28</sup> wa mō owarimashita.

3. Tomu-san wa byōki desu.

4. Sono eiga wa omoshiroi desu.

5. Kono kasa wa Sumisu-san no desu.

←Nihon Kokuyū Tetsudō

kokuyū national, owned by the  
state tetsudō railway17 norikae-ru change cars/trains/  
planes

18 Odawara (a place name)

19 kyōka-sho textbook sho book

20 rusu being away from home/office,  
absent

21 Sumisu 'Smith'

22 denwa ga ar-u get a phone call

23 Moshi-moshi (Cph) Hello (telephone)

24 hōmon (Nv) visit

25 genkan entrance of a house

26 iwai celebration, congratulations

←iwa-u (congratulate, celebrate)

27 Omedetō (Cph) Congratulations!

28 kaigi meeting, conference

## SHUPPATSU-SHIMASU

Katō<sup>1</sup>: Suzuki<sup>2</sup>-san, *Furansu* e iku to iu hanashi desu nē.

Suzuki: Ē, Go-gatsu no sue<sup>3</sup> ni shuppatsu-shimasu.

K: Oku-san<sup>4</sup> mo issho desu ka?

S: Hai, tsuma<sup>5</sup> mo kodomo mo tsurete-ikimasu.

K: Chō-kan<sup>6</sup> no taizai<sup>7</sup> desu ka?

S: Ē, ni-nen gurai desu.

K: O-ka-san wa?

S: Sono aida, haha wa ane<sup>8</sup> no ie de kurashimasu.<sup>9</sup>

K: O-kā-san wa hantai<sup>10</sup> dewa arimasen deshita ka?

S: Ē, iku-na<sup>11</sup> to iimashita ga, shigoto desu kara

shikata ga arimasen.

Tokorode, anata no oji-san wa mada Yōroppa desu ka?

Tashika<sup>12</sup> *Furansu* desu ne?

K: Mr. Suzuki, I hear you are going to France, is that right?

S: Yes, I'm leaving at the end of May.

K: Is your wife going with you?

S: Yes, I'm taking both my wife and my children.

K: Are you going to stay long?

S: Yes, about two years.

K: What about your mother?

S: During that time, my mother will be living with my elder sister

K: Didn't your mother object?

S: Yes, she said I should not go, but since it's my job, there's nothing I can do about it.

By the way, is your uncle still in Europe? If I remember right, he is in France, isn't he?

## 語句

- Katō (a family name)
- Suzuki (a family name)
- sue end of a term
- oku-san wife (Polite)
- tsuma wife
- chō-kan (for) a long term/time chō- long kukan term, period of time
- taizai (宅) stay
- ane elder sister cf. imōto (younger sister)
- kurasu-u live; spend time
- hantai (Nv) objection
- na don't (Prohibition)
- tashika (Na) quite surely, if I remember right
- gaikoku-sei foreign-made

K: He came home last October.

Since he uses only foreign goods, all his relatives call him by the nickname "Jean Gabin."

He always says Paris is so wonderful.

S: Then, is it all right if I go to listen to his stories about when he was abroad?

K: Of course it is. I am sure he will be pleased. My uncle was working for a company in Paris called NKK

S: If I remember right, it's near the Champs Elysees.

I'll be living in the same area, because my company's Paris branch is near Etoile.

14 bakari only, exclusive-ly, nothing but

15 shinru relatives

16 mono person

17 Jan Gyaban 'Jean Gabin'

18 adana nickname

19 yob-u call

20 Pari 'Paris'

21 sorejā then

22 tomo for sure; of course (Emphatic)

23 kitto surely, certainly

24 yorokob-u be glad

25 oji uncle cf. oba (aunt)

26 tsutome-ru work for (a company)

27 Shanzerize 'Champs Elysees'

28 Etoaru 'Etoile'

K: Kyo-nen no Jū-gatsu ni kaette-kima-shita.

Gaikoku-sei<sup>13</sup> no mono bakari<sup>14</sup> tsukai-masu kara, shinru<sup>15</sup> no mono<sup>16</sup> wa Jan Gyaban<sup>17</sup> to iu adana<sup>18</sup> de yonde.<sup>19</sup> imasu.

Itsumo Pari<sup>20</sup> wa subarashii to itte-imasu.

S: Sorejā,<sup>21</sup> mukō no o-hanashi o kiki ni ittemo ii desu ka?

K: Ii desu tomo.<sup>22</sup>

Kitto<sup>23</sup> yorokobimasu<sup>24</sup> yo.

Oji<sup>25</sup> wa Pari no NKK to iu kaisha ni tsutomete<sup>26</sup> imashita.

S: Tashika, Shanzerize<sup>27</sup> no chikaku desu ne. Watashi mo ano atari ni sumu to omoimasu.

Watashi no kaisha no Pari-shiten wa Etoaru<sup>28</sup> no chikaku desu kara.





# マスコミ

新聞<sup>1</sup>、ラジオ、テレビでの情<sup>2</sup>報活動<sup>3</sup>をマスコミ<sup>4</sup>と言います。日本では近年<sup>5</sup>、マスコミが非常に発達しています。

新聞には四つのおもな全国紙<sup>6</sup>、多くの地方紙<sup>7</sup>、専門紙<sup>8</sup>があります。1970年の調査では日本の日刊新聞の発行部数は人口1,000人あたり511部で、これはスウェーデンの534部に、世界第二位です。

テレビの普及率は人口1,000人あたり223台で、たいていの家庭に一台はあります。「オリンピックをカラーで見よう」とか、「月での散歩をカラーで見よう」という広告で電機メーカーはカラーテレビをたくさん売りました。その結果、今ではカラーテレビもかなり普及しています。

マスコミ、とくにテレビは子どもに大きな影響を与えています。子どもたちは夜おそくまでテレビの前を離れないので、親は困っています。こんな子どもを「テレビっ子<sup>37</sup>」と言います。「テレビっ子」はだんだんふえています。また、ラジオを聞きながら、あるいはテレビを見ながら勉強します。こんな人を「ながら族<sup>40</sup>」と言います。もちろん、おとなの中にも「ながら族」はたくさんいます。



## Mass Media

Radio, television, and press information activities are called "mass communication." Mass communication has recently shown great development in Japan.

There are four main nation-wide newspapers and many local and specialized ones. According to a 1970 survey, 511 daily newspapers are published per 1,000 people every day in Japan, a figure led internationally only by Sweden's 534.

The television ownership ratio is up to 223 sets per 1,000 people, and almost all families have at least one set. Electrical appliance manufacturers sold many color sets with advertisements saying "Let's watch the Olympics in color," and "Let's watch the moon walk in color." As a result, color television is pretty widely diffused.

Mass media, especially television, have a great influence on children. Yet many parents are worried that their children stay up late at night watching television. We call such children "TV children." The number of "TV children" is gradually increasing. Many students study while listening to the radio or watching television. We call these people the "—ing crowd," although of course this also includes many adults.

### 語彙

- 1 zasshi magazine
- 2 jōhō katsudō information activities
- 3 jōhō information
- 4 *masu-komi* 'mass communication,' mass media
- 5 kin-nen (in) recent years
- 6 hū-jō-ni=taihen very, greatly
- 7 zenkoku-shi nation-wide paper
- 8 shi newspaper
- 9 ōku no many, most cf. 6. See § 35
- 10 chhō-shi local paper
- 11 senmon-shi specialty newspaper
- 12 chōsa (Nv) investigation, survey
- 13 nik-kan-shūbun daily newspaper
- 14 nik-kan published daily cf. shū-kan (weekly), gek-kan (monthly), nen-kan (annual)
- 15 hakkō busū number of copies printed, circulation
- 16 hakkō (Nv) issue
- 17 busū number of copies
- 18 atari per
- 19 -bu copies
- 20 Sweden 'Sweden'
- 21 ni tsude next/second to
- 22 -tsug-u succeed to; follow
- 23 seka-dai-i the -th in the world
- 24 fūkyō-ritsu diffusion ratio
- 25 fūkyū (Nv) diffusion, spread
- 26 -ritsu ratio, proportion, percentage
- 27 Orinpikku 'Olympic Games'
- 28 mlyō (Plain style of mimashō)
- 29 toka such as
- 30 kōkoku (Nv) publicity, advertisement
- 31 denki-mōko electric appliance maker
- 32 denki electrical appliance
- 33 mōko 'maker,' manufacturer
- 34 kōro-terebi 'color television'
- 35 ur-u sell
- 36 kekka result
- 37 sono kekka as a result, consequently
- 38 kanari quite, fairly
- 39 tokum especially
- 40 ōki-na=ōku-i large See § 7
- 41 eikyō (Nv) influence, effect
- 42 atae-ru give
- 43 kodomo-tachi children
- 44 yoru osoku late at night
- 45 hanare-ru (Vi) detach, leave
- 46 noda since, as
- 47 konna like this See § 8
- 48 Terabik ko 'TV' child
- 49 dandan gradually, step by step
- 50 arunwa or else
- 51 Nagara-zoku people who do two things at once See § 52
- 52 -zoku tribe
- 53 otowa adult

# 第 12 課

## 東京・京都・大阪

TAPE  
No. 3  
S.d.r. 2

① 東京は日本の首都です。京都はむかし日本の首都でした。東京という名まえは東のみやこという意味です。東京は京都よりずっと大きいです。人口も京都よりずっと多いです。

② —東京と京都とどちらが古いですか。  
京都のほうが東京より古いです。東京は京都ほど古くはありません。東京は京都より新しい町です。

—東京と京都とどちらが静かですか。  
もちろん京都のほうが東京より静かです。東京の町は車ていっぱい。たいへんさわがしいです。

—では、どちらがきれいですか。  
京都です。町があまり大きくなくて、まわりに山があります。それで町全体が落ち着いています。

③ —商業や工業はどちらがさかんですか。  
もちろんどちらも東京のほうがさかんです。東京は日本の政治・経済の中心です。会社も工場も東京に

集中しています。京都は伝統産業と観光の町です。  
—東京と京都と大阪の中で、どこがいちばん大きいですか。

東京がいちばん大きいです。人口も東京がいちばん多いです。

④ —東京から大阪へは、何て行きますか。

たいいてい新幹線で行きます。新幹線はたいへん速いです。新幹線の「ひかり」は東京から大阪まで三十分で走ります。「こだま」は四時間十分で走ります。東海道線の列車は七時間以上かかります。「ひかり」がいちばん速くて便利です。東京と大阪の間には飛行機も飛んでいます。飛行機は五十分ぐらいしかかかりません。飛行機のほうが「ひかり」より三倍以上速いです。しかし、東京都心から羽田空港までと大阪市内から伊丹空港までが不便です。ですから、多くの人が飛行機よりも新幹線のほうがよく利用しています。料金は飛行機のほうが二倍ぐらいかかります。

### 語句

- 1 higashi east
- 2 yori than See § 59
- 3 zutto much, by far; all the time
- 4 dochira which
- 5 no hō ga is more See § 59
- 6 hodo to the extent of See § 62
- 7 dewa Well, then
- 8 ochitsuk-u become calm/settled
- 9 shō-gyō commerce

- 10 dochira mo both
- 11 keizai economy
- 12 shūchū (Nv) concentration
- 13 dentō sangyō traditional industry
- 14 kankō tourism, sightseeing
- 15 haya-i fast, quick
- 16 hikari super-express Hikari hikari light

- 17 Kodama limited express Kodama kodama echo
- 18 Tōkaidō-sen Tokaido Line
- 19 ressha train
- 20 ijō more than
- 21 -bai - times, -fold See § 62
- 22 toshin the center of a city
- 23 Haneda-kūkō Haneda Airport Haneda (a place name)

- kūkō airport
- 24 shunai (N) in the city
- 25 itami kōkō Itami Airport
- itami (a place name,
- 26 riyō (Nv) utilizing, use
- 27 ryōkin fee, fare, charge

# Dai 12-ka Tōkyō, Kyōto, Ōsaka

- 1 Tōkyō wa Nippon no shuto desu. Kyōto wa mukashi Nippon no shuto deshita. Tōkyō to iu namae wa higashi no miyako to iu imi desu. Tōkyō wa Kyōto yori zutto ōkii desu. Jinkō mo Kyōto yori zutto ōi desu.
- 2 Tōkyō to Kyōto to dochira ga furui desu ka?  
Kyōto no hō ga Tōkyō yori furui desu. Tōkyō wa Kyōto hodo furuku wa arimasen. Tōkyō wa Kyōto yori atarashii machi desu.  
—Tōkyō to Kyōto to dochira ga shizuka desu ka?  
Mochiron Kyōto no hō ga Tōkyō yori shizuka desu. Tōkyō no machi wa kuruma de ippai de, taihen sawagashii desu.  
—Dewa, dochira ga kirei desu ka?  
Kyōto desu. Machi ga amari ōkiku nakute, mawari ni yama ga arimasu. Sorede machi zentai ga ochitsuite-imasu.
- 3 —Shō-gyō ya kō-gyō wa dochira ga sakan desu ka?  
Mochiron dochira mo Tōkyō no hō ga sakan desu. Tōkyō wa Nippon no seiji, keizai no chūshin desu. Kaisha mo kōjō mo Tōkyō ni shūchū-shite-imasu. Kyōto wa dentō-sangyō to kankō no machi desu.  
—Tōkyō to Kyōto to Ōsaka no naka de, doko ga ichiban ōkii desu ka?  
Tōkyō ga ichiban ōkii desu. Jinkō mo Tōkyō ga ichiban ōi desu.
- 4 —Tōkyō kara Ōsaka e wa nani de ikimasu ka?  
Taitei Shinkan-sen de ikimasu. Shinkan-sen wa taihen hayai desu. Shinkan-sen no 'Hikari' wa Tōkyō kara Ōsaka made san-jikan jup-pun de hashirimasu. 'Kodama' wa yo-jikan jup-pun de hashirimasu. Tōkaidō-sen no ressha wa shichi-jikan ijō kakarimasu. 'Hikari' ga ichiban haya-kute benri desu. Tōkyō to Ōsaka no aida niwa hikōki mo tonde-imasu. Hikōki wa go-jup-pun gurai shika kakarimasen. Hikōki no hō ga 'Hikari' yori san-bai ijō hayai desu. Shikashi, Tōkyō-toshin kara Haneda-kūkō made to Ōsaka-shinai kara Itami-kūkō made ga fu-ben desu. Desukara, ōku no hito ga hikōki yori mo Shinkan-sen no hō o yoku riyō-shite-imasu. Ryōkin wa hikōki no hō ga ni-bai gurai kakarimasu.

# Lesson 12 Tokyo, Kyoto, and Osaka

- 1 Tokyo is the capital of Japan. Kyoto is an ancient capital of Japan. The name Tokyo means "Eastern Capital." Tokyo is much bigger than Kyoto. Its population is also much larger than Kyoto's.
- 2 —Which is older, Tokyo or Kyoto?  
Kyoto is older than Tokyo. Tokyo is not as old as Kyoto. Tokyo is a newer town than Kyoto.  
—Which is quieter, Tokyo or Kyoto?  
Kyoto is quieter than Tokyo, of course. Tokyo is filled with cars and is very noisy.  
—Then which is prettier?  
Kyoto. It is not a very big town and it is surrounded by mountains. Thus the entire town seems calm and settled.
- 3 —Which has more business and industry?  
Of course, Tokyo has more of both. Tokyo is the political and economic center of Japan. Companies and factories are also concentrated in Tokyo. Kyoto is a town of traditional industries and tourism.  
—Which is the biggest, Tokyo, Kyoto, or Osaka?  
Tokyo is the biggest. Tokyo has the most people too.
- 4 —How do you get from Tokyo to Osaka?  
You usually go by New Tokaido Line. The New Tokaido Line is very fast. The New Tokaido Line super-express *Hikari* runs from Tokyo to Osaka in three hours and ten minutes. The *Kodama* takes four hours and ten minutes. The old Tokaido Line takes over seven hours. The *Hikari* is the fastest and most convenient. There are also airplanes flying between Tokyo and Osaka. The airplane takes only about fifty minutes. The airplane is more than three times as fast as the *Hikari* express. But it is very inconvenient to go from downtown Tokyo to Haneda Airport or from central Osaka to Itami Airport. So most people use the New Tokaido Line rather than go by airplane. The airplane is about twice as expensive.

## ANSWERS 'pp 148, 149

- IV. 1. takai 2. samui 3. wakai 4. tsui
- IV. (A) 1. Q: no naka de doko ga ichiban ōkii desu ka? A: Chūgoku ga ichiban ōkii desu  
2. Q: no naka de dore ga ichiban takai desu ka? A: Ebersuto ga ichiban takai desu. 3. Q: no naka de dore/nani ga ichiban muzukashii desu ka? A: 4. Q: no naka de dare ga ichiban se ga takai desu ka? A: 5. Q: no naka de doko ga ichiban furui desu ka? A: Ōsaka ga ichiban furui desu 6. Q: no naka de dore/nani ga ichiban hayai desu ka? A: Hikōki ga ichiban hayai desu 7. Q: no naka de dore/nani ga ichiban kantan desu ka? A: (B) 1. Q: no naka de nani ga ichiban oishii desu ka? 2. Q: no naka de nani ga ichiban tanoshikatta desu ka? 3. Q: no naka de nani ga ichiban omoshiroi desu ka? 4. Q: no naka de dare ga ichiban huma desu ka? 5. Q: no naka de doko ga ichiban kirei desu ka?
- V. 1. Tōkyō-tōwa (Tokyo Tower) desu. 2. Fuyu desu. 3. Nara ni arimasu

## § 59 Comparing Two Things ('Comparative')

$$N_1 \text{ wa } N_2 \text{ yori } \left\{ \begin{array}{c} A \\ N_A \end{array} \right\} \text{ desu.}$$

'N<sub>1</sub> is more .than N<sub>2</sub>.'

e.g. Tōkyō wa Ōsaka yori ōkii desu. 'Tokyo is larger than Osaka.'

Question and Answer:

$$N_1 \text{ to } N_2 \text{ to dochira ga } \left\{ \begin{array}{c} A \\ N_A \end{array} \right\} \text{ desu ka?}$$

'Which is more N<sub>1</sub> or N<sub>2</sub>?'

$$N_1 \text{ no hō ga } \left\{ \begin{array}{c} A \\ N_A \end{array} \right\} \text{ desu.}$$

'N<sub>1</sub> is more....'

e.g. Chika-tetsu to basu to dochira ga benri desu ka?

'Which is more convenient, the subway or the bus?'

Chika-tetsu no hō ga benri desu. 'The subway is more convenient.'

## § 60 Comparing Three or More Things ('Superlative')

$$N_1 \text{ to } N_2 \text{ to } N_3 \text{ to } \dots N_n \left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{no} \\ X \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{naka} \\ \text{uchi} \end{array} \right\} \text{ de } N_1 \text{ ga ichiban } \left\{ \begin{array}{c} A \\ N_A \end{array} \right\} \text{ desu.}$$

'N<sub>1</sub> is the most.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{among } N_1 \text{ } N_2 \text{ } N_3 \dots N_n \\ \text{in } X. \end{array} \right\}$

(X: a set including N<sub>1</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, N<sub>3</sub>, .. N<sub>n</sub>)

e.g. A-san to B-san to C-san no naka de  
Kono san-nin no naka de  
Kono kurasu (no naka) de

'Who is the youngest  $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{of these three?} \\ \text{in this class?} \end{array} \right\}$

A-san ga ichiban wakai desu. 'Mr. A is the youngest.'

## § 61 Scope or Limit: N de

e.g. Fuji-san wa Nippon de ichiban takai desu.

'Mt. Fuji is the highest mountain in Japan.'

Kono mikan wa ikura desu ka? 'How much are these tangerines?'

—Zenbu de hyaku-en desu. 'One hundred yen (for the whole lot).'

Ich-i-nen-jū de ichiban samui tsuki wa itsu desu ka?

'Which is the coldest month of the year?'

## § 62 Some More Expressions of Comparison

onaji 'the same'

e.g. A-san to B-san to dochira ga se ga takai desu ka?

'Who is taller, Mr. A or Mr. B?'

—Onaji (gurai) desu. 'They are (about) the same.'

A wa B to onaji gurai se ga takai desu.

'A is about as tall as B.'

..hodo '(to) the extent'

e.g. A wa B hodo se ga takaku nai desu. 'A is not as tall as B.'

cf. B wa A yori se ga takai desu. 'B is taller than A.'

Kon-shū wa sen-shū hodo isogashiku arimasen.

'I am not as busy this week as I was last week.'

A-bai 'A times as . as .'

e.g. Ōsaka no jinkō to Kyōto no jinkō to dochira ga ōi desu ka?

'Which is larger, the population of Osaka or the population of Kyoto?'

—Ōsaka no jinkō no hō ga ōi desu. Ni-bai gurai desu.

'The population of Osaka is larger. It's about twice as large.'

Chikyū no chokkei wa tsuki (no chokkei) no yon-bai desu.

'The diameter of the earth is 4 times that of the moon.'

A-bun no B  $\frac{B}{A}$

e.g. ni-bun no ichi '1/2' = han-bun 'half' yon-bun no san '3/4'

Tsuki wa chikyū no yon-bun no ichi (no ōki-sa) desu.

'The moon is one fourth (the size) of the earth.'

## I. Make dialogs as shown in the example

Ex. (Tōkyō) (Kyōto) (ōkii) Q: Tōkyō to Kyōto to dochira ga ōkii desu ka?

A: Tōkyō no hō ga ōkii desu.

1. (kono jisho) (ano jisho) (benri)
2. (Shinkan-sen) (hikōki) (hayai)
3. (sake) (biru) (oishii)
4. (Nippon no jitensha) (Oranda no jitensha) (jōbu<sup>1</sup>)
5. (Nippon no eiga) (gaikoku no eiga) (yoku mimasu)

## II. Fill in the blanks with a suitable word from among those given below.

atsui, samui, ōkii, takai, wakai, ōi

Ex. Tōkyō no jinkō wa Kyōto no jinkō yori (ōi) desu.

1. Eberesuto<sup>2</sup> wa Fuji-san<sup>3</sup> yori ( ) desu.
2. Hokkaidō no fuyu wa Tōkyō no fuyu yori ( ) desu.
3. Haha wa chichi yori ( ) desu.
4. Karukotto<sup>4</sup> wa Ōsaka yori ( ) desu.

## III. Make sentences as shown in the example.

Ex. (Tōkyō) (Kyōto) (furui) Tōkyō wa Kyōto hodo furuku nai desu.

1. (soroban<sup>5</sup>) (keisan-ki) (benri)
2. (kotoshi no fuyu) (kyo-nen no fuyu) (samui)
3. (Shugakuin-rikyū<sup>6</sup>) (Katsura-rikyū<sup>7</sup>) (yūmei)

## 語句

1 jōbu (Na) strong, stout, solid;  
healthy

2 Eberesuto 'Everest'

3 Fuji-san Mt. Fuji  
-san mountain

4 Karukotto 'Calcutta'

5 soroban Japanese abacus

6 Shugakuin rikyū Shugakuin Detached  
Palace (Kyoto)7 Katsura-rikyū Katsura Detached  
Palace (Kyoto)

8 Ōsutoraria 'Australia'

## IV. Make questions and answer them.

(A) Ex. (Tōkyō) (Ōsaka) (Nagoya) (ōkii)

Q: Tōkyō to Ōsaka to Nagoya no naka de doko ga ichiban ōkii desu ka?

A: Tōkyō ga ichiban ōkii desu.

1. (Kanada) (Ōsutoraria<sup>8</sup>) (Chūgoku) (ōkii)
2. (Eberesuto) (Mattāhorun<sup>9</sup>) (Fuji-san) (takai)
3. (Furansu-go) (Roshia-go<sup>10</sup>) (Nippon-go) (muzukashii)
4. (anata) (o-tō-san) (o-kā-san) (se ga takai<sup>11</sup>)
5. (Rōma) (Nyū Yōku) (Pari) (furui)
6. (Shinkan-sen) (hikōki) (jidōsha) (hayai)
7. (tenisu) (pinpon<sup>12</sup>) (bōringu<sup>13</sup>) (kantan)

(B) Ex. (ichi-nen) (atsui)

Q: Ichi-nen no naka de itsu ga ichiban atsui desu ka?

A: Hachi-gatsu ga ichiban atsui desu.

1. (Nippon no tabemono) (oishii)
2. (gakusei-jidai<sup>14</sup> no omoide<sup>15</sup>) (tanoshikatta)
3. (supōtsu) (omoshiroi)
4. (anata-gata) (hima)
5. (Nippon no toshi<sup>16</sup>) (kirei)

## V. Answer the following questions.

1. Tōkyō de ichiban takai tatemono wa nan desu ka?
2. Nippon de ichiban samui kisetu<sup>17</sup> wa itsu desu ka?
3. Nippon de ichiban furui o-tera wa doko ni arimasu ka?

9 Mattāhorun 'Matterhorn'

10 Roshia-go Russian (language)

Roshia 'Russia'

11 se ga takai tall

12 pinpon 'ping-pong,' table tennis

13 bōringu 'bowling'

14 gakusei-jidai when one is/was a  
student

15 omoide memory, recollection

16 toshi city, urban

17 kisetu season

## RYOKAN WA ARIMASU KA?

Hoteru-annai-sho<sup>1</sup> wa doko desu ka?

—Sono kaidan<sup>2</sup> o nobotte-kudasai.

Hidari-te<sup>3</sup> ni arimasu.

Arigato.

Sumimasen ga,

watashi wa hoteru o sagashite<sup>4</sup>-imasu.

Ii hoteru o shōkai-shite-kudasai.

—Kono atari niwa yō-shiki<sup>5</sup> no hoteru wa arimasen ga, Nippon no ryokan<sup>6</sup> wa arimasu. Ryokan demo ii desu ka?

Ryokan no hō ga ii desu.

Nippon no mado<sup>7</sup> ga aru to omoimasu.

—Jā, Asahi Ryokan ni shimasu ka?

Kono atari de mottomo<sup>8</sup> rippa-na<sup>9</sup> ryokan desu.

Takaku nai desu ka?

—Ē, kanari takai desu yo.

Ni-shoku-tsuki<sup>10</sup> de, ip-paku<sup>11</sup> roku-sen-en desu.

Where is the hotel information office?

Go up those stairs.

It's on the left-hand side.

Thanks

Excuse me, I'm looking for a hotel.

Can you recommend a good hotel?

—There are no Western style hotels around here, but there are some Japanese inns.

Is a Japanese inn all right?

A Japanese inn is even better

I think it has a Japanese atmosphere.

—Well, how about the Asahi Inn? It's the finest inn around here.

Isn't it expensive?

—Well, it's rather expensive

It's 6,000 yen a night, including two meals.

On top of that, there is a 10% tax and a 5% service charge.

A cheaper one would be better.

—It's a little far from here, but what about the Momiji Inn?

It's quieter and cheaper.

How long does it take to walk there?

—Let me see. . . Over twenty minutes, I think.

Fine, I'll go there.

—I'll draw you a map.

Thanks. Sorry to have troubled you.

How much do I owe you?

—What? For the information? It's free.

Well, then, this is for you.

—No, thank you.

We don't accept tips in Japan.

Oh, is that so?

Thanks, really.

Soreni, zeikin<sup>12</sup> ga jup-pasento,

Sabisu-ryo<sup>13</sup> ga go-pasento desu.

Motto yasui hō ga ii desu ga. . .

—Koko kara sukoshi tōi desu ga,

Momiji Ryokan wa ikaga desho?

Koko yori shizuka de, nedan<sup>14</sup> mo yasui desu yo.

Aruite nan-pun kakarimasu ka?

—Sō desu ne. . . ni-jup-pun ijō kakaru to omoimasu.

Ii desu. Sono ryokan ni shimasu.

—Dewa, chizu<sup>15</sup> o kakimashō.

Arigatō.

Domo o-sewa<sup>16</sup> ni narimashita.

Ikura desu ka?

—Hā?<sup>17</sup> Tesū-ryō<sup>18</sup> desu ka?

Mu-ryō<sup>19</sup> desu.

Sorejā, kore wa chippu<sup>20</sup> desu.

—Iie, kekkō<sup>21</sup> desu.

Nippon niwa chippu no shukan<sup>22</sup> wa arimasen.

So desu ka.

Hontō-ni arigatō.

### 語句

- 1 hoteru-annai-sho hotel information  
annai sho information bureau  
annai (Nv) guide  
-sho = -jo office
- 2 kaidan stairs
- 3 hidari-te the left-hand side cf. migitte
- 4 sagas-u look for, search
- 5 yō-shuku Western style  
-shiki style
- 6 ryokan inn
- 7 mado 'mood,' atmosphere
- 8 mottomo the most
- 9 rippa (Na) excellent
- 10 shoku-tsuki with meals
- tsuki including, at-

### 語句

- ached with
- 11 -paku = -haku overnight stay
- 12 zeikin tax
- 13 sabisu-ryō service charge
- ryō = ryōkin fee
- 14 nedan price
- 15 chizu map
- 16 sewa (Nv) care  
(o) sewa ni nar-u receive kindness/care
- 17 Hā? What?
- 18 tesū-ryō commission
- 19 mu-ryō no charge, free
- 20 chippu 'tip'
- 21 kekkō desu (Cph: for either accepting or declining)
- 22 shukan habit, custom

## 教育

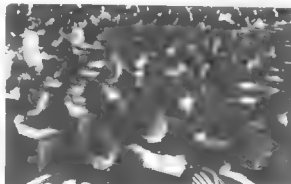
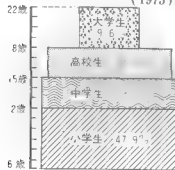
日本の教育制度は6・3・3・4制。つまり小学校6年、中学校3年、高等学校3年、大学4年です。そして最初の9年間は義務教育です。この期間の就学率は100%に近いですが、日本では文盲の人がほとんどいません。文盲率は約0.7%です。

高等学校への進学率は87%ぐらいですが、年々増加の傾向にあります。その率は地方より都会のほうが高いです。高等学校の卒業生の30%ぐらいが大学へ進学します。入学試験を受けなければなりません。

大学は全国に約890校あります。そのうち国公立が約180校であとは全部私立です。大学の数はアメリカがいちばん多いですが、日本はその次ぐらいです。しかし有名な大学に志願者が集まりますから、その入学試験の競争率はたいへん高いです。入学試験に落ちて、多くの学生が一年か二年浪人生活を送ります。

大学はふつう4年ですが、医学部は6年です。大学の次に大学院があります。修士課程が2年、博士課程が3年です。

### Distribution of students (1975)



▲An entrance examination

## Education

The educational system in Japan is a 6-3-3-4 system, that is, 6 years of elementary school, 3 of junior high school, 3 of senior high school, and 4 of college. The first nine years are compulsory. The percentage of school attendance during this period is almost 100%, and illiteracy is very low, about 0.7%.

About 87% of all junior high school graduates go on to senior high school, although this percentage is increasing every year and the figure is higher for urban areas than for rural areas. About 30% of the senior high school graduates go to college, but they have to take entrance examinations.

There are about 890 colleges and universities in Japan. About 180 of them are national or public, and the others are all private. The U. S. A. has more colleges and universities than any other country, but Japan is probably in second place. However, because everybody wants to go to the "name schools" there is keen competition in the entrance examinations. Many students, having failed in the examinations, stay out of school for one or two years rather than go to a second-choice college.

Most colleges and universities are for four years, but medical school is six. After a student finishes his undergraduate work, there is graduate school, which has a two-year master's course and a three-year doctorate course.

- 1 kyōiku-seido educational system  
kyōiku education
- 2 Roku-san-san-yon-sai 6-3-3-4 system  
-sei=seido system
- 3 tsumari namely, in other words
- 4 shō-gakkō elementary school
- 5 chū-gakkō junior high school
- 6 kōtō-gakkō (senior) high school
- 7 gimu-kyōiku compulsory education  
gimu duty, obligation
- 8 kikan period of time
- 9 shūgaku-ritsu school attendance rate  
shūgaku (Nv) going to school
- 10 ni chika-i almost , nearly
- 11 monmō (N) illiterate, illiteracy
- 12 monmō-ritsu illiteracy rate
- 13 rei-ten-nana 0.7  
rei zero ten point
- 14 shingaku-ritsu percentage of students  
going on to higher education  
shingaku (Nv) going on to a higher school
- 15 zōka (Nv) increase
- 16 kenkō tendency
- 17 tokai urban area
- 18 sotsugyō sha graduate (person)  
sotsugyō (Nv) graduation  
sha person, -er
- 19 nyūgaku-shiken-nyū-shi entrance  
examination nyūgaku (Nv) enter-  
ing school
- 20 uke-ru take, receive  
shiken o uke-ru sit for/take an exam
- 21 -kō =gakkō school
- 22 sono uchi among them
- 23 kok-kō-ritsu national and public  
+koku-ritsu (state-supported),  
kō-ritsu (public-supported)
- 24 ato the rest
- 25 shi-ritsu private (school, institute)
- 26 kazu number
- 27 shigan-sha applicant  
shigan (Nv) apply, volunteer
- 28 kyōsō-ritsu competition ratio  
kyōsō (Nv) competition
- 29 ochi-ru (Vi) drop, fall, fail (in the exam)
- 30 rōnin-seikatsu life away from school  
rōnin masterless samurai; unsuccess-  
ful examinee who stays out of  
school to study for the next year's  
exam
- 31 seikatsu (Nv) life, daily life
- 32 oku-ru spend (time); send
- 33 futsū (N) usually, ordinary
- 34 igaku-bu medical science depart-  
ment  
-gaku medical science  
-bu department  
gaku-bu department, university,
- 34 daigaku-in graduate school
- 35 snūshi katei master's course  
shūshi master of arts/science  
katei course
- 36 hakushi katei doctorate course  
hakushi=hakase doctorate, Ph.D

# 第 13 課

## 日本語の勉強

TAPE  
No. 4  
Side 1

① わたしは 三か月 前から 日本語の勉強をしています。  
それで、いつも いい 辞書が ほしいと 思っています。  
英和辞典だけでなく、和英辞典も ほしいです。しかし、  
外国人用の いい 辞書が なかなか 見つからなくて、困っ  
ています。

② わたしの 教科書の 索引には、単語が 千三百しか あ  
りませんから、とても 不便です。あと 二千語か、三千語  
あったほうが いいです。わたしの 友だちも いい 辞書を  
ほしいがっています。みんなが「正しい 日本語を 書きたい。」  
「美しい 日本語を 話したい。」と 言っています。

③ 先週 わたしたちは、教室で 日本の 歌の  
テープを 聞きました。「さくら さくら」「赤  
とんぼ」などでした。わたしは 前から 日本の  
歌が 好きでしたが、日本語の 勉強を 始め  
てから、日本語で 歌いたいと 思いはじめま



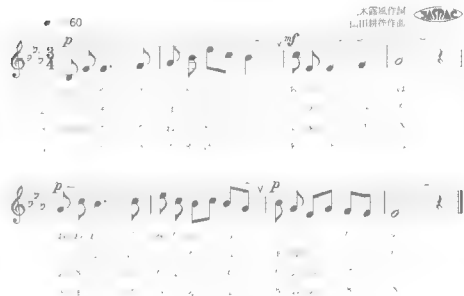
語句—

- 1 hoshi-i (A) desirable, want See § 63
- 2 Ei-Wa-jiten English-Japanese dictionary
- 3 jiten jisho dictionary
- 4 dake de naku not only but
- 5 Wa-Ei jiten Japanese-English dictionary
- 6 gaikoku-jin yō for foreigners

- 7 gaikoku-jin foreigner
- 8 yō for
- 9 nakanaka (not) easily, very; considerably
- 10 mitsukaru (Vi) be found
- 11 sakun index
- 12 tango word
- 13 -byaku -hyaku, -pyaku hundred

した。みんなは 何度も「赤とんぼ」を 聞きたがりました。  
あんな 美しい メロディーが きらいな 人は いないと わ  
たしは 思います。

### 赤とんぼ



© 1927 Rofu Miki, Kosaku Yamada  
Used by permission of JASRAC Licence No.8324005 932

- 11 -go (Count. for words)
- 12 zen -sen thousand
- 13 -garu show signs of See § 63
- 14 tadashi-i correct, right
- 15 -tai-i want to See § 63
- 16 tapu 'tape'
- 17 Sakura Sakura (title of a song)
- 18 Aka-tonbo (title of a song)

- 19 tonbo dragonfly
- 20 suki (Na) like, favorite See § 64
- 21 -hajime-ru begin to
- 22 nan-do mo many times
- 23 anna like that See § 8
- 24 marodi 'melody'
- 25 kirai (Na) dislike



# Dai 13-ka Nippon-go no Benkyō

1 Watashi wa san-ka-getsu mae kara Nippon-go no benkyō o shite-imasu. Sorede, itsumo ii jisho ga hoshii to omotte-imasu. Ei-Wa-jiten dake de naku, Wa-Ei-jiten mo hoshii desu. Shikashi, gaikoku-jin-yō no ii jisho ga nakanaka mitsukaranakute, komatte-imasu.

2 Watashi no kyōka-sho no saku niwa, tango ga sen san-byaku shika arimasen kara, totemo fu-ben desu. Ato ni-sen-go ka san-zen-go atta hō ga ii desu. Watashi no tomodachi mo ii jisho o hoshi-gatte-imasu. Minna ga "Tadashii Nippon-go o kakitai." "Utsukushii Nippon-go o hanashitai." to itte-imasu.

3 Sen-shū watashi-tachi wa, kyōshitsu de Nippon no uta no *tēpu* o kiki-mashita. 'Sakura Sakura,' 'Aka-tonbo' nado deshita. Watashi wa mae kara Nippon no uta ga suki deshita ga, Nippon-go no benkyō o hajimete kara, Nippon-go de utaitai to omoi-hajimemashita. Minna wa nan-do mo 'Aka-tonbo' o kikita-garimashita. Anna utsukushii *merodi* ga kirai-na hito wa inai to watashi wa omoimasu.



# Lesson 13 Studying Japanese

1 I have been studying Japanese for the last three months. So I have always wished I had a good dictionary. I want not only an English-Japanese dictionary but also a Japanese-English dictionary. But I am having trouble because it is hard to find a good dictionary for foreigners

2 Since there are only 1,300 words in the index in my textbook, it is very inconvenient. It would be nice if there were 2,000 or 3,000 words more. My friends also want good dictionaries. They all say, "I want to write correct Japanese," and "I want to speak good Japanese"

3 Last week we heard a tape of Japanese songs in the classroom. There were *Sakura Sakura*, *Akatonbo*, and others. I have liked Japanese songs for a long time, but since I have started studying Japanese I have begun to want to sing them in Japanese. Everyone wanted to hear *Akatonbo* over and over. I do not think there is anyone who does not like that beautiful melody

## ANSWERS pp. 160, 161

- I. (D) 1. Q: Anata no suki-na sak-ka wa dare desu ka? 2. Q: Anata no suki na iro wa nan desu ka? 3. Q: Anata no suki-na Nippon no machi wa doko desu ka? 4. Q: Anata no kirai-na kisetsu wa itsu desu ka? 5. Q: Anata no kirai-na *terebi* no bangumi wa nan desu ka?  
II. (A) 1. Kono hon ga/o karitai desu. 2. Kōcha ga/o nomitai desu. 3. Nippon no koto ga/o motto shirintai desu. 4. Mai-nichi Nippon-go ga/o benkyō shitai desu. 5. Fuji-san ni noboritai desu.  
(B) 1. Hikōki ni noritaku nai desu. 2. Tōkyō ni sumitaku nai desu. 3. Ima dare nimo aitaku nai desu.  
(C) 1. Benri-na jisho ga hoshii desu. 2. Atsui *kōbi* ga hoshii desu. 3. Nagai kyūka ga hoshii desu.  
III. Ex. 1 Nodo ga kawakimashita kara, (*yau* ga hoshii desu.) 2. Onaka ga sukimashita kara, (*sushi* ga tabetai desu.) 3. Atama ga itai desu kara, (*dare* nimo aitaku nai desu.) 4. Nippon go o benkyō-shite-imasu kara, (*ii* jisho ga hoshii desu.) 5. Ii tenki desu kara, (*hokingu* ni ikitai desu.) 6. Tsukaremashita kara, (*yasumitai* desu.) 7. Kinō tetsuya o shimashita kara, (*kyō* ichi nichi *netai* desu.)

## § 63 Expressions of Desire or Hope

$N_1$ wa	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} N_2 \text{ ga hoshii desu.} \\ (N_2 \text{ ga/o}) \text{ V-tai desu.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'N}_1 \text{ wants N}_2\text{' } \\ \text{'N}_1 \text{ wants to do... (N}_2\text{).'} \end{array} \right.$
----------	--	--

- e.g. Watashi wa kamera ga hoshii desu. 'I want a camera.'  
 Watashi wa kamera ga kai-tai desu. 'I want to buy a camera.'

NB: Hoshii is an A. '-tai' (want to) is attached to the Conj. form of V, and the V is then used as an A.

- e.g. Anata wa kamera ga hoshii/kai-tai desu ka?

'Do you want (to buy) a camera?'

—Iie, hoshiku nai/kai-taku nai desu. 'No, I don't want (to buy) one.'

Watashi wa sono kamera ga hoshikatta desu ga, o-kane ga arimasen deshita. 'I wanted that camera, but I did not have any money.'

Iki-taku nakatta desu ga, ikimashita.

'I didn't want to go, but I went.'

NB: These Predicates, like many other Adjectives expressing emotion or feeling, are basically to express the feelings of the speaker (and those of a second person in a question). When you want to use them for a third person, some modifications are necessary, such as the following. It is not enough to simply substitute Topics.

- e.g. Watashi wa kamera ga hoshii desu.

\*Tarō wa kamera ga hoshii desu.

Tarō wa kamera ga hoshii to itte-imasu.

'Taro says he wants a camera.'

Tarō wa kamera o hoshi-gatte-imasu. (Literally, 'Taro is showing signs of wanting a camera.')

Tarō wa kamera ga hoshii no desu.

The 'Adjectives of emotion' include: ureshii 'glad, happy'; kanashii 'sad'; kowai 'afraid'; sabishii 'lonely'

NB: The object of V-tai (N<sub>2</sub>) may be indicated with either o or ga.

## § 64 Expressions of Like or Dislike

$N_1$ wa $N_2$ ga	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{suki} \\ \text{kirai} \end{array} \right.$	desu.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'N}_1 \text{ likes} \\ \text{'N}_1 \text{ dislikes} \end{array} \right.$	$N_2$ .
-------------------	--	-------	--	---------

NB: Both suki and kirai are Na. When they are used as prenominal modifiers they take the '-na' form.

- e.g. suki-na tabemono 'food that one likes' 'one's favorite food'

To express 'like/dislike... very much,' the prefix **dai-** is attached.

- e.g. Anata wa kōhi ga suki desu ka? 'Do you like coffee?'

—Hai, dai-suki desu. 'Yes, I like it very much.'

Anata no kirai-na tabemono wa nan desu ka?

'What food don't you like?'

—Sashimi desu. 'Sashimi.'

NB: 'N<sub>2</sub> ga' in the above pattern changes to 'N<sub>2</sub> wa' in negative answers, and also when N<sub>2</sub> is contrasted with some other thing.

- e.g. Anata wa kōcha ga suki desu ka? 'Do you like (black) tea?'

—Iie, kōcha wa suki dewa arimasen. 'No, I don't like tea.'

Watashi wa biru wa suki desu ga, o-sake wa suki dewa arimasen.

'I like beer, but I don't like sake'

In all the 'N<sub>1</sub> wa N<sub>2</sub> ga....' constructions, the substitution of 'N<sub>2</sub> wa' for 'N<sub>2</sub> ga' has the same effect.

- e.g. Anata wa kamera ga hoshii desu ka? 'Do you want a camera?'

—Iie, kamera wa hoshiku nai desu. 'No, I don't want a camera.'

Watashi wa tēpu-rekōdā wa hoshii desu ga, kamera wa hoshiku nai desu.

'I want a tape recorder, but I don't want a camera.'

## § 65 Expressions of Intimacy in the Sentence-final Forms

In conversations between intimate friends, a variety of Sentence-final forms (mostly Sentence-final Particles) are used. Most commonly used are

**no?** (Question, mostly by women); **wa.** (Confirmation, by women only); and **kai?/ dai?** (Question, by men only)

## I. Make dialogs as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. (Nihon-ryōri<sup>1</sup>) Q: Anata wa Nihon-ryōri ga suki desu ka?

A: Iie, suki dewa arimasen. Kirai desu.

1. (bōringu) 2. (uisuki<sup>2</sup>) 3. (neko) 4. (gurūpu-ryokō<sup>3</sup>)

(B) Ex. Q: (supōtsu) Anata wa supōtsu no naka de nani ga ichiban suki desu ka?

A: (tenisu) Tenisu ga ichiban suki desu.

1. Q: (Furansu no shōsetsu-ka<sup>4</sup>) A: (Roman Roran<sup>5</sup>)2. Q: (Yōroppa no toshi) A: (Junēbu<sup>6</sup>)3. Q: (Nippon no shiki<sup>7</sup>) A: (aki)

(C) Ex. Q: (tabemono) Anata wa donna tabemono ga suki desu ka?

A: (sarada<sup>8</sup>) Sarada ga suki desu.1. Q: (nomimono) A: (tomato-jūsu<sup>9</sup>)

2. Q: (ongaku) A: (jazu)

3. Q: (josei<sup>10</sup>) A: (kawairashii josei)

(D) Ex. Q: (suki) (shōsetsu) Anata no suki-na shōsetsu wa nan desu ka?

A: (S.F.<sup>11</sup>) shōsetsu S.F. shōsetsu desu.1. Q: (suki) (sak-ka<sup>12</sup>) A: (Matsumoto Seichō<sup>13</sup>)2. Q: (suki) (iro<sup>14</sup>) A: (ao to midori)3. Q: (suki) (Nippon no machi) A: (Kurashiki<sup>15</sup>)

4. Q: (kirai) (kisetsu) A: (fuyu)

5. Q: (kirai) (terebi no bangumi<sup>16</sup>) A: (manga<sup>17</sup> no bangumi)

## 語句

1 Nihon-ryōri Japanese cooking

2 usuki 'whisky'

3 gurūpu-ryokō 'group' travel

4 shōsetsu-ka novelist

5 Roman Roran 'Romain Rolland'

6 Junebu 'Geneva'

7 shiki four seasons

-ki season (←kisetsu)

8 sarada 'salad'

9 tomato-jūsu 'tomato juice'

10 josei female, woman

cf. danse (male)

11 S.F. 'science fiction'

12 sak-ka writer

13 Matsumoto Seichō (a contemporary writer; 1909- )

## II. Change the sentences as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. (Kyō no shinbun o yomimasu.) Kyō no shinbun ga/o yomitai desu.

1. (Kono hon o karimasu.)

2. (Kōcha o nomimasu.)

3. (Nippon no koto o motto shirimasu.)

4. (Mai-nichi Nippon-go o benkyō-shimasu.)

5. (Fuji-san ni noborimasu.)

(B) Ex. (Kyō wa doko e mo ikimasen.) Kyō wa doko e mo ikitaku nai desu.

1. (Hikōki ni norimasen.)

2. (Tōkyō ni sumimasu.)

3. (Ima dare nimo aimasen.)

(C) Ex. (Kono mizu wa tsumetai desu.) Tsumetai mizu ga hoshii desu.

1. (Kono jisho wa benri desu.)

2. (Kono kōki wa atsui desu.)

3. (Kondo no kyūka<sup>18</sup> wa nagai desu.)

## III. Complete the following sentences.

1. Nodō<sup>19</sup> ga kawakimashita<sup>20</sup> kara,2. Onaka<sup>21</sup> ga sukimashita<sup>22</sup> kara,3. Atama ga itai<sup>23</sup> desu kara,

4. Nippon-go o benkyō-shite-imasu kara,

5. Ii tenki desu kara,

6. Tsukare mashita kara,

7. Kinō tetsuya<sup>24</sup> o shimashita kara,

14 iro color

15 Kurashiki (a place name)

16 bangumi program (radio or TV)

17 manga cartoon

18 kyūka - yasumi vacation

19 nodō throat

20 kawak-u get dry

nodō ga kawak-u get thirsty

21 onaka stomach, belly

22 suk-u become empty/vacant

onaka ga suk-u get hungry

23 ita-i hurt, painful

atama ga ita-i have a headache

24 tetsuya (Nv) sitting/staying up all

night

## DŌ SHIMASHITA?

—Kao-iro<sup>1</sup> ga warui<sup>2</sup> desu ne.

Do shimashita?

Ni-san-nichi mae kara

atama ga itai desu.

Soreni, sukoshi netsu ga arimasu.

—Sore wa ikemasen<sup>3</sup> ne.

Tabun<sup>4</sup> kaze<sup>5</sup> desho.

Isha e ikitai to omoimasu ga,

ii o-isha-san o oshiete-kudasai.

—Watashi no kakari-tsuke<sup>6</sup> no

o-isha-san o shokai-shimashō.

Arigato.

Kyō no gogo sassoku<sup>7</sup> ittemo ii desu ka?

—Ii desu yo. Soretomo,

ima kara issho-ni ikimasen ka?

Soredewa o-negai-shimasu.\*

—Watashi mo sukoshi atama ga itakute,

soreni netsu mo arimasu.

Issho-ni ikimasho.

—You don't look very well.

What's the matter?

I've had a headache for the last 2 or 3 days.

Moreover, I've got a slight fever.

That will never do.

It's probably a cold.

I think I ought to go see a doctor. Could you recommend a good one?

—I'll give you the name of the doctor I always go to.

Thanks

Would it be all right to go right away this afternoon?

—Of course. Or, why don't we go together right now?

If that's all right with you, please, let's go.

—I've got a bit of a headache and a slight fever myself.

Let's go together, then.

ROMA

1 kao-iro facial color, complexion kao face

2 warui bad

3 ikenai not good

4 tabun probably

5 kaze a cold

6 kakari-tsuke a doctor one always consults

kakari + kakaru (see a doctor)

tsuke + tsuke-ru (habitually do)

7 sassoku right now, without delay

8 O negai-shimasu (Cph: used when asking a favor)

9 daru-i dull, lethargic

—Please sit down

What's the matter with you?

I've got a bad headache and feel run down.

—That's too bad.

Open your mouth, please.

Hmmmm

Please take off your shirt.

It's a cold

It's all right. No need to worry.

I'll give you a shot, but are you allergic to anything?

No, it's all right.

But I'm not very fond of shots.

—Take two of these tablets after every meal and before you go to bed.

I see.

Thank you very much.

—Take care of yourself

karada ga daru-i feel run down

10 kuchi mouth

11 Hahā Hm, I see

12 shōto 'shirt'

13 shinpai (Nv) worry

14 iru need, be necessary

15 chūsha (Nv) injection

16 arerugi 'allergy'

17 demo although, but

18 kusuri medicine

19 -jō (Count. for tablets)

20 nom-u take (medicine).

drink

21 O daiji-ni (Cph) Take good care (of yourself) (to a sick person).

—Dozo koko ni suwatte-kudasai.

Dō shimashita?

Totemo atama ga itakute karada ga darui<sup>9</sup> desu.

—Sore wa ikemasen nē.

Chotto kuchi<sup>10</sup> o akete-kudasai.

Hahan<sup>11</sup>....

Shatsu<sup>12</sup> o nuide-kudasai.

Kaze desu.

Daijōbu desu. Shinpai<sup>13</sup> irimasen.<sup>14</sup>

Chūsha<sup>15</sup> o shimasu ga,

arerugi<sup>16</sup> wa arimasen ka?

Hai, daijōbu desu.

Demo,<sup>17</sup> chusha wa amari suki dewa nai desu....

—Kono kusuri<sup>18</sup> o, shokuji no ato to neru mae ni, ni-jō<sup>19</sup>-zutsu nonde<sup>20</sup>-kudasai.

Hai, wakarimashita.

Domo arigatō gozaimashita.

—O-daiji-ni.<sup>21</sup>

# 手紙

みんな ときどき 友だちに 会って 話が したいです。友だちが 遠くに いる ときも ようすが 知りたいです。だから そんな ときは 手紙を 書きます。

たいていの 手紙は 前文、本文、結びの 部分から できています。前文は「拝啓」、「お手紙 ありがとうございます。」などの あいさつで 始めます。次に 季節の あいさつを 述べます。「もう 春です。」とか「きびしい 寒さの おり……」とか 書きます。それから 相手の ようすを 聞いたり、自分の ようすを 書いたりします。前文を 省きたい と きは、「前略」と 書いて、すぐ 本文に はいります。本文は 自然な ことばで 書いた ほうが いいです。ていねいな 語体を よく 使います。

結びには「おからだを たいせつに」などの 別れの あいさつや「皆さんに よろしく」などの ことづての あいさつを 書きます。その あとに「さようなら」、「では また」などの 結びの ことばを 書いて 手紙を 終わります。そして 日付、自分の 名まえ、相手の 名まえを 書きます。

若い 人は こんな 形式に あまり 従いたがりません。簡単な 用事の ときは 手紙よりも はがきを よく 書きます。お正月に たくさん 年賀状を 出しますが、これも はがきです。夏の 暑い 間には 暑中見舞いの はがきを 書きます。

謹賀新年  
暑中見舞い

## Letters

Everyone wants to see and talk with friends once in a while. When our friends live far away, we want to ask them how they are. Thus we write letters.

Most letters include a salutation, body, and closing remarks. The salutation begins with "Haikai." After this comes "Thank you for your letter" and the compliments of the season such as "Already it is spring" or "During this severe cold. . ." Then we inquire about the addressee's health and tell about ours. When we want to omit the salutation, we write "Zenryaku" and start with the body.

The body is best written in natural language, and polite colloquial is often used in letters.

In closing we write "Please take care" and "Please give my best to everybody," and then "Good-bye." Then we write the date, our name, and the addressee's name.

Young people do not want to follow this format as strictly. When there is not much to say, we use postcards rather than letters. Postcards are also used for New Year's Cards and Summer's Greetings.

### 語句

- yōsu manner, condition, state of things
- dakara =desukara therefore, so
- sonna such, like that See § 8
- zenbun preface
- honbun main text, body
- musubi closing ←musub-u (conclude, tie)
- bubun part
- kara dekite-iru consist of
- Haikai Dear (letter)
- tsugi ni next
- nobe-ru state, mention, note
- kibishi-i severe, harsh, rigid
- samu-sa (N) cold ←samu-i
- ori occasion
- aite the other side (when two persons or groups are involved); partner; opponent
- jibun oneself
- habuk-u omit
- Zen-ryaku Omitting the greeting (letter)
- shizen (N/Na) nature, natural
- temei (Na) polite; detailed
- kōgo-tai colloquial style  
kōgo colloquial speech  
cf. bungo (literary speech)  
-tai style
- taietsu (Na) -dai; important
- wakare parting ←wakare-ru (part with, separate from)
- mna sama everybody (Polite)
- ni yoroshiku give best regards to
- kotozute message
- Dewa mata Will write again
- hi-zuke date
- keishiki form, formality
- shitaga-u follow, obey
- yōji errand, business
- Nenga-jō New Year's Card  
nenga New Year's Day greetings  
-jō letter
- das-u put out, send (letter)
- Shochu-mimai Summer's Greetings  
shochu during the hot season  
mimai inquiring after (a sick person) ←mima-u (inquire after)

# 第 14 課

## 姉と音楽

TAPE  
No. 4  
Side 1

① わたしの姉は音楽大学の一年生で、ことしの春  
大学に入学したときからイタリア語を勉強しています。  
それで、今ではイタリア語が少しわかります。イタリア  
語で「サンタ・ルチア」や「ソレント」を歌うこと  
ができます。姉の専門はピアノですが、最近では音楽も  
好きだと言っています。ピアノは小学生のときから習い  
はじめたので、たいへんじょうずです。

② わたしの家では父も母も歌を歌うことが好き  
ですが、二人ともあまりじょうずではありません。楽器も  
二人そろってへたです。わたしもハーモニカとアコー  
ディオンだけはできますが、そのほかの楽器はみな  
にがてです。第一、楽譜を見て歌うことができません。  
近ごろの小学生はほとんどみな楽譜だけで歌う  
ことができますから、外国の人はよく「日本の音楽教

育はすばらしいです。」と言います。わたしはたぶん  
例外だと思えます。

③ 姉はよくパーティーから招待を受けます。知り合  
いからよく電話がかかってくる。「道子さんの歌と  
ピアノをパーティーで聞きたい。」という注文や、「土曜  
の晩に市民会館へ来ることができますか。」という問  
い合わせです。姉はピアノ演奏も歌も好きですから、た  
いてい引き受けますが、近ごろは、「わたしは時間がな  
くて勉強できない。」と言いはじめました。しかし、わ  
たしはうらやましくてしかたありません。なぜなら、姉  
は好きなことに時間を使っていそがしがっているから  
です。

④ わたしのほうは大学の入学試験の準備で、一つも  
好きなスポーツができません。毎日毎日きらいな数学  
や英語の勉強をしなければなりません。大学では、のび  
のびと好きな研究ができることがいちばんすばらし  
い。思いのほか、いやな勉強を続けています。

### 語句

- 1 ongaku daigaku music college
- 2 -nen-sei -th grader of school
- 3 Italia go Italian (language)
- 4 Santa Lucia 'Santa Lucia'
- 5 Kaere Sorento e (title of an Italian song)  
Kaere (Imperative form of kaeru)
- 6 deki-ru be possible/able See § 66
- 7 saikin (N/Adv) recently, of late
- 8 seigaku vocal music
- 9 sorotte all together +soro-u (all

- the members being present)
- 10 heta (Na) unskillful
- 11 okadion 'accordion'
- 12 hoka (N) the others/rest  
sono hoka other than that
- 13 nigate (Na) weak point
- 14 dai-ichi (the) first, primarily, before  
anything else
- 15 gakufu sheet music, score
- 16 chika goro (N/Adv) recent, these days
- 17 ongaku-kyōiku musical education
- 18 reigai exception
- 19 shōtai (Nv) invitation

- 20 shiriai acquaintance  
+shirai-u (become acquainted with)
- 21 denwa ga kakaru-u ~denwa ga aru get  
a phone call cf. denwa o kake-ru/  
suru (make a phone call,
- 22 Michiko (a given name (f))
- 23 shimin-kaikan citizens' hall  
shimin citizen (of a city/town)  
kai kan assembly hall
- 24 toi-awase inquiry for information
- 25 piano-ensō piano recital
- 26 ensō (Nv) musical performance
- 26 hiki-uke-ru accept (an offer of work)

- 27 jikan time
- 28 urayamashi-ii envious; enviable
- 29 naze nara because  
naze why nara if
- 30 no hō side, direction
- 31 junbi (Nv) preparation
- 32 hito-tsu mo nai not a single, not  
at all
- 33 sugaku mathematics
- 34 nobi nobi in an relaxed manner
- 35 kenkyū (Nv) research, study
- 36 iya (Na) unfavorable, distasteful,  
nasty
- 37 tsuzuke-ru (Vt) continue

## Dai 14-ka Ane to Ongaku

1 Watashi no ane wa ongaku-daigaku no ichi-nen-sei de, kotoshi no haru daigaku ni nyūgaku-shita toki kara *Itaria-go* o benkyō-shite-imasu. Sorede, ima dewa *Itaria-go* ga sukoshi wakarimasu. *Itaria-go* de '*Santa Lucia*' ya '*Kaere Sorento e*' o utau koto ga dekimasu. Ane no sermon wa *piano* desu ga, saikin wa seigaku mo suki da to itte-imasu. *Piano* wa shōgaku-sei no toki kara narai-hajimeta node, taihen jōzu desu.

2 Watashi no ie dewa chichi mo haha mo uta o utau koto ga suki desu ga, futa-ri tomo amari jōzu dewa arimasen. Gakki mo futa-ri sorotte heta desu. Watashi mo *hōmonika* to *akōdion* dake wa dekimasu ga, sono hoka no gakki wa mina nigate desu. Dai-ichi, gakufu o mite utau koto ga dekimasen. Chika-goro no shōgaku-sei wa hotondo mina gakufu dake de utau koto ga dekimasu kara, gaikoku no hito wa yoku "Nippon no ongaku-kyōiku wa subarashii desu." to iimasu. Watashi wa tabun reigai da to omoimasu.

3 Ane wa yoku *pāti* kara shōtai o ukemasu. Shiriai kara yoku denwa ga kakatte-kimasu. "Michiko-san no uta to *piano* o *pāti* de kikitai." to iu chūmon ya, "Do-yō no ban ni shimin-kaikan e kuru koto ga dekimasu ka?" to iu toi-awase desu. Ane wa *piano*-ensō mo uta mo suki desu kara taitei hiki-ukemasu ga, chika-goro wa, "Watashi wa jikan ga nakute benkyō dekinai." to ii-hajimemashita. Shikashi, watashi wa urayamashikute shikata ga arimasen. Naze nara, ane wa suki-na koto ni jikan o tsukatte isogashi-gatte-iru kara desu.

4 Watashi no hō wa daigaku no nyūgaku-shiken no junbi de, hito-tsu mo suki-na *supōtsu* ga dekimasen. Mai-nichi-mai-nichi kirai-na sūgaku ya Ei-go no benkyō o shinakereba narimasen. Daigaku dewa, nobi-nobi to suki-na kenkyū ga dekiru koto ga ichiban subarashii to omoinagara, iya-na benkyō o tsuzukete-imasu.

## Lesson 14 My Sister and Music

1 My elder sister is a freshman at a college of music, and since she entered the college this spring she has been studying Italian. So now she understands a little Italian. She can sing *Santa Lucia* and *Torna a Surriento* in Italian. Although her major is piano, she has recently said she likes vocal music as well. Since she has been taking piano lessons since she was in primary school, she is very good.

2 At my house, both my father and mother like to sing too, but they are not very good singers. And they are both poor musicians too. I can play only the harmonica and the accordion, but I am no good at any other instruments. In the first place, I can not read sheet music for singing. Nowadays, almost all grade school children can sing with just the sheet music, so foreigners say that Japanese musical education is very good. I think maybe I am an exception.

3 My sister gets invited to a lot of parties. She gets a lot of phone calls from people she knows. They say, "Michiko, please play the piano and sing for us at the party," or ask her "Can you come to the civic auditorium on Saturday evening?" Since she likes to play the piano and to sing, she usually says she can, but lately she has begun to complain of not having enough time to study. Still, I envy her no end. She is busy using her time with something that she enjoys doing.

4 I am busy getting ready for my college entrance exams and can not play any of my favorite sports. Every day I have to study hateful math and English. But I continue this distasteful studying, thinking how wonderful it would be to be able to do research you like leisurely at the university.

### ANSWERS 'pp 172, 173

1. (A) 1. Q: Anata wa jidōsha no unten ga dekimasu ka? 2. Q: Anata wa *Furansu-go* ga dekimasu ka? 3. Q: Anata wa *gorufu* ga dekimasu ka? 4. Q: Anata wa ryōbi ga dekimasu ka? 5. Q: Anata wa koto ga dekimasu ka? (B) 1. Q: Anata wa jidōsha no unten ga jōzu desu ka? 2. Q: Anata wa *Furansu-go* ga jōzu desu ka? 3. Q: Anata wa *gorufu* ga jōzu desu ka? 4. Q: Anata wa ryōbi ga jōzu desu ka? 5. Q: Anata wa koto ga jōzu desu ka? IV. 1. Kare wa Nippon-go no karwa ga jōzu desu. 2. Kanojo wa *Itaria-go* o taihen jōzu-ni hanasu koto ga dekimasu. 3. Watashi wa made Nippon/Nippon-go no shūbun o yomu koto ga dekimasu. 4. "Anata wa kare no kōen ga wakaramashita ka?" "Iie, zenzen wakaramasen deshita." 5. "Ashita/Asu watashi-tachi wa watashi no ie de *pāti* o shimasu. Kimasen ka?" "Zannen desu ga, watashi wa odoru koto ga dekimasen." "Odoru koto ga dekinakutemo ii desu. Hanashi o shi ni kite kudasai." 6. "Kondo no Nichi-yōbi watashi wa tomodachi to (issho-ni) *saukiringu* ni ikimasu." "Watashi mo ikita desu. Otōto wa itsumo *saukiringu* ni ikitai to itte imasu. Kare o tsurete-ittemo ii desu ka?" "Mochiron. Dare demo watashi-tachi to issho-ni iku koto ga dekimasu. Shikashi, (anata no) otōto-san wa nagai jikan jitensha ni noru koto ga dekimasu ka? Watashi-tachi wa asa kara ban made (jitensha ni) noranakereba narimasen."

## § 66 Ability

N <sub>1</sub> wa N <sub>2</sub> ga	dekimasu.	'N <sub>1</sub>	(can do N <sub>2</sub>	'N <sub>2</sub> .'
	jōzu desu.		is good at	
	heta desu.		is poor at	
	tokui desu.		is good at (and likes)	
	nigate desu.		is poor at (and dislikes)	
	wakarimasu.		(can) understand	

e.g. Anata wa *tenisu* ga dekimasu ka? 'Can you play tennis?'

—Hai, dekimasu. 'Yes, I can.'

Watashi wa *tenisu* ga tokui desu. 'Tennis is my favorite sport.'

(or, *Tenisu* wa tokui desu.)

—Iie, dekimasen. 'No, I can't.'

Watashi wa *tenisu* ga nigate desu. 'I seldom play tennis, and when

(or, *Tenisu* wa nigate desu.) I do, I am awful.'

Yamada-san wa *Tai-go* ga dekimasu ka? 'Can Yamada speak Thai?'

—Hai, kare wa *Tai-go* ga taihen jōzu desu. 'Yes, he speaks Thai very well.'

NB: (1) Dekimasu (<deki+ru 'be possible') is conjugated just like any other V, but it belongs to a special class of V which have many other features in common with A or Na. This class of V includes: ar-u 'exist, there is'; i-ru 'there is (for people), stay'; ir-u 'need, necessary'; etc. These verbs are called 'Stative Verbs.' Since they express states, they have no '-te-iru form' (See § 37), and all of them except i-ru ('stay') lack the imperative form.

(2) Jōzu and heta are 'Na adjectives'; tokui and nigate are used either as N or Na

*Tai-go* ga jōzu-na hito 'a person (who is) good at Thai'

Tokui no/na *supōtsu* '(one's) favorite sport'

## § 67 Nominalizing a Verb: the Use of koto

When it is necessary to use a V in a position that is reserved for an N, the V must be given an N-like quality. The commonest way is to use the Pseudo Noun *koto* after the V.

e.g. Eiga wa omoshiroi desu. 'Movies are interesting.'  
(N)

Eiga o *tsukuru koto* wa omoshiroi desu. 'To make movies is interesting.'  
(V)  
(N)

Watashi wa shi ni kyōmi o motte-imasu. 'I am interested in poetry.'  
(N)

Watashi wa shi o kaku *koto* ni kyōmi o... 'I am interested in writing poetry.'  
(V)  
(N)

Thus it is possible now to expand the patterns introduced so far, for instance:

§ 64→ N<sub>1</sub> wa (N<sub>2</sub> o) V (Dict.) *koto ga suki/kirai desu.*

e.g. Watashi wa yama ni noboru *koto ga suki desu.*  
'I like to climb mountains.'

§ 59→ (N o) V (Dict.) *koto wa* (N o) V (Dict.) *koto yori A/Na desu.*

e.g. *Bokushingū* o miru *koto wa* (*bokushingū* o) suru *koto yori* omoshiroi desu.  
'To watch a boxing match is more fun than to box.' 'It is more fun to watch a boxing match than (it is) to box.'

§ 66→ N<sub>1</sub> wa (N<sub>2</sub> o) V (Dict.) *koto ga dekimasu* (*jōzu desu*, etc.).

e.g. Watashi wa Chūgoku-go o yomu *koto ga dekimasu.* Shikashi, hanasu *koto wa* dekimasen.  
'I can read Chinese, but I can't speak it'



## I. Make dialogs using the chart

(A) Ex. Q: Anata wa *dansu*<sup>1</sup> ga dekimasu ka?

A: (Hai) Hai, dekimasu.

(lie) lie, *dansu* wa dekimasen.(B) Ex. Q: Anata wa *dansu* ga jōzu desu ka?

A: (Hai) Hai, jōzu desu.

(lie) lie, amari jōzu dewa arimasen. Heta desu.

## II. Change the sentences as shown in the example.

Ex. (Nippon-go o hanashimasu)

Watashi wa Nippon-go o hanasu koto ga dekimasu.

1. (Kan-ji<sup>3</sup> o kakimasu.) 2. (Jidōsha o kumitatemasu.<sup>4</sup>)3. (Tatta mama nemasu.) 4. (Taipu<sup>5</sup> o uchimasu.<sup>6</sup>)5. (Kono kikai no kōzō<sup>7</sup> o setsumeij<sup>8</sup>-shimasu.)

## 語句

1 *dansu* (Nv) 'dance'2 *uten* (Nv) driving, operating (car/train/machine)3 *kan-ji* Chinese character/letter4 *kumitate-ru* assemble, put together5 *taipu* 'typewriter', typing6 *uts-u* strike, hit*taipu* o *uts-u* type (V)7 *kōzō* structure, construction8 *setsume* (Nv) explanation9 *toku* (Na) (something) which one is good at See § 66

## III Answer the following questions

1. Anata no kazoku wa minna Nippon-go ga dekimasu ka?

2. Anata no tomodachi wa minna *gorufu* ga dekimasu ka?

3. Anata wa kaimono ga jōzu desu ka?

4. Anata no o-kā-san wa ryōri ga jōzu desu ka?

5. Anata no ichiban tokui<sup>9</sup>-na ryōri wa nan desu ka?6. Anata no tokui-na gaikoku-go<sup>10</sup> wa nan desu ka?7. Anata no tokui-na *supōtsu* wa nan desu ka?8. Anata no suki-na haiyū<sup>11</sup> wa dare desu ka?

## IV. Put the following into Japanese.

1. He is good at Japanese conversation.<sup>12</sup>

2. She can speak Italian very well.

3. I can't read Japanese newspapers yet.

4. "Did you understand his lecture<sup>13</sup>?""No, I didn't understand it at all.<sup>14</sup>"

5. "Tomorrow we are going to have a party at my house. Would you please come?"

"I'm sorry,<sup>15</sup> but I can't dance."

"It doesn't matter if you can't dance. Come and talk."

6. "Next Sunday I am going bicycling with my friends."

"I want to go too. My brother always says that he wants to go bicycling. Do you mind if I take him?"

"No, anybody<sup>16</sup> can go with us. But can your brother ride a bicycle for a long time? We have to ride from morning till evening."10 *gaikoku go* foreign language11 *haiyū* actor, actress12 *kaiwa* (Nv) conversation13 *kōen* (Nv) lecture (to a large audience) cf. *kōgi* (university lecture)14 *zenzen* nai not at all15 *zannen* (Na) regrettable16 *dare demo* anybody, anyone, whoever

\$1 ¥?

Koko de *toraberazu chekku*<sup>1</sup> o

en ni kaeru<sup>2</sup> koto ga dekimasu ka?

—Hai, dekimasu.

Doko no ginkō no kogitte<sup>3</sup> desu ka?

'Bank of America' desu.

Hyaku-hachi-ju-doru<sup>4</sup> o negai-shimasu.

—*Pasupōto* o misete<sup>5</sup> kudasai.

Shibaraku o-machi-kudasai ne.

Ichi-doru wa en de ikura desu ka?

—Kyō wa ni-hyaku-roku-ju-hachi-en desu.

Koko de kitte o kau koto mo

dekimasu ka?

—Iie, koko wa ginkō desu kara,

kitte wa utte-imasen.

Yubin-kyoku e itte-kudasai.

A, sō desu ka.

Yubin-kyoku wa chikai desu ka?

—Hai, sugu tonari desu.

Kono o-kane o kuni no kazoku ni

okuritai no desu ga...

Can I cash traveler's checks here, please?

Yes, you can.

Which bank issued the checks?

Bank of America.

180 dollars, please.

—Please show me your passport.

Wait a minute, please.

How much is one dollar in yen?

—Today, it is 268 yen.

Can I buy stamps here too?

—No, this is a bank.

We don't sell stamps.

Please go to the post office

Oh, I see.

Is the post office near here?

—Yes, it is right next door.

I'd like to send this money to my family back home.

語句

1 *toraberazu chekku* 'traveler's check'

2 *kaeru* change, exchange, cash (check) cf. *kawaru* (Vi)

3 *kogitte* check (bank or personal)

4 *doru* 'dollar'

5 *misete* show (Vi), let see

6 *yōshū* form, paper used

—Would you fill out this form with the address of the recipient and your own address, please?

Altogether that's 50,000 yen, isn't it?

Yes.

I don't know *kanji* or *hiragana* very well, so could you write them for me?

—OK. But your Japanese is very good

Not really. I can speak Japanese, but I can't write *kanji* or *hiragana* very well.

I find it very difficult to read and write Japanese.

—It's interesting, isn't it?

We Japanese can read and write English, but we have difficulty speaking it

—Kono yoshi<sup>6</sup> ni atesaki<sup>7</sup> to anata no jusho<sup>8</sup> o kinyū<sup>9</sup>-shite-kudasai.

Zenbu de go-man-en desu ne?

Hai.

Watashi wa kan-ji ya hira-gana<sup>10</sup> ga

heta desu kara, sumimasen ga,

kawari ni<sup>11</sup> kaite-kudasaimasen ka?

—Ē, ii desu yo. Demo, Nippon-go wa totemo o-jōzu desu ne.

Iyā, hanasu koto wa dekimasu ga, kan-ji ya hira-gana wa sukoshi shika kaku koto ga dekimasen.

Nippon-go wa yondari kaitari suru koto ga, totemo muzukashii desu.

—Omoshiroi desu ne.

Watashi-tachi Nippon-jin wa

Ei-go o yondari kaitari suru koto wa dekimasu ga, hanasu koto ga nakanaka dekimasen.

for a specific purpose  
7 atesaki mailing address  
8 jusho address  
9 kinyū (Nv) filling out (form), fill in (blanks)  
10 hira-gana (Japanese characters) cf. *kata kana*, *kan ji*  
11 *kawari ni* instead, in place (of)



▶ Bank of Tokyo

## 産業 2

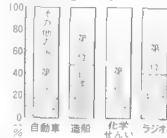
日本の「モノづくり」はアメリカについて、ソ連とカタを並べていく。戦後、まず繊維工業などの軽工業が発達した。そして、日本製品は「日本」から市場へ進出することができたが、それはおもに日本の「勤勉な努力と低賃金」によっていた。1960年ごろからは、重工業、化学工業、日本の工業の中心になった。

すぐれた技術が日本の工業をささえている。造船、自動車工業は特に有名だ。化学繊維、合成繊維の技術も非常に進んでいる。

日本にとって貿易はきわめて重要である。日本は資源が少ないから原料を外国から輸入している。それを加工して輸出する。つまり加工貿易ということができる。近年輸出額が輸入額よりも多い。これからは輸出と輸入のバランスをとることが必要だ。

貿易の相手国ではアメリカが一番である。アメリカは日本の輸入・輸出額の約1/3を占めている。以前は綿花、羊毛が輸入の中心で、綿織物、おもちゃが輸出の中心であった。しかし今日では石油、鉄が輸入の中心である。輸出品のおもなものは船舶、自動車、テレビ、ラジオなどである。カメラとけいなどの精密製品は評判がいい。日本人は手先が器用で、細かい仕事がじょうずである。

World ranking of major industries



Import-export balance



## Industry —2

Japan is led by the U.S.A. but ranks with the U.S.S.R. in industrial production. After World War II, light industry developed first and Japanese products were able to advance rapidly into world markets, supported by Japanese labor's diligent efforts and low wages. Since around 1960, the heavy and chemical industries have been the center of Japanese industry.

Superior technology also supports Japan's industry. Japanese shipbuilding and automobile engineering are especially well-known. Chemical and synthetic fibers are advanced too.

Trade is very important to Japan, which imports raw materials and processes them for export. Recently, exports have come to exceed imports, and it is necessary for Japan to strike a balance between the two.

The U.S.A. is Japan's biggest trading partner, accounting for about 1/3 of Japan's total trade. While cotton and wool used to be the main import items and cotton textiles and toys used to be the main exports, today petroleum and iron are the prime imports and the main exports are ships, automobiles, television sets, radios, etc. Precision products like cameras and watches are also highly regarded, as the Japanese are skillful with their hands and good at detailed work.

### 語句

- 1 seisan-daka amount of production
- 2 -daka = -take amount
- 3 kata shoulder
- 4 narabe-ru put side by side, arrange;
- 5 rank kata o narabe-ru rank with
- 6 sen'i fiber, textile
- 7 kei-kogyō light industry
- 8 seihin product cf. -sei
- 9 si o market
- 10 shinshutsu (Nv) advance, launch
- 9 omo-mi mainly
- 11 rōdō-sha laborer
- 11 kunben (Na) diligent
- 12 doryoku (Nv) efforts
- 13 tei-chūgin low wages
- 14 ni yor-u depend upon
- 15 jū kō gyō heavy industry
- 16 kakaku chemistry
- 17 sugureta (PreN) superior, excellent
- 18 -sugure-ru (excel)
- 18 giutsu techniques
- 19 sasae-ru support
- 20 zōsen shipbuilding
- 21 kakagu sen'i chemical fibers
- 22 goser sen'i synthetic fibers
- 22 goser (Nv) synthesize
- 23 ni totte for
- 24 bōkei foreign trade
- 25 kiwamete extremely
- 26 jūyō (Na) important
- 27 shigen resource
- 28 genryō raw material
- 29 kakō (Nv) processing, process
- 30 yushutsu (Nv) export
- 31 kakō-bōkei manufacturing trade
- 32 -gaku amount (finance) cf. -daka
- 33 bōranse 'balance'
- 34 bōranse o tor-u 'balance' (V)
- 34 hitsuyō (Na) necessary
- 35 aite-koku the other country (in a relation involving two countries)
- 36 shūma-ru occupy
- 37 izen before, the past
- 38 menka men cotton
- 39 yomō wool
- 40 men orimono cotton textile
- 40 orimono textile + or-u (weave)
- 41 omocha toy
- 42 konnichi today, nowadays
- 43 yushutsu-hn export product
- 43 -hin article, goods
- 44 seripaku ship, vessel
- 45 se-mitsu (Na) precision, fine
- 46 hyōban reputation
- 47 tesaki fingers
- 48 kiyō (Na) skillful, dextrous, handy
- 49 komaka small and fine; detailed

# 第 15 課

## ドライブ

TAPE  
No. 4  
S.Jr 2

① あさっての 日曜日、あなたは  
ひまか ありますか。

はい、あります、何て  
しょうか。

友だちの 車が あいています

から、ドライブに 行きたいと 思います。わたしは 日本  
の 運転免許が ありませんが、あなたは 持っていますか。

—はい、わたしは 去年 免許を 取りました。

では、日光へ いっしょに ドライブを しませんか。



■ いいですね。この 車は クーラー<sup>4</sup> ありますね。いち  
ばん 新しい 型ですね。この 型は デザインが よく  
て 馬力も ありますから、とても 人気<sup>8</sup> があります。  
よく 知っていますね。

—わたしは まだ 車が ありませんから、一台 買いた  
いと 思っています。

あまり 安いのは、故障する ことが ありますから、だめ

ですよ。

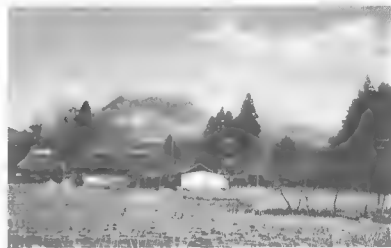
③ この 辺の 景色は すばらしいですね。

—わたしは この 近くまで 二、三回 用事で 来た こ  
とが あります。

わたしは 東京から 北の 方へ 来た ことが ありませ  
んから、何でも めずらしいです。

—向こうの 山が 赤城山<sup>16</sup>です。

そうですね。名まえを 聞いた ことが あります。



▲Mt Akagi

語句

- 1 doraibu (Nv) 'drive'
- 2 unten-menkyo driver's license  
menkyo license
- 3 Nikkō (a place name)
- 4 kōrā 'cooler', air conditioner

- 5 kata - katashi model, style, type
- 6 dezaio 'design'
- 7 bariki horsepower
- 8 ninki popularity  
ninki ga ar-u be popular

- 9 amari extremely, too
- 10 koshō (Nv) breakdown, being out of  
order
- 11 koto ga ar-u occasionally See § 69
- 12 keshiku view, scenery

- 13 ni-san-kai two or three times
- 14 -ta koto ga ar-u See § 69
- 15 nan demo anything, whatever
- 16 Akagi-san (name of a mountain)

## Dai 15-ka Doraibu

1 Asatte no Nichi yōbi, anata wa nima ga arimasu ka?

—Hai, arimasu ga, nan deshō ka?

Tomodachi no kuruma ga aite-imasu kara, *doraibu* ni ikitai to omoimasu. Watashi wa Nippon no unten-menkyo ga arimasen ga, anata wa motte-imasu ka?

—Hai, watashi wa kyo-nen menkyo o torimashita.

Dewa, Nikko e ssho-ni *doraibu* o shimasen ka?

2 Ii desu ne. Kono kuruma wa kura mo arimasu ne. Ichiban atarashi kata desu ne. Kono kata wa *dezin* ga yokute bariki mo arimasu kara, totemo ninki ga arimasu.

Yoku shitte-imasu ne.

—Watashi wa mada kuruma ga arimasen kara, ichi-dai kaitai to omotte-imasu.

Amari yasui no wa, koshō-suru koto ga arimasu kara, dame desu yo.

3 Kono hen no keshiki wa subarashi desu ne.

—Watashi wa kono chikaku made ni-san-kai yoji de kita koto ga arimasu.

Watashi wa Tōkyō kara kita no hō e kita koto ga arimasen kara, nan demo mezurashi desu.

Mukō no yama ga Akagi-san desu.

Sō desu ka. Namae o kita koto ga arimasu

## Lesson 15 A Drive

1 Are you free the day after tomorrow, Sunday?

—Yes, but what?

My friend's car is available, so I thought it would be nice to go for a drive.

I don't have a Japanese driver's license, but do you have one?

Yes, I got a license last year.

Then why don't we go for a drive to Nikko?

2 This is nice. This car even has air conditioning too, doesn't it?

It's the latest model. This is a very popular model since it is good looking and has lots of horsepower.

You know a lot about cars, don't you?

I don't have a car yet, but I want to buy one.

The very cheap ones break down, and so they're no good.

3 Isn't the scenery along here beautiful?

—I've been near here two or three times on business.

I've never been north of Tokyo before, so it's all new to me.

—That mountain over there is Mt. Akagi.

Is that so? I've heard the name.

### ANSWERS (pp. 184, 185)

1. 1. Q: hōmon-shita koto ga arimasu ka? A: Iie, ichi-do mo hōmon-shita koto ga arimasen.

2. Q: okureta koto ga arimasu ka? A: Hai, ichi-do dake okureta koto ga arimasu. 3. Q:

kita koto ga arimasu ka? A: Hai, nan-do mo kita koto ga arimasu. 4. Q: yonda koto

ga arimasu ka? A: Iie, mada yonda koto ga arimasen. 5. Q: itta koto ga arimasu ka?

A: Iie, ik-kai mo itta koto ga arimasen. 6. Q: atta koto ga arimasu ka? A: Hai, ni-do

dake atta koto ga arimasu. 7. Q: mita koto ga arimasu ka? A: Hai, ik-kai dake mita

koto ga arimasu. 8. Q: hanashita koto ga arimasu ka? A: Hai, san-do hodo hanashita

koto ga arimasu. 9. Q: kiita koto ga arimasu ka? A: Hai, nan-do mo kita koto ga

arimasu.

11. 1. omoidasimasu + omoidasu koto ga arimasu. 2. mimasu → miru koto ga arimasu. 3.

shimasu + suru koto ga arimasu. 4. kimasu + kuru koto ga arimasu. 5. kakemasu + kakeru.

koto ga arimasu.

111. Kono kaisha wa 1 heya ga yaku 300 arimasu. 2 ka gi shitsu ga oki desu. 3 setsubi

ga ii desu. 4 sha-in ga sukunai desu. 5 kinmu-jikan ga gozen 9-ji kara gogo 5 ji made

desu. 6 kyūryō ga ii desu.

IV. 1. Watashi wa atama ga itai desu. 2. Watashi no kaisha wa Yōroppa ni shi-ten ga

itsu-tsu arimasu. 3. Watashi wa Fuji-san ni nobotta koto ga arimasu ga, ima demo sono

utsukushii hi-no-de o omoidasu koto ga arimasu. 4. Anata wa Nippon-go de tegami o kaita

koto ga arimasu ka?

## § 68 Expressions of Possession

$N_1$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} wa \\ niwa \end{array} \right\}$	$N_2$	$ga$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} arimasu. \\ oi\ desu. \\ sukunai\ desu. \end{array} \right\}$	$N_1$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} has \\ has\ many/much \\ has\ few/little \end{array} \right\}$	$N_2$
-------	--	-------	------	---	-------	--	-------

e.g. Anata wa kyōdai ga arimasu ka? 'Do you have any brothers or sisters?'

—Hai, ani ga hito-ri to imōto ga futa-ri arimasu.

'Yes, I have one elder brother and two younger sisters.'

Kyōto wa o-tera ga ōi desu. Shikashi kōjō wa sukunai desu.

'Kyoto has many temples, but few factories.'

NB: This pattern looks almost like the pattern expressing existence or location introduced in § 12, but is different in several ways.

(1) This pattern expresses that somebody or something ( $N_1$ ) possesses something ( $N_2$ ), rather than 'there is something at a certain place.'  $N_1$  here may or may not be an N of place as in § 12; it can be a person or an abstract being.

(2) This pattern allows *arimasu* to be used for Animate N. Compare:

Anata wa oku-san ga arimasu ka? 'Do you have a wife? (= Are you married?)'

'Ima uchi ni oku-san ga arimasu ka? 'Is (your) wife at home now?'

Possession can be expressed by the Verbal Predicate '(...o) motte-imasu' (motte being the -te form of the verb motsu 'to hold'), which may be closer to the English 'have.' However, this expression is not commonly used in daily conversation, and is limited to instances in which  $N_2$  is an inanimate object.

e.g. Anata wa ima o-kane o ikura motte-imasu ka?

(= Anata wa ima o-kane ga ikura arimasu ka?)

'How much money do you have now?'

'Anata wa oku-san o motte-imasu ka?

## § 69 Expressions of Experience

$N_1$  wa ... V-ta koto ga arimasu. ' $N_1$  has had the experience of V-ing.'

e.g. Anata wa Hokkaidō e itta koto ga arimasu ka? —Iie, arimasen.

'Have you ever been to Hokkaido?' —'No, I have never been there.'

NB: If the Present form (*iku*, *taberu*, etc.) is used in this pattern in place of V-ta, it means 'It sometimes happens that...' or 'There are cases in which...'

e.g. Kono tokei wa (tokidoki) susumu koto ga arimasu.

'This watch sometimes runs fast'

## § 70 The 'Whole' and its 'Part'

When one selects something ( $N_1$ ) as the Topic, and then wants to make some comment on a part of  $N_1$  or something belonging to or closely related to  $N_1$  ( $N_2$ ) the following pattern is used. The Predicate is typically (but not necessarily) Adjectival.

$N_1$  wa  $N_2$  ga ....

e.g.

Meeri wa  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} me\ ga\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} ōkii\ desu. \\ aoi\ desu. \end{array} \right. \text{'As for Mary, her eyes are } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} large. \\ blue. \end{array} \right. \\ kami\ no\ ke\ ga\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} nagai\ desu. \\ kirei\ desu. \end{array} \right. \text{'Mary has } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} long\ hair. \\ beautiful\ hair. \end{array} \right. \\ o-tō-san\ ga\ byōki\ desu. \text{'Mary's father is ill.} \end{array} \right.$

Zō wa  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} hana\ ga\ nagai\ desu. \text{'As for elephants, their trunks are long.} \\ ashi\ ga\ futoi\ desu. \text{'Elephants have fat legs.} \end{array} \right.$

Kono machi wa kōgai ga hidoi desu. 'This town has awful pollution.'

Ano hito wa o-jii-san ga yūmei-na seiji-ka deshita.

'That person, his grandfather was a famous politician.'

Kono jidōsha wa katachi wa ii desu ga, enjin wa warui desu.

'This car looks nice, but the engine is no good.'

## I. Make dialogs as shown in the example

Ex. Q: (hikōki ni noru) Anata wa hikōki ni notta koto ga arimasu ka?

A: (ichi-do mo) Iie, ichi-do mo notta koto ga arimasen.

1. Q: (Nippon no katei o hōmon-suru) A: (ichi-do mo<sup>1</sup>)  
 2. Q: (kaigi ni okureru<sup>2</sup>) A: (ichi-do dake)  
 3. Q: (kimono o kiru) A: (nan-do mo)  
 4. Q: (Kawabata Yasunari<sup>3</sup> no shōsetsu o yomu) A: (mada)  
 5. Q: (Hokkaidō e iku) A: (ik-kai mo<sup>4</sup>)  
 6. Q: (sha-chō<sup>5</sup> ni au) A: (ni-do dake)  
 7. Q: (Kabuki<sup>6</sup> o miru) A: (ik-kai dake)  
 8. Q: (Nippon no sarari-man<sup>7</sup> to hanasu) A: (san-do hodo)  
 9. Q: (Nippon no dentō-ongaku<sup>8</sup> o kiku) A: (nan-do mo)

## II. Rewrite the sentences using ' . koto ga arimasu.'

Nagasaki<sup>9</sup> wa watashi no furusato<sup>10</sup> desu ga, 15(jū-go)-nen mae ni Tōkyō e dete-kimashita.<sup>11</sup> Ima wa watashi no kazoku wa dare mo imasen.

Ex. Ima demo tokidoki Nagasaki e ikimasu.

→ Ima demo Nagasaki e iku koto ga arimasu.

1. Ima demo tokidoki sono fūkei<sup>12</sup> o omoideashimasu.<sup>13</sup>  
 2. Ima demo tokidoki furusato no yume<sup>14</sup> o mimasu.  
 3. Ima demo tokidoki omoide-banashi<sup>15</sup> o shimasu.  
 4. Ima demo tokidoki tomodachi kara tegami ga kimasu.  
 5. Ima demo tokidoki tomodachi ni denwa o kakemasu.

## 語句

- 1 ichi-do mo nai never  
 2 okure-ru be delayed/late/slow  
 3 Kawabata Yasunari (a novelist and 1968 Nobel prize winner; 1899-1972)  
 4 ik-kai -ichi-do once  
 5 sha-chō president (of a company)  
 6 Kabuki (traditional Japanese drama)  
 7 sarari-man 'salaried man'  
 8 dentō-ongaku traditional music  
 9 Nagasaki (a place name in Kyushu)  
 10 furusato birthplace, home town  
 11 dete-kuru come out  
     -te-kuru and come; come .ing  
     See § 87  
 12 fūkei -keshiki landscape, scene  
 13 omoidas-u recall cf. omoide  
 14 yume dream  
     yume o mi-ru dream (V)

III. Read the following and then write about the company, using the ' . wa . ga' construction.

Watashi-tachi no kaisha wa furukute, taihen yūmei desu. Tatemono mo furukatta node kyo-nen atarashii biru ga dekimashita.<sup>16</sup> Naka wa taihen hirokute, heya ga yaku 300 arimasu. Ōki-na kaigi-shitsu<sup>17</sup> mo arimasu. Mata, atarashikute benri-na jimu-kikai<sup>18</sup> ya konpyūta<sup>19</sup> nado mo saikin hairi-mashita. Desukara, sha-in no kazu wa sukunai desu. Kinmu-jikan<sup>20</sup> wa gozen<sup>21</sup> 9 (ku) ji kara gogo 5 (go) ji made desu. Kyūryō ga ii node minna yoku hatarekimasu.



Ex. (tatemono) → Kono kaisha wa tatemono ga atarashii desu.

1. (heya) 4. (sha-in)  
 2. (kaigi-shitsu) 5. (kinmu-jikan)  
 3. (setsubi<sup>22</sup>) 6. (kyūryō)

## IV. Put the following into Japanese.

1. I have a headache.  
 2. My company has 5 branch offices in Europe.  
 3. I have climbed Mt. Fuji and I still sometimes recall the beautiful sunrise.<sup>23</sup>  
 4. Have you ever written a letter in Japanese?

- 15 omoide-banashi talking about the old days  
 -banashi -hanashi story  
 16 deki-ru be completed, come into existence  
 17 kaigi shitsu meeting/conference room  
 18 jimu-kikai office machine  
     jimu office work

- 19 konpyūta 'computer'  
 20 kinmu-jikan on-duty hours  
     kinmu (Ny) work, duty, service (office/company)  
 21 gozen in the morning, a.m. cf. gogo  
 22 setsubi equipment, facilities  
 23 hi-no-de sunrise

# ODOROKIMASHITA!

Nippon niwa shūkan-shi<sup>1</sup> ga takusan arimasu ne.

—E, zenkoku-teki<sup>2</sup>-na kibo<sup>3</sup> no

shūkan-shi dake de, sō...

nana-jus-shurui gurai arimasu.

Hō... Kore wa odorokimashita.<sup>4</sup>

Gekkan<sup>5</sup> no zasshi mo ōi desu ka?

—Totemo ōi desu.

Sōgō-zasshi<sup>6</sup> ya bungaku,<sup>7</sup> geijutsu<sup>8</sup> no zasshi, soreni shumi no zasshi, tatoeba,<sup>9</sup> gorufu, shashin, tsuri<sup>10</sup> no zasshi, ongaku no zasshi; ryokō no zasshi ni<sup>11</sup> jūtaku<sup>12</sup> zasshi; mikon<sup>13</sup> no jōsei muke<sup>14</sup> no zasshi ni, shufu<sup>15</sup> muke no zasshi; otoko no ko, onna no ko, sore-zore<sup>16</sup> no tame no zasshi....

Sorewa-sorewa<sup>17</sup> takusan arimasu yo.

Zenbu de sen-shurui ijō arimasu.

You have many weekly magazines in Japan, don't you?

—Yes, counting only national weeklies, well... there are about 70.

Oh, that's quite a surprise. Are there many monthly magazines too?

—There are lots.

There are very general magazines; literary and artistic magazines; and then magazines on various hobbies; for example, golf, photography, fishing, and music; magazines on travel and on housing; magazines for unmarried women and for housewives; magazines for boys and girls... Yes, there are a lot, really.

Altogether there are more than 1,000 of them.

語句

- 1 shūkan-shi weekly magazine
- 2 zenkoku-teki (Na) national
- 3 kibo scale, scope
- 4 odoroku be surprised
- 5 gekkan published monthly
- 6 sōgō-zasshi general magazine
- 7 sōgō general, all-round
- 8 bungaku literature
- 9 geijutsu art
- 10 tatoeba for example
- 11 tsuri fishing, angling
- 12 jūtaku (fish, angle, hang)
- 13 ni adding to
- 14 jūtaku house, residence

In general, the Japanese read a lot of books. Even in crowded trains everyone's always reading something.

That's quite a surprise.

Moreover, there are lots of big bookshops. I went to that bookstore in Shinjuku again yesterday, and I was really impressed at the selection they have.

—That bookstore is particularly well-known for its foreign book section. I'm majoring in architecture, but are there any bookstores specializing in engineering texts?

—I'm sure there are some in Kanda

- 13 mikon unmarried cf. kekkon (marriage)
- 14 muke= muki intended for
- 15 shufu housewife
- 16 sore-zore (N/Adv) each, respectively
- 17 sorewa-sorewa really, so much
- 18 ippan-ni in general
- 19 ippan general
- 20 nani ka something
- 21 hon-ya bookshop
- 22 shi and also
- 23 yōsho-bu foreign book section
- 24 yōsho books from Western countries
- 25 kōgaku-kankai on engineering
- 26 kōgaku engineering
- 27 kankai (Nv) relation

ippan-ni,<sup>18</sup> Nippon-jin wa

yoku hon o yomimasu ne.

Man'in no densha no naka demo

mina kanarazu nani ka<sup>19</sup> yonde-imasu ne.

Are niwa odorokimashita.

Soreni ōki-na hon-ya<sup>20</sup> ga takusan arimasu shi<sup>21</sup>....

Kinō mo Shinjuku no hon-ya ni ikimashita ga, nan demo sorotte-iru node kanshin-shimashita.

—Ano hon-ya wa tokuni yōsho-bu<sup>22</sup> ga yūmei desu.

Watashi wa senmon ga kenchiku desu ga, kōgaku-kankai<sup>23</sup> senmon no hon-ya mo arimasu ka?

—Kanda niwa kitto aru to omoimasu.





## 日本の 文字

日本の文字には 漢字と かなが あります。 かなには、 ひらがたと カタカナとが あります。 むかし、 日本には 文字が なかったので、 おとなりの 中国から 借りました。 古代の 中国は、 漢時代が 有名でしたので、 中国の 文字を 漢字、 中国の 文章を 漢文と いいます。 漢字は、 画数が 多いので、 書くときに 時間が かかりました。 そこで、 日本人は ひらがたと カタカナを つりました。 ひらがなの「あ」は 漢字の「安」を 簡単に した もので、 カタカナの「ア」は 漢字「阿」の 一部です。

日本の 文化は、 平安時代まで、 中国の 影響が 強く、 公式の 文章は すべて 漢文でした。

カタカナは 仏教の 僧侶たちが 経典を 読む ときに、 よみかたとして 使いました。 ひらがなは 女性か、 使いました。 男性も、 私用の文章では 使う こと ありました。

その 傾向は 現代日本でも、 文 体にも 残っています。

漢字には、 中国風の 読み方と 日本風の 読み方があります。

それを 音と 漢と いいますが、 わたしたちは その どちらをも 勉強する ことが 必要です。

安	あ	あ	阿
以	い	い	伊
宇	う	う	宇
衣	え	え	江
於	お	お	於

## Japanese Writing

Japanese writing uses both *kanji* and *kana*. *Kana* includes *hiragana* and *katakana*. A long time ago, there was no alphabet in Japan, so the characters for writing were borrowed from neighboring China. As ancient China was then ruled by the Han (Kan) Dynasty, the characters were called *kanji* and the writing *kanbun*.

Because *kanji* has many strokes, it takes a long time to write. Thus the Japanese created *hiragana* and *katakana*. The *hiragana* あ is a simplification of the *kanji* 安, and the *katakana* ア is part of the *kanji* 阿.

Until the Heian Period, Japanese culture was strongly influenced by the Chinese, and all official writings were in *kanbun*.

*Katakana* was used by Buddhist priests in reading their scriptures. *Hiragana* was used by women. Men also used it in their private writings. This pattern remains even in the present styles of writing Japanese.

*Kanji* has Chinese readings and Japanese readings. These are called *on* and *kun* readings, but we have to study both of them.

經國策卷第一  
臣聞天子之學書於書堂者  
若以所得先文書於  
人倫之欲窮理盡性  
文之助便越漢以來  
爲之助便越漢以來

### 語句

- 1 moji letter, script, characters
- 2 kana (Japanese letters)
- 3 kata-kana (Japanese letters)
- 4 kodai ancient times
- 5 Kan-jidai Han Period  
Kan Han Dynasty (China, 202 B.C.-  
220 A.D.) cf. kan-ji
- 6 bunshō sentence
- 7 kan-bun Chinese writing
- 8 kaku-sū the number of strokes  
-sū number
- 9 sokode therefore, so
- 10 ichi-bu one part
- 11 kōshiki formal, official
- 12 subete all
- 13 Bukkyō Buddhism
- 14 sōryō monk

- 15 kyōten Buddhist scriptures, sutra
- 16 yomi-gana *kana* used as phonetic symbols
- 17 dan-sei man, male
- 18 shiyō private use
- 19 gendai-Nippon-go modern Japanese  
gendai (N) modern (times)
- 20 buntai writing style
- 21 Chōgoku-fū Chinese style  
-fū style, taste
- 22 yomi kata how to read, reading  
kata how to
- 23 on (phonetic reading of a Chinese character)
- 24 kun (Japanese reading of a Chinese character)

# 第 16 課

## 老人問題

1 A1F  
2 4  
3 dr 2

- ① 近ごろ「恍惚の人」ということがよく使われます。これは老人という意味で言われています。もともとは小説の名まえです。この小説は有吉佐和子という作家によって書かれました。
- ② 日本には昔、まずい百姓のあいだに「うばすて」という風習がありました。まずしくて老人にご飯を食べさせることができないから、山に老人をすてに行かせました。これも「楳嶺節郎」という小説に書かれています。これは昔の話で、もちろん今ではこんなことはありません。
- ③ 日本は戦後大きな発展をしましたが、現在老人問題をはじめいろいろな問題が生まれています。そして大きな関心もたれています。それは社会保障制度の問題であると同時に、若者をもふくめてわたしたち

ち みんなの生きがいの問題でもあるからです。

- ④ わたしは「恍惚の人」を読んでいろいろと考えさせられました。わたしは友人にもこの小説を買って読ませたいと思っています。これからは若い人たちも自分の問題として老人問題を考えなければならないと思います。

### うばすての話

あるおばあさんがむすこにせおわれて山の  
中へすてられに行くとき、何度も木のえだを  
折って道にすてました。そのわけをむすこに  
たずねられて、おばあさんは「おまえが帰るとき  
の道しるべだ。」と言いました。そう言われて  
むすこはなみだを流し、またおばあさんをせ  
おって家へ帰りました。

#### 語句

- 1 kōkotsu no Hito (the title of a novel)  
kōkotsu ecstasy  
2 -are-ru See § 71  
3 rōjin old man/woman, the aged  
4 Ariyoshi Sawako (novelist; 1931- )  
5 ni yotte (Passive) by See § 71  
6 mazushī poor, humble  
7 hyakushū peasant, farmer  
8 no ada ni/de among  
9 uba-sute discarding old women  
-sute ←sute-ru (discard)  
10 fushū custom  
11 -sase-ru See § 72  
12 sute-ru throw away, dump, discard

- 13 -ase-ru =-sase-ru See § 72  
14 Narayama-bushi-kō (the title of a novel by Fukazawa Shichirō)  
15 hatten (Nv) development  
16 genzai (N/Adv) at present, present time  
17 rōjin-mondai problems of the aged  
mondai problem  
18 o hajime beginning with, especially  
19 umare-ru be born  
20 kanshin concern  
21 shakai-hoshō-seido social security system  
shakai society

- hoshō (N) security  
22 dōji the same time  
to dōji ni at the same time  
23 waka-mono young person  
waka ←waka-i (young)  
24 fukume-ru include  
25 iki-gai purpose in life, reason for living  
26 -rare-ru See § 71  
27 yūjin tomodachi friend  
28 kore kara wa from now on, hereafter  
29 aru (PreN) a certain  
30 (o-)bā-san old woman; grandmother

- 31 musuko son cf. musume (daughter)  
32 se-o-u carry on the back, be burdened with  
33 eda branch, twig  
34 or-u bend; break  
35 wake reason  
36 omae you (sing.) (Familiar or slightly derogatory;  
cf. omae-tachu (pl.))  
37 michi-shirube guidepost, milestone  
38 namida tears  
39 nagas-u (Vt) let flow  
namida o nagas-u shed tears

## Dai 16-ka Rōjin-mondai

1 Chika-goro 'Kōkotsu no Hito' to iu kotoba ga yoku tsukawaresu. Kore wa rōjin to iu imi de iwarete-imasu. Motomoto wa shōsetsu no namae desu. Kono shōsetsu wa Ariyoshi Sawako to iu sak-ka ni yotte kakare-mashita.

2 Nippon niwa mukashi, mazushii hyakushō no aida ni 'uba-sute' to iu fūshū ga arimashita. Mazushikute rōjin ni gohan o tabesaseru koto ga dekinai kara, yama ni rōjin o sute ni ikasemashita. Kore mo 'Narayama-bushi-kō' to iu shōsetsu ni kakarete-imasu. Kore wa mukashi no hanashi de, mochiron ima dewa konna koto wa arimasen.

3 Nippon wa sen-go ōki-na hatten o shimashita ga, genzai rōjin-mondai o hajime iroiro-na mondai ga umarete-imasu. Soshite ōki-na kanshin ga motarete-imasu. Sore wa shakai-hoshō-seido no mondai de aru to dōji ni, waka-mono o mo fukumete watashi-tachi minna no iki-gai no mondai demo aru kara desu.

4 Watashi wa 'Kōkotsu no Hito' o yonde iro-iro to kangaesaseremashita. Watashi wa yūjin nimo kono shōsetsu o katte yomasetai to omotte-imasu. Kore kara wa wakai hito-tachi mo jibun no mondai to shite rōjin-mondai o kangaenakereba naranai to omoimasu.

### Uba-sute no hanashi

Aru o-bā-san ga musuko ni se-owarete yama no naka e suterare ni iku toki, nan-do mo ki no eda o otte michi ni sutemashita. Sono wake o musuko ni tazunerarete, o-bā-san wa "Ōmae ga kaeru toki no michi-shirube da." to iimashita. Sō iwarete musuko wa namida o nagashi, mata o-bā-san o se-otte ie e kaerimashita.

## Lesson 16 Problems of the Aged

1 The term "*kokotsu no hito*" has recently come into wide-spread use. This is used to refer to the aged. Originally, it was the title of a novel. The novel was written by an authoress named Ariyoshi Sawako.

2 A long time ago in Japan, there was a custom of "*ubasute*" among impoverished farmers. Because they were too poor to feed their old people, they took them out and abandoned them in the mountains. This is described in the novel *Narayama-bushi-ko*. Yet this is an ancient story and such things are no longer done.

3 Although Japan has made great progress since the War, the present situation has given rise to the problem of the aged and a diversity of other problems. There is great concern over these issues. At the same time as this is a problem for the social security system, it is also a question of life values for all of us, including even the young.

4 Reading *Kokotsu no Hito* made me think about many things. I would like to buy this book for my friends to read too. I feel that young people must think about the problems of the aged as their own problems.

### A Story of Ubasute

Once when an old woman was being carried on her son's back into the mountains to be abandoned, she broke off branches from the trees and threw them on the path as they went. When her son asked her why she was doing this, she said, "So you won't get lost on the way home." When the son heard this, he began crying, picked up his mother again, and returned home with her on his back.

### ANSWERS pp. 196, 197

I. 1. Kono atarashii kyōka-sho wa Tōkyō no shuppan-sha kara hakkō-sarete-iru (sarete-imasu) 2. Kyō michi de watashi wa kurei-na onna no hito ni hanashi-kakareta. (hanashi-kakaretemashita) 3. Kare wa minna kara guchō ni arabareta. (arabaretemashita) 4. Kōgai-mondai wa ōku no kuni no gaku-sha ni yotte kenkyū-sarete-iru. (sarete-imasu) 5. Ono kodomo wa haka-oya ni shikarareta koto ga nai. (shikarareta koto ga arimasen) 6. Suppin-go wa yaku 20-ka-koku no hito-bito ni yotte hanasarete-iru. (hanasarete-imasu) 7. 'Genji Monogatari' wa Murasaki Shikibu to iu onna no hito ni yotte kakareta to ōku no gaku-sha ni iwarete-iru. (iwarete-imasu)

II. 1. Sensei wa watashi o yobumashita. 2. Watashi no kaban wa dare ka ni akareremashita 3. Kono hanashi wa mada dare nimo shirarete-imasen. 4. Sono dorobō wa dare ni tsukamaeremashita ka? 5. Sono ko-inu wa shinsetsu-na hito ni hirowaremashita

IV. 1. sanpo-sase 2. nomase 3. tabesase 4. yasumase 5. sase/yarase 6. nesase V. 1. Watashi wa kare ni 2-jikan mata(er)aremashita. (I was made to wait for him for 2 hours.) 2. Watashi wa mai-asa haka ni pan o kai ni ikas(er)aremasu. (I am made to go to buy bread every morning by my mother) 3. Sono gakusei wa sensei ni onaji koto o nan-do mo iwas(er)aremashita. (That student was made to say the same thing again and again)

VI. 1. Watashi wa imōto ni/o yūbin-kyoku e ikasemashita 2. Kono jisho wa Nippon de hiroku tsukawarete-imasu. 3. Dōzo watashi ni/o ikasete kudasei 4. Kono kaisha wa 1920-nen ni tateraremashita. 5. Kyo-nen yaku 200 man-bon no kasa ga kono kōjō de tsukurare-mashita ga, sono hanbun ga omo-ni Amerika ni yushutu-saremashita. 6. Watashi wa nomitaku arimasen deshita ga, fōmato-jusu o nomas(er)aremashita.

## § 71 Passive Construction

$$N_1 \text{ wa } N_2 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ni} \\ \text{ni yotte} \\ \text{kara} \end{array} \right\} V\text{-(r)are-ru.} \quad 'N_1 \text{ is V-ed by } N_2.'$$

e.g. Dorobō wa keikan ni tsukamae-rare-ta.

'thief' 'policeman' 'was caught'

'The thief was caught by the policeman.'

cf. Keikan ga dorobō o tsukamae-ta. 'The policeman caught the thief.'

NB: (1) This pattern indicates that  $N_1$  is affected by  $N_2$ 's action expressed by V.

(2) The Passive form of V is obtained by attaching the Auxiliary -are- or -rare- to the Stem of V, the former for 1st Group V (e.g. koros-u 'kill' → koros-are-ru; kak-u 'write' → kak-are-ru), and the latter for 2nd Group V (e.g. tabe-ru 'eat' → tabe-rare-ru; mi-ru 'see' → mi-rare-ru). Other Auxiliary elements such as masu, nai, etc. are carried over unchanged.

(3) The 'agent' (performer of the action) ( $N_2$  above) takes ni, ni yotte, or kara, depending upon the kind of V. Roughly speaking, ni is for the verbs expressing actions directly affecting an object, such as killing, pushing, breaking, chasing, etc.; kara for verbs expressing directed movement (kara showing origin), such as sending, giving, receiving, ordering, etc.; and ni yotte for most other verbs. However, when the agent is clear, Active sentences are more common than Passive sentences.

(4) In addition to this Passive construction, which is essentially the same as the passive construction in English, there is also a peculiarly Japanese passive which involves the intransitive verbs.

e.g. Watashi wa kinō kaeri ni ame ni furareta.

(literally 'I was rained on yesterday on my way home.')

Kanojo wa kodomo no toki chichi ni shinarete kurō-shimashita.

(literally 'She was died on by her father when she was a child and had a hard time.')

Such expressions are used when the subject suffered some loss or trouble because of an event, and hence this has been called the 'passive of suffering (or misfortune).' Although they look like the ordinary passive, they can not be converted into 'active' sentences.

## § 72 Causative Construction

$$N_1 \text{ wa ga } N_2 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{o} \\ \text{ni} \end{array} \right\} V \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-ase-} \\ \text{-sase-} \end{array} \right\} \text{ru.} \quad \begin{array}{l} 'N_1 \text{ makes (lets) } N_2 \text{ do} \\ 'N_1 \text{ causes } N_2 \text{ to do...}' \end{array}$$

e.g. Watashi wa otōto o Tōkyō e ik-ase-mashita.

'I made (let) my brother go to Tokyo.'

Kare wa kodomo ni gohan o tabe-sasete-imasu.

'He is letting the child eat.' (He is feeding the child.)

Watashi o ikasete-kudasai. 'Please let me go.'

NB: (1) The Causative form is obtained by attaching -ase- to the stems of 1st Group V and -sase- to 2nd Group V. Suru becomes saseru and kuru becomes kosaseru.

(2) The Object  $N_2$  takes ni when the V is transitive, and either ni or o when it is intransitive.

(3) The Causative is used only when  $N_2$  is lower than  $N_1$  in status or age, or it is inanimate. cf. -te-morau (See § 74)

(4) The Causative form may be combined with the Passive form  
e.g. Otōto wa chichi ni Tōkyō e ik-ase-rare-mashita (or, ik-asare-mashita)

'My brother was made to go to Tokyo by my father.'

The Passive form of the Causative form usually implies that the subject is forced to do something against his will.

## I. Rewrite the following in the Passive form, and then in the Polite style.

1. Tōkyō no shuppan-sha<sup>1</sup> ga kono atarashii kyōka-sho o hakkō<sup>2</sup>-shite-iru.
2. Kyō michi de kirei-na onna no hito ga watashi ni hanashi-kaketa.<sup>3</sup>
3. Minna ga kare o gichō<sup>4</sup> ni eranda.<sup>5</sup>
4. Ōku no kuni no gaku-sha<sup>6</sup> ga kōgai<sup>7</sup>-mondai o kenkyū-shite-iru.
5. Ano haha-oya<sup>8</sup> wa kodomo o shikatta<sup>9</sup> koto ga nai.
6. Yaku 20(ni-juk)-ka-koku<sup>10</sup> no hito-bito ga Supein-go o hanashite-iru.
7. Murasaki Shikibu<sup>11</sup> to iu onna no hito ga 'Genji Monogatari'<sup>12</sup> o kaita to ōku no gaku-sha ga itte-iru.

## II. Change the voice: (Active to Passive and Passive to Active)

1. Watashi wa sensei ni yobaremashita.<sup>13</sup>
2. Dare ka<sup>14</sup> ga watashi no kaban<sup>15</sup> o akemashita.
3. Dare mo mada kono hanashi o shitte-imasen.
4. Dare ga sono dorobō<sup>16</sup> o tsukamaemashita<sup>17</sup> ka?
5. Shinsetsu-na hito ga sono ko-inu<sup>18</sup> o hiroimashita.<sup>19</sup>

## III. Answer the following questions.

1. Anata no kuni dewa donna uta ga yoku utawarete-imasu ka?
2. Anata no kuni dewa dono shinbun ga ichiban ōku no hito ni yomarete-imasu ka?
3. Anata no kuni dewa donna mono ga yushutsu-sarete-imasu ka?

## 語句

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 shuppan-sha publisher (company)         | 8 haha-oya mother cf. chichi-oya (father)   |
| 2 hakkō (Nv) publication                  | 9 shikaru scold   |
| 3 hanashi-kake-ru speak to, address       | 10 -ka-koku (number of) countries   |
| 4 gichō chairman (of meeting, conference) | 11 Murasaki Shikibu (the authoress of <i>Genji Monogatari</i> ; 978-1036?)          |
| 5 erabu elect, choose, select             | 12 <i>Genji Monogatari The Tale of Genji</i> (the oldest novel in Japan, written by |
| 6 gaku-sha scholar                        |   |
| 7 kōgai environmental pollution           |   |

4. Anata no kuni dewa donna mono ga yunyū-sarete-imasu ka?
5. Anata no daigaku wa nan-nen gurai mae ni tateraremashita ka?

## IV. Fill in the blanks using the Causative forms

Watashi no kodomo wa karada ga yowai<sup>20</sup> node, mai-asa (1. <sup>take a walk</sup>) masu. Asa-gohan niwa gyūnyū<sup>21</sup> o (2. <sup>(drink)</sup>) te, yasai<sup>22</sup> to kudamono o takusan (3. <sup>eat</sup>) masu. Kodomo ga gakkō kara kaette kara wa, sukoshi (4. <sup>(take a rest)</sup>) te, sono ato de karui undō o (5. <sup>(do)</sup>)<sup>23</sup> masu. Yoru wa hayaku (6. <sup>go to bed</sup>) masu.



## V. Rewrite the following sentences in the Passive form and tell what they mean.

1. Kare wa watashi o 2-jikan matasemashita.
2. Haha wa mai-asa watashi ni ~~pon~~ o kai ni ikasemasu.
3. Sensei wa sono gakusei ni onaji koto o nan-do mo iwasemashita.

## VI. Put the following into Japanese.

1. I let my younger sister to go to the post office.
2. This dictionary is widely<sup>24</sup> used in Japan.
3. Please let me go.
4. This company was established in 1920.
5. About two million umbrellas were produced in this factory last year, and half of them were exported, mainly to the U.S.
6. I didn't want to, but I was forced to drink the tomato juice.

- |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|
| a court lady Murasaki Shikibu     |
| monogatari tale                   |
| 13 yob-u call, summon; invite     |
| 14 dare ka somebody, anybody      |
| 15 kaban bag, briefcase, suitcase |
| 16 dorobō thief, robber           |
| 17 tsukamae-ru catch hold of      |
| 18 ko-inu small dog, puppy        |

- |   |
|---|
| 19 hiro-u pick up cf. sute-ru             |
| 20 yowa-i weak                            |
| 21 gyūnyū (cow's) milk                    |
| 22 yasai vegetables                       |
| 23 sare-ru make (someone) do See § 72     |
| 24 hiroku widely, by many people ← hiro-i |

# KARĀ-TEREBI?

Kono terebi wa dezain ga totemo ii desu ne. Karā desu ka?

—Hai, saishin-gata<sup>1</sup> no kara-terebi desu.

Toranjisuta<sup>2</sup> desu kara  
denki-dai<sup>3</sup> ga sonna-ni kakarimasen.

Hito-tsu ikaga desu ka?

Hoshii desu nē....

Demo, takai deshō ne?

—Rōn<sup>4</sup> demo ii desu yo.

Kakari<sup>5</sup> no mono ni tetsuzuki-sase-mashō ka?

Ni-juk-kai-barai<sup>6</sup> de OK desu.

—Rei no<sup>7</sup> haijaku<sup>8</sup> no hannin<sup>9</sup> ga  
tsukamaeremashita ne.

Sō desu ka. Shinbun de hodo<sup>10</sup>-sare-mashita ka?

—Iie, saki-hodo<sup>11</sup> no rōjō no nyūsu<sup>12</sup> de  
hōsō<sup>13</sup>-saremashita.

Terebi o tsukete-goran<sup>14</sup>-nasai.

The design of this television is very good. Is it color?

—Yes, it is the newest model color TV. Since it is transistorized, your electricity bills are not so high.

Wouldn't you like to have one?

Yes, I would. .  
But it's probably expensive, isn't it?

—Loans are available. Shall I get our man in charge to fill out the forms for you? Twenty installments would be OK.

—That hijacker was caught, you know. Is that so? Was it reported in the newspaper?

—No, it was broadcast over the last radio news. Switch on the TV.

## 語句

- 1 saishin-gata the newest model
- saishin (N) the newest, the latest
- 2 toranjisuta 'transistor'
- 3 denki-dai electricity charges, power rates
- dai charge, fee
- 4 rōn 'loan,' easy payment plan
- 5 kakari (N) (a clerk) in charge
- 6 -kai-barai times installment, payments
- barai payment
- hara-u
- 7 rei no that in question
- 8 haijaku 'hijack'
- 9 hannin criminal

It's just time for the noon news, so this incident will certainly be broadcast.

\* \* \*  
My TV is out of order.  
—That's inconvenient, isn't it? Shall I have my younger brother fix it? His major is electrical engineering, and so he can easily fix it.

Oh, that would be very nice.

I'd really appreciate it. Can he fix it here, or shall I take it to your brother's place?

—No, my brother can come here. This is his summer vacation, so he's free now.

Chodo<sup>15</sup> ima o-hiru no nyūsu no jikan<sup>16</sup>  
desu kara, kitto kono jiken<sup>17</sup> no koto  
ga hoso-saremasu yo.

\* \* \*

Terebi, koshō na n desu.<sup>18</sup>

—Sore wa fu-ben desu ne.

Watashi no otōto ni naosasemashō<sup>19</sup>  
ka? Otōto wa denki-kogaku<sup>20</sup> ga sen-  
mon desu kara, kantan-ni shūri<sup>21</sup>-shi-  
masu yo.

Sore wa arigatai<sup>22</sup> desu ne.

Zehi o-negai-shitai desu.

Koko de shūri ga dekimasu ka,  
soretomo, kono terebi o otōto-san no  
o-taku e motte-ikasemashō<sup>23</sup> ka?

—Iya, otōto ni koko e kosasemasu.

Ima natsu-yasumi de, otōto wa hima  
desu kara.



- 10 hōdō (Nv) report (news)
- 11 saki hodo a while ago
- 12 nyūsu 'news'
- 13 hōsō (Nv) broadcast
- 14 -te goran-(nasai) Why don't you ?, Just do
- 15 chōdo just
- 16 no jikan time for
- 17 jiken incident, happen-  
ing, affair
- 18 n desu — no desu  
The fact is that See § 101
- 19 naos-u mend, fix
- 20 denki-kogaku electrical  
engineering
- 21 shūri (Nv) mend, fix
- 22 arigatai convenient,  
gracious, kind
- 23 motte-ik-u take, bring

## 日本の歴史—2

「大化の改新」では、土地の私有が許されなかった。これが「公地公作」の時代。この時代、土地はすべて国家の所有で、農民は国家に租税を納め、国家から土地を借りて耕作した。高貴の位の人々は、特別に土地が与えられた。また、八世紀の中期ごろ、新しく土地が開かれ、その土地の私有が許された。その結果、だんだん私有地がふえ、奈良時代から平安時代にかけて、土地制度は徐々にくずされていった。

藤原氏は 多くの 私有地を もち、中央政府の 高い 官職を 独占し、  
自分たちの むすめを 天皇と 結婚させた。そして その 皇后の 男の  
子を 天皇にし、政治を 自由に あやつった。

17 18 19  
 20 21 22 23  
 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100  
 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200  
 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300  
 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400  
 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500  
 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 600  
 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 700  
 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 800  
 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 900  
 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 1000

、<sup>37</sup>以後九州や瀬戸内海沿岸の<sup>38</sup>漁民は朝鮮<sup>39</sup>の<sup>40</sup>朝鮮<sup>41</sup>と<sup>42</sup>貿易をした。彼らは武装していたので、<sup>43</sup>おそれられた。

4方、ポルトガル<sup>4</sup>・スペイン<sup>4</sup>などから貿易船<sup>4</sup>が来て、鉄砲<sup>4</sup>やキ<sup>4</sup>ス  
 教<sup>4</sup>などが伝えられた。織田<sup>4</sup>信長<sup>4</sup>や豊臣<sup>4</sup>秀吉<sup>4</sup>はキス<sup>4</sup>教<sup>4</sup>を保護<sup>4</sup>  
 したが、徳川<sup>4</sup>幕府<sup>4</sup>はこれを禁止<sup>4</sup>した。それから開国<sup>4</sup>まで約<sup>4</sup>百年<sup>4</sup>  
 間、鎖国<sup>4</sup>政策<sup>4</sup>がとられる。この間わが国<sup>4</sup>の文化<sup>4</sup>は西欧<sup>4</sup>の<sup>4</sup>  
 明<sup>4</sup>からおくれるが、独自<sup>4</sup>の文化<sup>4</sup>が栄え<sup>4</sup>た。

The Taika reforms prohibited private ownership of land and instituted a system of public ownership. However, temples, shrines, and high-ranking people were allowed to own land, these regulations becoming still laxer as new land was opened later. As a result, private landholdings were gradually expanded and the restrictions on landownership fell into disuse in the Nara and Heian periods.

The Fujiwara family had extensive landholdings, monopolized official positions within the central government, and married its daughters into the Imperial family. They then installed those offspring as Emperor to gain a free hand. The non-Fujiwara's were officials in outlying districts, constituting a warrior class. First the Heike and then the Genji clans took control. In 1192, Minamoto no Yoritomo established the Kamakura Shogunate. The Muromachi Shogunate established in Kyoto in 1338 lasted into the 16th century.

After Mongol fleets attacking Japan in 1274 and 1281 had their fleets destroyed by "Divine Winds," Japanese journeyed to Korea and China for trade. Being armed, however, they were called "Wako" and were much feared. At the same time, traders from Portugal and Spain brought firearms and Christianity to Japan. Christianity was first protected by some lords, but it was banned by the Tokugawa Shogunate. During Japan's nearly 200 years of isolation, modernization lagged behind the West while a uniquely Japanese culture was developed.

隨句

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| tochi land, estate                       | 30 Mongoru 'Mongol'                    |
| 2 shi-yū private ownership               | 31 tai-gun large army/force            |
| 3 yurus-u allow, permit, forgive         | gun army, force, military              |
| 4 kōchi kōmin public-land-public-people  | 32 Kita-Kyūshū Northern Kyushu         |
| 5 kura rank, status                      | 33 seme-ru attack                      |
| 6 naka-goro around the middle (of...)    | 34 fune ship 35 shizum-u (Vi) sit      |
| 7 hirak-u (Vi/fo) cultivate, open        | 36 kami-kaze Divine Wind               |
| 8 shiyū-chi private land/estate          | 37 kore-go after this                  |
| 9 kara ni kakete from through/as far as  | 38 Seto-naikai Seto Inland Sea         |
| 10 jojo-ni gradually                     | 39 gyomin fisherman                    |
| 11 kuzus-u destroy, pull down            | 40 tariku continent                    |
| 12 kanshoku government post              | 41 busō (Nv) armament                  |
| 13 dokusen (Nv) monopolize               | 42 Wakō Japanese pirates               |
| 14 Kōgō Empress of Tennō (Emperor)       | 43 osore-ru fear, be afraid/frightened |
| 15 jiyū-ni freely, unrestrictedly        | 44 ip-pō one side; on the other hand   |
| 16 ayatsu-ru operate                     | 45 Forotoguru 'Portugal'               |
| 17 igai except                           | 46 -sen ship 47 teppe gun              |
| 18 bushi warrior, samurai                | 48 Kirisuto-kyō Christianity           |
| 19 kaikyū (social) class                 | 49 Oda Nobunaga (1534-82)              |
| 20 Heike the Taira family                | 50 Toyotomi Hideyoshi (1536-98)        |
| 21 Genji the Minamoto family             | 51 hogo (Nv) protection                |
| 22 -ru get, obtain                       | 52 Tokugawa (a family name)            |
| 23 kamamoto no Yoritomo (1147-99)        | 53 kinshi (Nv) prohibition             |
| 24 kamakura (a place name)               | 54 kaikoku 'opening of the country     |
| 25 Bakufu Japan's feudal government      | 55 sakoku national isolation (policy)  |
| 26 buke samurai family of bushi          | 56 seisaku policy                      |
| 27 Ashikaga shi the Ashikaga family      | 57 Seiō Western Europe                 |
| 28 Muromachi (a place name)              | 58 kindai modern age of genai          |
| 29 kono-kani during this time, meanwhile | 59 bunmei civilization of, bunka       |
|  | 60 dokujī (N) unquote, indigenous      |
|  | 61 sakae-ru flourish, thrive           |

# 第 17 課

## 銀 婚 式

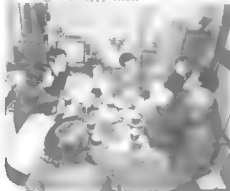
TAPP  
No. 5  
Side 1

① きょうは わたしたちの 両親の 銀婚式です。父と母  
が 結婚してから 二十五 たちました。わたしたち 子ど  
も 三人は 心から 両親を 祝ってあげたいと 思います。

② 弟と妹は 何か すばらしい おくり物を あげると 言っ  
ています。わたしは 旅行の 切符を あげたいと 思います。

③ 両親は 戦争の 直後、結婚しました。苦しい 生活の  
中で わたしたち 三人を よく じょうぶに 育ててくれまし  
た。また わたしを 大学にまで 行かせてくれました。両親  
の 青春時代は たいへんだったと よく 聞かされます。戦

▼ Sitting in a happy circle



語句

- 1 ryōshin both parents
- 2 ginkon-shiki silver wedding
- 3 kokoro kara heartily, from the bot-  
tom of one's heart
- 4 -te-age-ru See § 74
- 5 okuri mono gift, present

- 6 age-ru give See § 73
- 7 sensō (Nv) war
- 8 choku-go (N) immediately after
- 9 kurushi-i hard, trying, needy
- 10 seikatsu (Nv) living, daily life
- 11 sodate-ru (Vi) raise, bring up, grow

争で 十分に 勉強が できなかった、外国語なども 教えて  
もらわなかったと 言います。

\* \* \*

④ きょうの お祝い は とても 楽しかったです。子どもた  
ちから プレゼントを もらって、両親は たいへん 喜びま  
した。そして なみだぐんでいました。父は みんなに 記念  
の せんすを くれました。それから、みんなで いろいろな  
ことを 話したり、歌を 歌ったり しました。めずらしく  
母が ことを ひいてくれました。

⑤ 両親の 二十五 年の 結婚生活は たいへん 多くの こと  
を 教えてくれました。

▼ A Koto concert



- 12 -te-kure-ru See § 74
- 13 seishun jidan (one's) youthful days  
seishun youth
- 14 jūbun (Na/Adv) enough
- 15 -te-mora-u See § 74
- 16 presento 'present,' gift

- 17 mora-u receive, be given See § 73
- 18 namida-gum-u be tearful
- 19 sensu fan
- 20 kure-ru give See § 73
- 21 kekkon seikatsu married life



## Dai 17-ka Ginkon-shiki

1 Kyō wa watashi-tachi no ryōshin no ginkon-shiki desu. Chichi to haha ga kekkon shite kara ni-ju go nen tachimashita. Watashi tachi kodomo san-nin wa kokoro kara ryōshin o iwatte-agetai to omoimasu.

2 Otōto to imoto wa nani ka subarashii okuri mono o ageru to itte imasu. Watashi wa ryokō no kippu o agetai to omoimasu.

3 Ryōshin wa senso no choku-go ni kekkon shimashita. Kurushii seikatsu no naka de watashi-tachi san-nin o yoku jōbu-ni sodatete-kuremashita. Mata watashi o daigaku ni made ikasete kuremashita. Ryōshin no se shun-jidai wa taihen datta to yoku kikasaremasu. Sensō de jūbun-ni benkyō ga dekinakatta, gaikoku-go nado mo oshiete-morawanakatta to iimasu.

\* \* \*

4 Kyō no o-iwai wa totemo tanoshikatta desu. Kodomo-tachi kara *purazento* o moratte, ryōshin wa taihen yorokobimashita. Soshite namida gundemashita. Chichi wa minna ni kinen no sensu o kuremashita. Sore kara, minna de iroiro-na koto o hanashitari, uta o utattari shimashita. Mezurashiku haha ga koto o hite-kuremashita.

5 Ryōshin no ni-jū-go-nen no kekkon-seikatsu wa taihen ōku no koto o oshiete-kuremashita.



## Lesson 17 Silver Wedding Anniversary

1 Today is our parents' silver wedding anniversary. It is twenty-five years since my father and mother were married. We three children would heartily like to congratulate them.

2 My younger brother and younger sister say they are going to give them a wonderful present. I think I will give them a travel coupon.

3 My parents were married right after the War. Even though life was hard, they did a good job of bringing the three of us up healthy. They even sent me to college. I have often heard how difficult things were when they were young. Because of the War, people could not study enough. And it is said that foreign languages were not taught at school.

\* \* \*

4 The celebration today was great fun. Our parents were very happy to get presents from their children. They were moved to tears. My father gave all of us commemorative fans. Then we all talked, and sang, and had a good time. Mother even played the *koto* for us.

5 Our parents' twenty-five years of married life has really taught us a lot.

17

ANSWERS pp.208, 209.

I. 1. age, age, age 2. kure, moratta 3. kure 4. age, kure  
5. kure, kure, age, morat, kure, morai, age

II. (a) Watashi wa tomodachi ni tanjō-bi no *pari* ni kite-moraimashita. (b) Tomodachi wa watashi ni iroiro-na *purazento* o kuremashita. (c) Tomodachi wa watashi no *imōto* ni *kekure* o tsukutte-moraimashita. (d) Watashi wa tomodachi no hito-ri ni *piano* o hite-moraimashita. (e) Watashi-tachi wa hana ni oishu gochisō o tsukutte-moraimashita.

III. 1. Watashi wa kanojo kara kire-na *Kurumasu-kado* o (okutte-)moraimashita. (Kanojo wa watashi ni o (okutte-)kuremashita.) 2. "Kare wa anata ni kippu o kuremashita ka?" "Iie, kuremasen deshita." ("Anata wa kare kara moraimashita ka?" "Iie, moraimasen deshita.") 3. Kodomo ni michi o oshiete-moraimashita (Kodomo ga oshiete kuremashita.) 4. Sensei ga isha o yonde-kudasaimashita (Sensei ni yonde-itadakimashita.) 5. Kyō wa jisho o ni-satsu motte-imasu kara, kore o kashite-agemasu.

## § 73 Verbs of Giving and Receiving

In Japanese, the verbs expressing giving and receiving depend upon WHO gives to WHOM. Thus, for example, the English verb 'to give' takes entirely different Japanese verbs in the following.

a. I gave the teacher a pen.

b. The teacher gave me a pen.

a'. Watashi wa sensei ni pen o agemashita. (<age-ru)

b'. Sensei wa watashi ni pen o kuremashita. (<kure-ru)

Furthermore, an English sentence such as *b* can be converted into.

c. I was given a pen by the teacher. (=I got a pen from the teacher.)

Japanese has still another verb **mora(w)-u** which corresponds to the passive form of the English 'give.'

c'. Watashi wa sensei ni/kara pen o moraimashita.

The decisive factors in the choice of verbs are the grammatical 'persons' (first, second, or third person) of the giver and the recipient.

The verb **age-ru** is chosen when:

'I/we give something to you/him/her.' (1→2, 3); 'You give to him/her.' (2→3) or; 'He/she gives to him/her.' (3→3)

The verb **mora(w)-u** is chosen when.

'I/we receive from you/him/her.' (1←2, 3); 'You receive from him/her.' (2←3) or; 'He/she receives from him/her.' (3←3)

The verb **kure-ru** is chosen when:

'You/he/she give to me/us.' (2, 3→1) or, 'He/she gives to you.' (3→2)

These three verbs also have their 'honorific' counterparts which are used to express special respect for the person involved in the relation. **Sashiageru**, instead of *ageru*, is used when the recipient is notably superior to the giver in age and/or status. **itadaku**, instead of *mora(w)u*, when the giver is superior to

the recipient; and **kudasaru**, instead of *kureru*, when the giver is obviously superior to the recipient

The uses of these Verbs of giving may be pictured as follows:

A: X ga Y ni N o {agemasu.  
sashiagemasu.

'X gives N to Y.'



B: X ga Y {ni  
kara} N o {moraimasu.  
itadakimasu.

'X {is given  
receives} N {by  
from} Y.'



C: Y ga X ni N o {kuremasu.  
kudasaimasu.

'Y gives N to X.'



## § 74 Expressions of Benefactive Acts—Giving and Receiving Acts

Doing something for the benefit of someone else is regarded in Japanese as essentially the same as giving a thing to someone. Thus the Verbs expressing giving and receiving are attached (as auxiliaries) to the 'te form' of the Verb expressing the action. The uses of such Compound Verbs follow the same rules as in § 73

A: X ga Y ni (...o) V-te-agemasu. 'X does for Y.'

e.g. Watashi wa Tarō ni Ei-go o oshiete-agemashita.

B: X ga Y ni (...o) V-te-moraimasu. 'X has Y do. (for X).'

e.g. Watashi wa Tarō ni Nippon-go o oshiete-moraimashita.

C: Y ga X ni (...o) V-te-kuremasu. 'Y does for X.'

e.g. Tarō ga watashi ni Nippon-go o oshiete-kuremashita.

I Fill in the blanks with 'ageru,' 'morau,' or 'kureru.'

- Mai-toshi<sup>1</sup> watashi wa kazoku no tanjō-bi<sup>2</sup> ni okuri-mono o shimasu. Kotoshi wa chichi ni *sewa*<sup>3</sup> o ( ) mashita shi, haha niwa kutsu o ( ) mashita. Ane niwa hon o katte-( ) mashita.
- Watashi ga daigaku ni hatta toki, chichi ga watashi ni 1-man-en ( ) mashita. Watashi wa ima made<sup>4</sup> sonna-ni takusan no o-kozukai<sup>5</sup> o ( ) koto ga arimasen deshita kara, totemo ureshikatta<sup>6</sup> desu.
- Kono aida watashi-tachi no Nippon-go no sensei ga kyōshitu de Nippon no uta o utatte-( ) mashita.
- Watashi wa kinō Yamada-san ni o-kane o kashite<sup>7</sup>-( ) mashita ga, mada kare wa kaeshite<sup>8</sup>-( ) masen.
- Sumisu-san wa Kanada-jin de, Furansu-go to Ei-go ga dekimasu. Nippon ni kite kara han-toshi<sup>9</sup> desu ga, mada Nippon-go ga jōzu dewa arimasen. Kono aida Sumisu-san ga "Nippon-go o oshiete-( ) masen ka?" to watashi ni tanomimashita.<sup>10</sup> Watashi wa "Hai, ii desu. Sono kawari<sup>11</sup> ni watashi ni Furansu-go o oshiete-( ) masen ka?" to iimashita. Sumisu-san wa "ii desu yo," to itte-( ) mashita node, ima watashi wa Sumisu-san ni Nippon-go o oshiete-( ) te, sono kawari ni Furansu-go o oshiete-( ) te-imasu. Sumisu-san wa tokidoki Kanada no kirei-na kitte o watashi ni ( ) masu. Kyō mo watashi wa kirei-na hana no kitte o kare ni ( ) mashita. Desukara, kondo no Kurisumasu<sup>12</sup> ni watashi wa nani ka Nippon no mono o kare ni ( ) tai to omotte-imasu.

## 語句

- mai-toshi every year, yearly
- tanjō-bi birthday
- sewa (Nv) birth
- zeta 'sweater'

- ima made until now, before
- kozukai pocket money, allowance
- ureshi-i happy, glad
- kas-u lend cf. kari-ru (borrow)

II. Read the following and rewrite the underlined sentences to begin with the designated words.

Kinō wa watashi no tanjō-bi deshita. Tomodachi ga tanjō-bi no pāti ni kite-kuremashita. <sup>(a)</sup> Watashi wa tomodachi ni iroi-ro-na purezento o morai- <sup>(b)</sup> mashita. Watashi no imōto wa tomo- <sup>(c)</sup> dachi ni kakuteru<sup>13</sup> o tsukutte-agemashita. Tomodachi no hito-ri ga watashi ni piano <sup>(d)</sup> o hiite-kuremashita. Watashi-tachi wa minna de utattari odottari shimashita. Ban-gohan ni haha ga watashi-tachi ni <sup>(e)</sup> oishii gochisō o tsukutte-kuremashita.



- Watashi wa
- Tomodachi wa
- Tomodachi wa
- Watashi wa
- Watashi-tachi wa

III. Put the following into Japanese.

- I received a beautiful Christmas card<sup>14</sup> from her.
- "Did he give you the ticket?" "No, he didn't."
- I had a child show me the way.
- The teacher called a doctor for me.
- I have two dictionaries with me today I will lend this one to you.

- kaes-u return
- han toshi half a year
- tanom-u ask, request, ask a favor of
- sono kawari (ni) instead of that

- Kurisumasu 'Christmas'
- kakuteru 'cocktail'
- kado 'card'

## KIREI DESU NĒ!

Pati no kai-jō<sup>1</sup> ga wakaranai no desu<sup>2</sup> ga,  
do shimasho?

—Watashi mo hakkiri<sup>3</sup> wakarimasen ga,  
daijobu desu yo. Yamada-san fusai<sup>4</sup>  
ga kuruma de tsurete-itte-kuremasu  
kara.

Sore wa arigatai desu ga,  
wazawaza<sup>5</sup> koko made kite-morau no wa  
kinodoku<sup>6</sup> desu nē.

—Ii desu yo. Futa-ri wa *doraibu* ga  
suki na n desu. Soreni, kono aida anata  
ga Kyōto o annai-shite-ageta desho?  
Sono o-rei<sup>7</sup> no tsumori<sup>8</sup> desho kara,  
mā<sup>9</sup> ii desu yo.

So desu ka...? Sorejā, tsurete-itte-  
moraimasho.

—Yamada-san wa go-ji goro ni watashi  
no uchi ni yotte<sup>10</sup> kuremasu kara, yo-  
ji-han goro oku-san to issho-ni kite-  
kudasai.

I don't know where the  
party is. What can I do?

—I'm not sure myself,  
but it's all right. Mr.  
and Mrs. Yamada will  
take us by car.

That's very good of them,  
but I'm sorry that they  
have to come all this way  
for us.

—That's all right. They  
both like to drive. Any-  
way, you showed them  
around Kyoto the other  
day, didn't you? May-  
be they mean to repay  
you. Anyway, it's okay.

Really? Then, let's go  
with them.

—Mr Yamada will drop  
over to my house around  
five, so please come with  
your wife at about four-  
thirty.

## 語句

- 1 kai-jō meeting place,  
site
- 2 no desu → n desu
- 3 hakkiri (to) clearly, dis-  
tinctly
- 4 fusai Mr. and Mrs
- 5 wazawaza (Adv) going  
out of one's way (to do  
something)
- 6 kinodoku (Na) sorry,  
sad, pitiful
- 7 (o-)rei thanks, gratitude
- 8 tsumori intention,  
motive See § 77
- 9 mā perhaps, well
- 10 yor-u drop in, stop over
- 11 uketsuke reception

—Please get a rose from  
the receptionist, and put  
it at the pocket of your  
suit

Yours is a white rose,  
since you are a special  
guest.

Will they make me give  
a speech at the party? I'm  
not good at making speeches.

Since it is an informal  
group, you don't need to  
worry about it.

Now it's starting.

That person in the grey  
suit is Mr Tanaka.

I'll introduce you later.

The girl in the beauti-  
ful kimono next to him  
is Tanaka's daughter.

How beautiful!

—Certainly is. The colors  
on the kimono are gor-  
geous.

No, no, I meant the young  
lady.

office, desk) ← uketsuke-  
ru (accept/take up)

12 sutsu 'suit'

13 poketto 'pocket'

14 sas-u stick, pierce,  
prick, stab

15 supichi 'speech'

16 kiraku (Na) easygoing,  
carefree

17 nakama company, party,  
colleague, comrade

18 ki ni suru worry about,  
be concerned over

19 gure 'grey'

20 o-jō-san young lady/  
girl, daughter (Polite)

Uketsuke<sup>11</sup> de bara no hana o  
moratte-kudasai. Sore o sutsu<sup>12</sup> no  
poketto<sup>13</sup> ni sashite<sup>14</sup> kudasai. Anata  
wa shiroi bara desu;

tokubetsu no o-yaku-sama desu kara.

Pati de supichi<sup>15</sup> o saseraremasu ka?  
Watashi wa supichi ga nigate na n desu  
ga...

—Iya, kiraku<sup>16</sup> na nakama<sup>17</sup> desu kara, sō  
ki ni shinakute<sup>18</sup> ii desu yo.

Sā, hajimarimasu yo.

Ano gure<sup>19</sup> no sutsu no hito ga  
Tanaka-san desu.

Ato de shōkai-shite-agemashō.

Sono tonari no kirei-na kimono no  
onna no hito wa Tanaka-san no o-  
jō-san<sup>20</sup> desu.

Kirei desu nē!

—Kirei deshō. Ii iro no kimono desu.

Iya, iya, o-jō-san ga kirei da to itta no  
desu!

# 日本人

ジャパニーズ・スマイル<sup>1</sup>という ことばが ある。日本人は、よく わけのわからない<sup>3</sup> わらい<sup>4</sup>を すると いわれる。外国人は うす気味悪く<sup>5</sup> 悪い、これについて 悪口<sup>6</sup>を 言うが、それは 日本人の 気質<sup>7</sup>を 知らないからである。

日本人は 昔から よい、悪いという 判断<sup>8</sup>を 直接に はっきりと 言う ことを 避ける。相手の 立場<sup>9</sup>を 考えて、その人を 傷つける ことを おそれるからである。

日本人は いつも 相手の 立場<sup>10</sup>を 考えて、ものを 言う。自分の 答え<sup>11</sup>が 肯定の ときは、'Yes'、否定の ときは、'No' である。自分の 答え<sup>12</sup>が、日本語の「はい」や「いいえ」は 相手の 問い方<sup>13</sup>を 重んじる。たとえば、「行きませんか。」と 聞かれた ときは、「はい、行きます。」とか「いいえ、行きます。」と 答える。行かない ことを 相手が 予想<sup>14</sup>して 聞いていると 考えるからである。

人に 物を あげる ときでも、「つまらない 物ですが」と 言う。人を よんで ごちそうする ときも「何も ありません」と 言う。理論的には「つまらない 物を もらっても しかたがない」、「ない 物は 食べられない」と 考えられる。しかし、日本人は 自分で 自分の 物を「よい物」<sup>15</sup>とか「りっぱな 物」<sup>16</sup>などとは 言わない。それは 自分の 考え方<sup>17</sup>を 相手に おしつける ことを 避けたいからである。

日本人の 表現は このように いつも 複雑な 日本人の 心理を 反映している。

## The Japanese

The Japanese are said to have an inscrutable grin dubbed "the Japanese smile". Uneasy in its presence, foreigners speak ill of this smile, but such criticism simply shows their lack of understanding.

The Japanese people have long avoided making direct and explicit judgments of good or bad. Instead, care is taken to consider the other person's position and not to hurt his feelings, and this has become an ingrained habit. Although English uses "yes" when the respondent's answer is affirmative and "no" when it is negative, the Japanese "hai" and "he" depend upon the phrasing of the question. Thus "Don't you want to go?" is answered with "Yes, I don't" or "No, I do." in accordance with the asker's assumption that the person does not want to go.

Even giving someone something is accompanied by the disclaimer that "It's a mere trifle." Although it would not make sense to be giving out mere trifles, the Japanese hesitates to praise his gift to someone, this out of reluctance to impose a value judgment upon the recipient. In such ways does Japanese speech reflect the Japanese psychology.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 japonizu 'Japanese'                                     | 15 kôter (Nv) affirmation                                   |
| 2 sumairi 'smile'   | 16 hitei (Nv) negation                                      |
| 3 wake no wakaranai inscrutable, impossible to understand | 17 toi kata how it is asked<br>toi ←to-u (Inquire, ask)     |
| 4 warai laughter ←wara-u                                  | 18 omonyū-ru make much of, attach importance to             |
| 5 usu-kimi-warui; weird, eerie                            | 19 yosō (Nv) expectation, forecast                          |
| 6 waru kuchi slander, abuse, "bad mouth"                  | 20 riron-teki (Na) theoretical, logical                     |
| 7 kishitsu disposition                                    | 21 riron theory, logics                                     |
| 8 chokusetsu (N/Adv) direct                               | 21 jibun de by oneself cf. hiton de (for/by oneself)        |
| 9 sake-ru avoid   | 22 kangae-kata way of thinking, how one thinks about things |
| 10 tachiba standpoint, point of view, position            | 23 oshitsuke-ru press, force                                |
| 11 kizu-tsuke-ru injure                                   | 24 hyōgen (Nv) expression                                   |
| 12 osore-ru be afraid; worry                              | 25 shinri state of mind, psychology                         |
| 13 mono o i-u say something                               | 26 han'ei (Nv) reflect                                      |
| 14 kotae (N) answer ←kotae-ru                             |   |

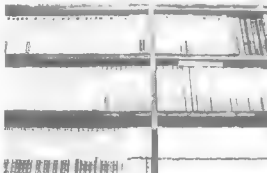
# 第 18 課

## 論文を書く

TABLE  
5-1

① ある新聞社が「日本人 および 日本文化」というタイトルで論文を募集しています。わたしは日本の伝統文化に興味をもっていますから、論文を書こうと思います。題は「日本の伝統文化と現代」にしようと思います。たいへんむずかしい問題ですが、以前から一度まとめてみようと思っていました。さっそく資料を整理したり、図書館へ行ったりして、勉強しようと思っています。外国人の日本についての研究書ももっと読もうと考えています。

② わたしの友人のスミスさんは貿易の仕事をしていますが、「日本人の外国観」という題で論文を書くつ



### 語句

- 1 shinbun sha newspaper company
- 2 oyobi and (Formal)
- 3 Nippon bunka Japanese culture
- 4 tairu 'title'
- 5 ronbun thesis, essay
- 6 boshu (Nv) inviting people to apply, recruiting
- 7 dento bunka traditional culture

- 8 kyōmu interest, concern
- 9 ar See § 75
- 10 dai title
- 11 yō See § 75
- 12 izen (N) before
- 13 ichi-do (N/Adv) once
- 14 matome-ru (VI) arrange; complete
- 15 -te-mir-u do and see See § 89

もりだと 言っています。彼は、いつか二人でいろいろ話し合おう、また図書館へも行こうと言っています。

③ 先日 アメリカの友人から手紙が来ました。その中で彼は、「わたしは論文を書くつもりです。日本の映画について考えてみるつもりです。」と書いています。わたしは外国人の「日本映画論」はとてもおもしろいと思いました。わたしは、おたがいによい論文を書きましょうと返事を出しました。



- 16 seiri (Nv) put things in order, (re-) arrange
- 17 kenkyu sho research papers/book
- 18 -kan view of.
- 19 tsumori intention See § 77
- 20 itsu ka some time, someday
- 21 hanashi a-u talk with each other, discuss

- a-u do something together with somebody else
- 22 sen-jitsu the other day
- 23 -ron theory/discussion on/of
- 24 (o-)tagai-ni each other, mutually
- 25 henji (Nv) answer, reply (to a letter), response

## Dai 18-ka Ronbun o Kaku

1 Aru shinbun-sha ga "Nippon-jin oyobi Nippon-bunka" to iu *taitoru* de ronbun o boshū-shite-imasu. Watashi wa Nippon no dento-bunka ni kyōmi o motte-imasu kara, ronbun o kakō to omoimasu. Dai wa "Nippon no dentō-bunka to gendai" ni shiyō to omoimasu. Taihen muzukashii mondaï desu ga, izen kara ichi-do matomete-miyō to omotte-imashita. Sassoku shiryō o seiri-shitari, tosho-kan e ittari shite, benkyō-shiyō to omotte-imasu. Gaikoku-jin no Nippon ni tsuite no kenkyū-sho mo motto yomō to kangaete-imasu.

2 Watashi no yūjin no *Sumisu*-san wa bōeki no shigoto o shite-imasu ga, "Nippon-jin no gaikoku-kan" to iu dai de ronbun o kaku tsumori da to itte-imasu. Kare wa, itsu ka futa-ri de iroi-ro hanashi-aō, mata tosho-kan e mo ikō to itte-imasu.

3 Sen-jitsu *Ameriko* no yūjin kara tegami ga kimashita. Sono naka de kare wa, "Watashi wa ronbun o kaku tsumori desu. Nippon no eiga ni tsuite kangaete-miru tsumori desu." to kaite-imasu. Watashi wa gaikoku-jin no "Nippon-eiga-ron" wa totemo omoshiroi to omoimashita. Watashi wa, o-tagai-ni yoi ronbun o kakimashō to henji o dashimashita.



▲Movie theaters in Shinjuku

## Lesson 18 Writing an Essay

1 One of the newspapers is soliciting essays on "The Japanese People and Japanese Culture." Since I am interested in traditional Japanese culture, I think I will write an essay. I think I will call it "Japan's Traditional Culture and the Present." It is a very difficult topic, but I have been wanting to organize my thoughts on this for some time. I think I will start studying it right away, organizing my material, going to the library, and otherwise working on it. I also want to read more of what foreign researchers have written about Japan.

2 A friend of mine named Smith, who is working for a trading company, says he plans to write an essay on "Japanese Views of Foreign Lands." He says we should get together some day to have a long talk and go to the library.

3 A letter came from my American friend the other day. In it, he wrote, "I intend to write an essay. I plan to give some thought to Japanese films." I think a foreigner's views on Japanese films would be very interesting. I wrote back with the hope that we both write good essays.



### ANSWERS pp 220, 221 >

- I. 1. kikimashō/kikō 2. ikimashō/ikō 3. haraimashō/harāō 4. machimashō/matō 5. mimashō/miyō 6. sōji-shimashō/sōji shiyō 7. kimashō/koyō 8. kumemashō/kimeyō  
II. 1. shiyō 2. aō 3. tabeyō 4. narō 5. kaō  
IV. 1. A: iku tsumori desu B: ikanai tsumori desu 2. A: hanasu B: hanasanai 3. A: kuru B: konai 4. A: yameru B. yamenai 5. A. shūshoku-suru B: shushoku shinai  
V. 1. benkyō suru 2. mi ni ikimashō 3. shiyō 4. ikō 5. tsurete iku  
VI. 1. Rai getsu kara jūdōsha no unten o narau/narai-hajimeru tsumori desu ( narāō/narai-hajimeyō to omoimasu. ) 2. Kare ni riyū o setsumei suru tsumori deshita ga, wasuremashita 3. Mō ichi-nen Nippon ni iru tsumori desu. ( iyō to omoimasu )

## § 75 Expressions of Will or Intent (1)

The speaker can express his will or intent, or ask the will or intent of the listener, simply by using the Present form of Verbs, affirmative or negative.

- e.g. Anata wa ikimasu ka? 'Will you go?' 'Are you going?'  
 —Hai, ikimasu. 'Yes, I will go.' 'Yes, I am going.'  
 —Iie, ikimasen. 'No, I won't go.' 'No, I am not going.'

Will or intent can also be expressed by the 'Volitional form' of Verbs: *ik-ō*, *nom-ō*, *nor-ō* (1st Group); *tabe-yō*, *mi-yō* (2nd Group); and *shiyō*, *koyō* (Irregular). All take the *-mashō* form in the Polite style.

- e.g. Mado o akemashō/akeyō ka? 'Shall I open the window?'  
 (The speaker is asking the will or desire of the listener about an action to be taken by the speaker.)

Ashita Kyōto e ikimashō/ikō. 'Let's go to Kyoto tomorrow.'

(The speaker is proposing or suggesting to the listener that they do something together)

Sā, mō neyō (ka). 'Well, I may as well go to bed.'

(The speaker is talking to himself.)

## § 76 Expressions of Will or Intent (2)

(Watashi wa) V(Volitional form) to omoimasu/omotte-imasu.

'I think I will do.'; 'I am thinking of doing.'

- e.g. (Watashi wa) kaisha o yameyō to omoimasu.

'I think I'll quit my company.'

(Watashi wa) rai-nen kuni e kaerō to omotte-imasu.

'I am thinking of going back to my country next year.'

NB: The difference between *omoimasu* and *omotte-imasu* is that *omoimasu* indicates the speaker's thoughts at the moment of speech, whereas *omotte-imasu* indicates that he has had that idea or intention over a longer span of time, including the time of speech. The subject of both these Present form Verbs is assumed to be the speaker himself, even if it is not mentioned. The Past form can take a third-person subject.

## § 77 Expressions of Will or Intent (3)

(Watashi wa) V(Dict. form) tsumori desu. 'I intend to do.'

- e.g. Watashi wa bengoshi ni naru tsumori desu.

'I am going to be (intend to be) a lawyer.'

Watashi wa ano toki kaisha o yameru tsumori deshita.

'At that time I intended to quit the company.'

## § 78 Expressions of Will or Intent—Summary and Comparison

All the patterns introduced here are concerned primarily with the will or intent of the speaker (or the listener in a question). The Present forms and the Volitional forms express the will or intent of the speaker directly and subjectively, while those patterns introduced in § 76 and § 77 express it as a fact and with a more objective attitude. Thus to express past will (of anybody), it is necessary to use the patterns in § 76 and § 77.

In order to express the will or intent of a third person, such forms as '... to itte-imasu' ('he says that. '), '... rashii desu' ('it seems that. '), and so on must be added. (See § 63, § 112)

- e.g. Yamada-san wa kuni e kaeru tsumori da to itte-imasu.

'Mr. Yamada says that he intends to go back home.'



## I. Practice the pattern using the key phrases below

Ex. (shinbun o yomu) Shinbun o yomimashō/yomō.

1. (nyūsu o kiku)
2. (kissa-ten e iku)
3. (o-kane o harau)
4. (tomodachi o matsu)
5. (eiga o miru)
6. (theya o sōji-suru)
7. (mō ichi-do kuru)
8. (ryōkō no sukejūru<sup>1</sup> o kimeru<sup>2</sup>)

## II. Make dialogs as shown in the example

Ex. Q: (kondo no Nichi-yōbi) (doko e iku) Anata wa kondo no Nichi-yōbi  
doko e ikō to omotte-imasu ka?

A: (yama) Yama e ikō to omotte-imasu.

1. Q: (kyō ie e kaette kara) (nani o suru) A: (tenisu)
2. Q: (ashita) (dare ni au) A: (tomodachi)
3. Q: (kon-ban<sup>3</sup>) (nani o taberu) A: (o-sushi)
4. Q: (shōrai<sup>4</sup>) (nani ni naru) A: (seiji-ka<sup>5</sup>)
5. Q: (bōnasu<sup>6</sup> de nani o kau) A: (sufereo)

## III. Make dialogs using 'tsumori' with the key phrases in II

Ex. Q: Anata wa kondo no Nichi-yōbi doko e iku tsumori desu ka?

A: Yama e iku tsumori desu.

## 語句

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 sukejūru 'schedule'                        | 6 bōnasu 'bonus'   |
| 2 kime-ru (Vi) decide cf. kamar-u (Vi)       | 7 yame-ru stop ing; quit   |
| 3 kon-ban tonight, this evening              | 8 ichi-nichi-ju all day long   |
| 4 shōrai (N/Adv) in the future, time to come | 9 ukiyo-e (a kind of "floating-world" art developed in the Edo Period) |
| 5 seiji-ka politician, statesman             | 10 tenran-kai exhibition   |

## IV. Practice the pattern using the key phrases below.

Ex. (piano o kaimasu) A: Watashi wa piano o kau tsumori desu.

B: Watashi wa piano o kawanai tsumori desu.

1. (ano daigaku ni ikimasu)
2. (kare ni hanashimasu)
3. (ashita daigaku e kimasu)
4. (Nippon-go no benkyō o yamemasu<sup>7</sup>)
5. (ano kaisha ni shūshoku-shimasu)

## V. Fill in the blanks

Kinō no Nichi-yōbi, watashi wa ichi-nichi-jū<sup>8</sup> (1. <sup>study</sup>) tsumori deshita ga, asa tomodachi kara denwa ga atte, "Bijutsu-kan de ukiyo-e<sup>9</sup> no tenran-kai<sup>10</sup> ga arimasu kara (2. <sup>let's go to see</sup>)" to saso-waremashita.<sup>11</sup> Watashi mo ukiyo-e ga dai-suki<sup>12</sup> desu kara, benkyō wa yoru ni (3. <sup>will do</sup>) to omotte, tomodachi to issho-ni dekakemashita. Shikashi, hito ga ippai de hairu koto ga deki-masen deshita. Tsugi no Nichi-yōbi niwa asa hayaku (4. <sup>will go</sup>) to omoimasu. Imōto mo (5. <sup>take</sup>) tsumori desu.



## VI. Put the following into Japanese.

1. I think I will start learning to drive next month<sup>13</sup>
2. I intended to have explained the reason<sup>14</sup> to him, but I forgot.
3. I am thinking of staying in Japan for one more<sup>15</sup> year.

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| 11 saso-u invite, call for, tempt                                    | 15 mō more                |
| 12 dai-suki (Na) like very much cf. dai-kirai (hate)                 | mō ichi-nen one more year |
| 13 rai getsu next month cf. rai-shū (next week), rai nen (next year) |                           |
| 14 riyū reason   |                           |

## HIKKOSU TSUMORI

Rippa-na o-uchi desu ne. Niwa mo hiroi shi, heya mo ôkute benri da shi, ii desu ne.

—Ni-nen mae ni tateta n desu ga ne.

Chotto komatta koto ga arimashite ne?<sup>1</sup>....

Dô shita n desu ka?

—Iya, kôgai desu yo. Kinjo<sup>3</sup> ni kôjô ga dekimashite ne. Kemuri<sup>4</sup> yara<sup>5</sup> sôon<sup>6</sup> yara de, nayamasareru<sup>7</sup> n desu yo.

Sore wa ikemasen nê.... Sekkaku<sup>8</sup> ii o-uchi o tateta noni,<sup>9</sup> zannen desu ne.

—Ê, sorede, ima hikkosô<sup>10</sup> to omotte-iru no desu. Kono ie wa, zannen nagara,<sup>11</sup> uru tsumori desu.

Shikashi, kôgai de kôjo o uttaeru<sup>12</sup> koto ga dekimasen ka?

—Sô shiyo to omotte, kinjo no hitotachi to sodan<sup>13</sup>-shita no desu ga,

Lovely house, isn't it?  
The yard is big, and it's convenient with so many rooms. How nice!

I built it two years ago, but we've been having some trouble.

What's the trouble?

—Well, it's pollution. A factory has been built in the neighborhood and we're annoyed by the smoke and noise.

That's terrible. After you built such a lovely house, that's too bad.

—Yes, so I'm thinking of moving. I hate to do it, but I'm going to sell this house

But can't you file a suit against the factory over the pollution?

—I thought of that and talked it over with the

neighbors, but it appears to be a rather difficult problem

Is that so? And where are you going to move to?

—I think I'll live in a really quiet neighborhood this time. Fortunately I found a good apartment

I'm glad you did

—Yes. It faces south and has a park right in front of it. It's on the second floor of a five-story apartment building. I like it very much. I'm going to move in next month. Please come and see us there

Thank you.

nakanaka<sup>14</sup> muzukashii mondai deshite ne....

So desu ka. Sorede, doko e hikkosu tsumori desu ka?

—Kondo wa hontô-ni shizuka-na tokoro ni sumô to omotte-iru n desu yo. Saiwai, ii *manshon*<sup>15</sup> ga arimashite ne.

Sore wa yokatta desu ne.

—Ê, minami-muki<sup>16</sup> de chôdo ie no mae ga kôen desu. Go-kai-date<sup>17</sup> no ni-kai de, totemo ki ni itte<sup>18</sup>-iru n desu. Rai-getsu hikkosu tsumori desu. Ichido zehi asobi<sup>19</sup> ni kite-kudasai.

Arigatô gozaimasu.

## 語句

- 1 komatta koto trouble, difficulty
- 2 -te ne, you know
- 3 kinjo neighborhood
- 4 kemuri smoke
- 5 yara ya for example and
- 6 sôon noise
- 7 nayamas-u afflict, annoy cf. nayam-u (be vexed)
- 8 sekkaku noni with much trouble/effort (in vain)
- 9 noni in spite of the fact that
- 10 hikkos-u move (to a different house,
- 11 zannen nagara While it seems a shame/regret

- 12 uttae-ru file a suit, complain, appeal to
- 13 sodan (Nv) consultation
- 14 nakanaka (+A) rather, quite  
cf. nakanaka p. 154: 6
- 15 *manshon* 'mansion' (expensive apartment)
- 16 minami muki (N) facing south  
muki facing; suitable for
- 17 -kai-date -story
- 18 ki ni ir-u catch one's fancy, be in one's favor
- 19 asobi (N) play, pastime  
+asob-u



## Japanese Literature—1

The oldest Japanese literary works are said to be the anonymous poems handed down orally and finally recorded in the *Kojiki* and *Nihonshoki*

*Manyōshū* was produced in mid-eighth century, by which time there were already Japanese anthologies of Chinese poetry.

While all aspects of Japanese culture was "Sino-ized" in the ninth century and native customs fell into eclipse, Japanese traditions were soon revived and *Kokinshu* was compiled in 905.

The legends in *Kojiki*, *Nihonshoki*, *Fudoki*, and others are folk tales, giving rise to stories such as *Taketori-Monogatari*. There were also long stories created to explain poems, of which *Ise-Monogatari* is typical.

*Genji-Monogatari* was influenced by both types. Although one of the world's oldest great works of literature, having been written early in the eleventh century, this was at first thought of as a story for women and children.

*Tosa-Nikki*, written even before *Genji-Monogatari*, also uses *kana* script. While it begins "Men are writing things called diaries, and I think I too will keep one even though a woman," the author, Tsurayuki, was actually a man trying to write from a female perspective using the "feminine" *kana*.

## 日本の文学—1

日本の文学作品中で、いちばん古い作品は「古事記」や「日本書紀」の中の歌です。この時代には、特定の作者もなく、人々の口から口へ伝えられたと言われています。

はっせいの なか さんようしゅう  
八世紀の 中ごろ、「万葉集」が できま

▼From *Kozuki*

「あ、このころ、まだ日本人による音楽集は、なかったし、」

「日本では、日本の政治、文化、経済、風土、風情にならなくて、民族精神、時代精神、個性がなくて、」

氣天機授於吾會，生民是  
 賴。伏以鳳凰來而致神機，  
 今偏於帝室，通衢擊壤，  
 誰士瞻瞻，是文豈不同素。  
 今以碑立於於石，院飛馬  
 天望，卽世萬紀，元光帝威  
 水而和水土，天時未許，  
 星運生民，度此北一師，常

すいぶんカ9      ふっかつ10      ねん      こきんしゅう11  
 粋文化が      復活して      905年に      「古今集」ができました。

り伝えられ、「竹取物語」などの物語が生まれました。

また、歌の<sup>うた</sup>説明<sup>せつめい</sup>から<sup>なが</sup>長い<sup>ものめたり</sup>物語<sup>ものがたり</sup>が<sup>う</sup>生まれました。その<sup>せいひょう</sup>代表<sup>だいひょう</sup>が「伊<sup>い</sup>勢<sup>せい</sup>物語<sup>ものがたり</sup>」です。

有名な「源氏物語」は、何百の物語に受け継がれています。『源氏物語』は十一世紀の初めに書かれました。世界最古のすばらしい文学作品の一つですが、当時は女子どもの読み物と思われていました。

「源氏物語」より 古い 「土佐日記」も かなで 書かれています。この  
「土佐日記」の 初めに、男が 日記という ものを 書いている。女の  
わたしも 書いてみよう。」と 言っています。作者の 貫之<sup>22</sup>は 男でした  
が、女の 立場で 日記を 書く つもりでした。かな文学は <sup>23</sup>このように <sup>24</sup>  
当時は 女性の 文学でした。

語句 一

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 bungaku-sakuhin literary works  | times)  |
| 2 sakuhin a piece of work   | 13 katar-tsutae-ru hand down orally                       |
| 3 Nihon-shoki ("history" book compiled in 720)  | from generation to generation                             |
| 4 tokutei no specific   | 14 Taketori Monogatari (the title of a romance,           |
| 5 sakusha author, artist  | 15 daihyō (Nv) represent; representative                  |
| 6 Manyō-shū (the oldest anthology of Japanese poems, compiled in the 8th century) -shū collection | 16 Ise Monogatari (the title of a romance)                |
| 7 sude ni--mō already (Formal)  | 17 seishitsu nature, temper, character                    |
| 8 Kanshū-shū anthology of Chinese poems   | 18 uke-tsug-u inherit                                     |
| 9 Kokufu-ankoku-jidai the Dark age of nationalism   | 19 sekai sai-ko the oldest in the world sai-ko the oldest |
| 10 kokusui bunka nationalistic culture  | 20 yomi-mono reading matter, things to read               |
| 11 fukukatsu (Nv) revival   | 21 Tosa Nikki (the title of a diary)                      |
| 12 Kokin-shū (anthology of Japanese poems compiled in the 10th century)                           | 22 Tsura-yuki (?-945)                                     |
| 13 Fudo-ki (local documents of ancient  | 23 kana-bungaku literature written in hiragana,           |
|   | 24 kono yō-ni in this way, like this                      |

# 第 19 課

## 彼の こと

TAPE  
No. 5  
Side 2

① 彼は 来るでしょうか。

——わかりませんね。来ないかもしれません。<sup>2</sup> この間から  
青い 顔をして、よく つかれたと 言っていました。  
どこか からだが 悪いのでしょうか。病気が かもしれません  
ね。

——そうかもしれません。しかし あ の ようすでは ほか  
に 何か なやみが あるにちがいありません。<sup>7</sup>

② そうですね。近ごろの 彼  
は ようすが 少し おかし  
いですね。よく お酒を 飲  
んだり、夜 おそく 帰った  
りしています。きっと 何か  
が あったにちがいありませ  
ん。

——仕事の ことでしょうか。  
それとも 失恋したのか  
もしれません。何か  
言っていましたか。



③ いいえ。彼は もともと 明るい 元気の 青年です。

その うち きっと 元気の 顔を 見せるでしょう。

——わたしも そうだろうと 思います。しかし 一度 ゆっ  
くり 話し合った ほうが いいですね。一度 彼の  
所へ いっしょに 行ってみましょう。

④ それは いいかもしれませんね。きっと 喜ぶでしょう。

早い ほうが いいですね。あすは どうですか。

——いいです。それでは わたしが 彼に 連絡します。



### 語句

1 deshō See §79

2 kamo shirenai it may be that,  
See §80

3 doko ka somewhere

4 yōsu (N) appearance, state of affairs

5 hoka (N) other

6 nayami trouble, worry

7 ni chigai na: it is certain that ;  
it must be See §81

8 okashi: strange; funny

9 shitsuren (Nv) lost love, broken  
heart

10 akaru: bright, light; cheerful

11 seinen young man

12 sono uchi before long

13 mise-ru (Vi) show, let see

14 darō (Plain style of deshō)

See §79

15 tokoro place

16 renraku (Nv) contact, get in touch

## Dai 19-ka Kare no Koto

### 1 Kare wa kuru deshō ka?

—Wakarimasen ne. Konai kamo shiremasen. Kono aida kara aoi kao o shite, yoku tsukareta to itte-imashita.

Doko ka karada ga warui no deshō ka? Byōki kamo shiremasen ne.

—Sō kamo shiremasen. Shikashi ano yōsu dewa hoka ni nani ka nani yami ga aru ni chigai arimasen.

### 2 Sō desu ne. Chika-goro no kare wa yōsu ga sukoshi okashii desu ne.

Yoku o-sake o nondari, yoru osoku kaettari shite-imasu. Kitto nani ka ga atta ni chigai arimasen.

—Shigoto no koto deshō ka? Soretomo shitsuren-shita no kamo shiremasen. Nani ka itte-imashita ka?

### 3 Iie. Kare wa motomoto akarui genki-na seinen desu. Sono uchi kitto genki-na kao o miseru deshō.

—Watashi mo sō darō to omoimasu. Shikashi ichi-do yukkuri hanashi-atta hō ga ii desu ne. Ichi-do kare no tokoro e issho-ni itte-mima-shō.

### 4 Sore wa ii kamo shiremasen ne. Kitto yorokobu deshō. Hayai hō ga ii desu ne. Asu wa dō desu ka?

—Ii desu. Soredewa watashi ga kare ni renraku-shimasu.



▲A back street in Shinjuku

## Lesson 19 A Friend

### 1 I wonder if he will come.

—Who knows? Maybe not. He has looked pale for a while and talks of being tired a lot.

Maybe there is something wrong with him. Maybe he is sick.

—Maybe. But the way he was, I am sure it is something else, that something is troubling him.

### 2 You are right. He has been a little strange lately. He has been drinking a lot and staying out late at night. There must be something wrong.

—I wonder if it could be his work. Or maybe he has fallen out of love. Has he said anything to you?

### 3 No. He has always been a bright and cheerful lad. In time, his face will regain its cheerfulness.

—I think so too. But still, maybe it would be best to sit down and have a long talk with him. Shall we go to his place sometime?

### 4 Maybe that would be a good idea. It would surely cheer him up. The sooner the better. How about tomorrow?

—Fine. I will tell him we are coming.

### ANSWERS pp. 232, 233

I. A. desu, desu B. desu, deshō C. kuru deshō D. ryokō shinai desho

II. 1. (She will go to the sea tomorrow.) 2. (She will likely go to the sea tomorrow.)

3. (It may be that she will go to the sea tomorrow.) 4. (She will surely go to the sea tomorrow.)

III. 1. ugokanai 2. omoi 3. benri 4. yunyū-hin

IV. 1. noboru 2. iku 3. ikanai 4. ōi 5. miru 6. subarashii 7. samui 8. motte-ikō

V. 1. Kare wa kan-ji o yomu koto ga dekimasen kara, kono hon ga wakaranai kamo shiremasen. 2. Kare wa Nippon-go de tegami o kaku koto ga dekimasu. Sukunakutomo ichi-nen (wa) benkyō shita ni chigai arimasen.

## § 79 Expressions of Guessing (1)

The Present forms of Predicates may be used to express the speaker's opinion about what will happen in the future.

e.g. Ashita wa ame desu. 'It will rain tomorrow.'

Tarō wa kyō kimasu. 'Taro will come today.'

When the speaker is less sure, however, the Auxiliary form **-desho** (**darō** in the Plain style) is added to the Present or Past forms of the Predicates. In the case of 'N/Na/A+desu,' **deshō** replaces **desu**.

N/Na	} <b>deshō.</b>	'I guess....' 'Probably.'
A (present or past)		
V (present or past)		

- e.g. Ashita wa ame deshō. 'I guess it will rain tomorrow.'  
 Ashita wa atsui deshō. 'It will probably be hot tomorrow.'  
 Tarō wa kyō kuru deshō. 'Taro will probably come today.'  
 Hanako wa konai deshō. 'I guess Hanako won't come.'  
 Tarō wa mō kaetta deshō. 'I guess Taro has gone home already.'

Adverbs such as **tabun** and **osoraku**, meaning 'maybe' and 'probably,' often occur with the 'deshō form.'

## § 80 Expressions of Guessing (2)

When the speaker is still less sure, or when he thinks that there is only a slight possibility, the form **-kamo shiremasen shirenai** is used instead of **deshō**.

e.g. Ashita wa ame kamo shiremasen.

'It might rain tomorrow.' 'It might happen that it rains tomorrow.'

Tarō wa kita kamo shiremasen. 'It is possible that Taro came.'

When the sentence ends with **-kamo shiremasen**, adverbs such as **hyotto**

**suru to** or **moshi ka suru to** often precede the Predicate to indicate that the speaker is uncertain about what he is going to state.

e.g. Hyotto suru to ashita wa ame kamo shiremasen

'It just might rain tomorrow.'

Tarō wa moshi ka suru to kyō konai kamo shiremasen.

'It just might be Taro does not come today.'

## § 81 Expressions of Guessing (3)

On the other hand, if the speaker wants to emphasize that he is quite sure about what he is saying, he may add **-ni chigai arimasen/nai**

e.g. Ashita wa ame ni chigai arimasen.

'It will rain tomorrow for sure.'

Tarō wa kuru ni chigai arimasen.

'Taro will certainly come.'

The adverb **kitto** is very often used with such Predicates.

e.g. Ashita wa kitto ame ni chigai arimasen.

'I am sure it will rain tomorrow no doubt.'

Kare wa kitto sensei ni chigai arimasen.

'There is no doubt about it that he is a teacher.'

These adverbs, **kitto**, **tabun**, **osoraku**, **hyotto suru to**, and so on, are called 'Modal Adverbs,' because they are in agreement with the speaker's mental attitude. They help the listener to anticipate what the speaker is going to say, which is always expressed by the final form of the sentence.

## I. Complete the sentences using 'desu' or 'deshō'.

- A. { Kinō wa Getsu-yōbi deshita.  
Kyō wa Ka-yōbi  
Ashita wa Sui-yōbi
- B. { Kinō wa ame deshita.  
Kyō wa kumori<sup>1</sup>  
Ashita wa tabun hare
- C. { Kare wa kinō daigaku e kimashita.  
Ashita mo tabun daigaku e
- D. { Kare wa kyo-nen no natsu ichi-do mo ryokō-shimasen deshita.  
Kotoshi mo tabun

## II. Compare the following sentences.

1. Kanojo wa ashita umi e ikimasu.  
2. Kanojo wa ashita umi e iku deshō.  
3. Kanojo wa ashita umi e iku kamo shiremasen.  
4. Kanojo wa ashita umi e iku ni chigai arimasen.

## III. Substitute the key words for the underlined parts

Ex. (operated by hand) A: Kono kikai wa te<sup>2</sup> de ugoku kamo shiremasen.B: Kono kikai wa te de ugoku ni chigai arimasen.

## 語句

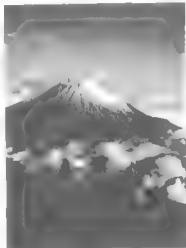
- 1 kumori cloudy weather ←kumori-u  
(get cloudy)  
2 te hand, arm  
3 ren-kyū consecutive holidays

- 4 anu elder brother of one (elder sister), otōto (younger brother), imōto (younger sister)  
5 kaze o hik-u catch cold

1. (doesn't work)  
2. (heavy)  
3. (convenient)  
4. (imported article)

## IV. Fill in the blanks.

Ashita to asatte wa ren-kyū<sup>3</sup> desu kara, watashi wa ani<sup>4</sup> to Fuji-san ni (1. <sup>time</sup> ) tsumori desu. Chichi mo watashi-tachi to issho-ni (2. <sup>go</sup> ) kamo shiremasen. Haha mo yama ga suki desu ga, ima kaze o hiite<sup>5</sup>-imasu kara, tabun (3. <sup>not go</sup> ) deshō. Ima wa daigaku mo natsu-yasumi-chū<sup>6</sup> desu kara, doko demo gakusei-tachi ga (4. <sup>will</sup> ) to omoimasu. Watashi-tachi wa Fuji-san no chōjō<sup>7</sup> de asa-hi<sup>8</sup> o (5. <sup>see</sup> ) tsumori desu. Sono nagame<sup>9</sup> wa kitto (6. <sup>wonderful</sup> ) ni chigai arimasen. Fuji-san no chōjō niwa mada yuki ga atte, (7. <sup>cold</sup> ) kamo shiremasen kara, sētō o (8. <sup>will bring</sup> ) to omoimasu.



## V. Put the following into Japanese

1. As he cannot read *kanji*, he might not understand this book  
2. He can write a letter in Japanese. He must have studied Japanese for at least<sup>10</sup> a year

- 6 -chū (N/Adv) during ; in the midst of ..  
7 chōjō summit  
8 asa-hi morning sun, rising sun

- 9 nagame view ←nagame-ru (look around)  
10 sukunakutomo at least

## DOZO KOCHIRA E

Uketsuke wa kochira desho ka?

—Hai, sō desu.

Kokusai<sup>1</sup>-bu no Maeda<sup>2</sup>-san ni aitai no desu ga.

—Maeda bu-chō<sup>3</sup> de gozaimasu<sup>4</sup> ne.

Shitsurei desu ga, o-kyaku-sama wa nan to osshaimasu<sup>5</sup> ka?

Igirisu no Bureau desu. Yamada-san no shōkai desu ga, bu-chō-san wa go-zonji<sup>6</sup> nai kamo shiremasen.

—Renraku-shite-mimasu. Shibaraku soko ni o-kake ni natte o-machi-kudasai.

(Denwa ni) Kochira uketsuke desu ga, Maeda bu-chō oraremasu<sup>7</sup> ka? Bureau-san to iu kata<sup>8</sup> ga miete<sup>9</sup>-imasu.

O-toshi<sup>10</sup>-shimashō ka?...

Hai, shochi<sup>11</sup>-shimashita.

O-matase-shimashita. Bu-cho wa ma-

Is this the reception desk?

Yes, it is.

I'd like to see Mr. Maeda of the International Division.

—Do you mean Division Chief Maeda? Excuse me, but may I have your name, please?

I'm Mr. Brown from England. I have an introduction from Mr. Yamada, but I don't think Mr. Maeda knows me. I'll contact him.

Please be seated for a minute (on the phone)

This is the reception desk. Is Mr. Maeda there? A Mr. Brown is here to see you. Shall I send him up? Yes, sir I'm sorry to have kept you waiting Mr. Maeda

## 語句

- 1 kokusai- international
- 2 Maeda (a family name)
- 3 bu-chō department chief
- 4 de gozaimasu (very Polite form of desu)
- 5 ossharu (Honorific form of i-ru)
- 6 go-zonji (N) being informed of; acquainted with
- 7 orare-ru (Honorific form of i-ru)
- 8 kata -hito (Polite)
- 9 miete-ru (Honorific form of kuru, i-ru)
- 10 tōs-u let pass, show in (visitor)
- 11 shōchi (Nv) understand know, agree
- 12 ma-mo naku soon, presently
- 13 te-mairimas-u (Humble

will be down shortly. Will you wait in that room, please? Oh, no, I'm sorry. Some people may be using that room. Let me show you to another room. This way, please.

Thank you. Being a receptionist seems to be a busy job, isn't it?

—Well, I don't know. But it is an important job and we all do our best. This room, please. I'll bring you a cup of tea soon.

Thanks.

form of -te-kuru)

14 ōsetsu-shitsu drawing/reception room

15 Shitsurei-shimashita (Cph. used in apologizing)

16 shiyō chū (N) be occupied, be in use shiyō (Nv) use

17 betsu (N) something else, different

18 -mōshiagemasu (Humble form of suru)

19 watashi domo we (Humble)

20 isshō kenmei with all one's might

21 or-u -i-ru See § 37

22 sugu(-ni) (Adv) soon, immediately

23 o-mochi suru (Polite form of motte-ku/-kuru)

mo-naku<sup>12</sup> orite-mairimasu.<sup>13</sup>

Soko no ōsetsu-shitsu<sup>14</sup> de o-machikudasai. Iya, shitsurei-shimashita,<sup>15</sup>

soko wa ima shiyō-chū<sup>16</sup> kamo shiremasen. Betsu<sup>17</sup> no o-heya ni go-annai-moshiagemasu.<sup>18</sup> Dōzo kochira e.

Arigatō. Uketsuke no o-shigoto wa isogashii deshō ne?

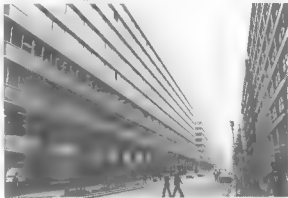
—Ē, mā.... Demo, taisetsu-na shigoto desu kara, watashi-domo<sup>19</sup> isshō kenmei<sup>20</sup> yatte-orimasu.<sup>21</sup>

Kono heya desu. Dōzo.

Sugu-ni<sup>22</sup> o-cha o o-mochi-shimasu.<sup>23</sup>

Dōmo.

▼Office buildings in Tokyo





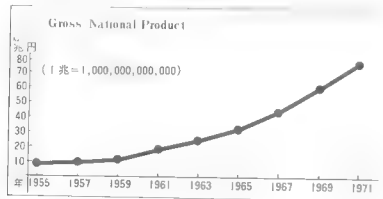
## 経済生活

日本の経済成長率は世界第一位とされている。1971年の国民総生産、GNPは1955年に比べて、9.17倍になり、アメリカ、ソ連に次ぎ、世界第13位である。物価は毎年上昇して、インフレの傾向にある。公共施設の不足も目立っている。

日本、労働時間は平均週42時間ぐらゐであり、その平均賃金は税金をふくめて月66,000円ぐらゐだ。

いろいろな社会保障制度は一応あるが、その内容や額はまだまだ不十分である。今、社会保障の一人当たりの給付額はイタリアやイギリスの1/4から1/5、西ドイツの1/8である。今後、社会保障はもっと充実するだろうが、スウェーデンや西ドイツに追いつくまでには、何年もかかるにちがいない。

日本はこの経済成長のうちに、もう一つ大きな問題をもっている。それは公害の問題だ。これについては別の章で述べよう。



## The Japanese Economy

Japan's economic growth rate is the highest in the world, GNP marking a 9.17-fold expansion between 1955 and 1971 to become third-largest in the world, surpassed only by the U.S. and the U.S.S.R. However, per-capita income was still 13th in 1971, prices have shown inflationary annual increases, and the social infrastructure is strikingly inadequate.

While Japanese unemployment is a low 1.2%, working conditions are not so favorable, people averaging a 42-hour week yet earning only ¥66,000 per month before taxes.

Although various social security systems have been provided, they are deficient both qualitatively and quantitatively. For example, social security payments are only 1/4 to 1/5 those of Italy, England, and other nations--and only 1/8 those in West Germany! Even though improvements may be expected, it will be some years before Japan catches up with Sweden or West Germany.

In addition, Japanese economic growth has also been accompanied by the very important problems of pollution generated, but this issue is taken up elsewhere.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 keizai seikatsu economic life                  | 15 wazuka (Na) only, no more than                     |
| 2 keizai-seichō-ritsu economic growth rate       | 16 rōdō-jōken working conditions                      |
| 3 seichō (Nv) growth                             | 17 jōken condition                                    |
| 4 kokumin-sō seisan gross national product (GNP) | 18 rōdō-jikan working hours                           |
| 5 sō-general, all                                | 19 heikin (N/Adv) average                             |
| 6 kurabe-ru compare (with                        | 20 ichō (N/Adv) to speak tentatively/roughly          |
| 7 shotoku income                                 | 21 nayoō content                                      |
| 8 -genai as of                                   | 22 mada mada still; not yet (more emphatic than mada) |
| 9 bukka commodity prices                         | 23 fu-jūben (Na) not enough                           |
| 10 mai-nen every year                            | 24 kyōfu-gaku delivery, payment                       |
| 11 jōshō (Nv) going up, rise                     | 25 kyōfu (Nv) payment                                 |
| 12 infare 'inflation'                            | 26 nishi-Dōitsu West Germany                          |
| 13 kōkyō shwetsu public facilities               | 27 nishi west   |
| 14 kōkyō public shwetsu institution, facilities  | 28 kongo from now on, in the future                   |
| 15 fusoku (Nv) shortage                          | 29 otsuk-u overtake, catch up with                    |
| 16 medats-u stand out, be conspicuous            | 30 ura back/reverse side                              |
| 17 shitsugyō (Nv) unemployment                   | 31 cf. omote (surface, face)                          |
|  | 32 shō chapter  |

# 第 20 課

## わたしの ふるさと

1 1 1 1 1  
2 2 2 2 2  
3 3 3 3 3

- ① 昨夜、ゆめを 見ました。ふるさとの ゆめです。  
わたしの ふるさは 信州の 小さな 村です。東京へ  
出て来たら 仕事が 忙しくて、めったに 帰れません。今  
度の 年末には 五年ぶりに 帰る つもりです。  
② 信州は 日本アルプスの 山々や 湖など 美しい 景色で  
有名です。また そばや  
みそが おいしくて よく  
知られています。いまでは  
全国 どこでも 買えます。  
先日 とも ふるさとの みそが  
恋しく 行きました。評判が  
よくて よく 売れています  
と 店員も 言っていました。  
③ わたしの 家から 日本アルプスの 山々が 見えます。



▲ Kamikochi in Shinshu

### 語句

- 1 saku-ya last night  
saku- last cf. saku-jitsu (yester-  
day), saku-nen (last year)  
2 Shinshū (a district name)  
3 e-ru See § 82  
4 nen-matsu (N/Adv) (toward) the end  
of the year  
matsu the end of cf. getsu-  
matsu  
5 -buri after an interval of , for the  
first time in

- 6 Nihon Arupusu the Japan Alps  
7 soba (a kind of Japanese noodle)  
8 koroshi that one longs for/misses  
9 hyōban reputation  
10 ure-ru sell (well) See § 83  
11 ten-in attendant, store clerk  
12 mie-ru be visible, can be seen  
See § 83  
13 naki-goe (sounds of animals in gen-  
eral) cry, whine, call, sing, chirp, twit-

夏は とても すずしくて、ときどき うぐいすの 美しい  
鳴き声 が 聞こえます。また すぐ 近くの きれいな 川で  
泳げます。冬は たいへん 寒いですが、雪は とても 美し  
いです。近くで スキーも スケートも できます。冬の  
寒い 夜、いろりを かこんで いろいろ 話し合う ことも  
とても 楽しいです。

④ 父母は どうしているでしょうか。父母の ことが 思い  
出されます。何度か 東京見物に さいましたが、畑の  
仕事などが 忙しくて なかなか 出て来られません。

⑤ もう 向こうは かなり  
寒いだろう と思います。雪  
が 降っているかもしれません。  
この 冬は 久しぶりに 本場  
の そばが 食べられます。  
今から 楽しみです。



▲ An irori

- ter, etc.; crying (sobbing, weeping,  
etc.) of people  
nak-u weep, cry, whine, call, sing,  
chirp, etc.  
14 kikoe-ru be audible, can be heard  
See § 83  
15 soki 'skiing'  
16 suketo 'skating'  
17 irori a Japanese-style fireplace,  
18 fubo father and mother  
19 nan-do ka several times

- 20 hatake (farm) field  
21 rare-ru See § 82  
22 hisashi-buri (N, after a long interval  
23 hon-ba (N) the home of, the best  
place for  
24 tanoshimi pleasure, what one looks  
forward to -tanoshim-u (enjoy)

## Dai 20-ka Watashi no Furusato

1 Saku-ya, yume o mimashita. Furusato no yume desu.

Watashi no furusato wa Shinshū no chiisa-na mura desu. Tōkyō e dete-kite kara shigoto ga isogashikute, mettani kaeremassen. Kondo no nen-matsu niwa go-nen-buri ni kaeru tsumori desu.

2 Shinshū wa Nihon-Arupusu no yama-yama ya mizuumi nado utsukushii keshiki de yūmei desu. Mata soba ya miso ga oishikute yoku shirarete-imasu. Ima dewa zen-koku doko de demo kaemasu. Sen-jitsu mo furusato no miso ga koishikute *depōto* e kai ni ikimashita. Hyōban ga yokute yoku urete-imasu to ten-in mo itte-imashita.

3 Watashi no ie kara Nihon-Arupusu no yama-yama ga miemasu. Natsu wa totemo suzushikute, tokidoki uguisu no utsukushii naki-goe ga kikoe-masu. Mata sugu chikaku no kirei-na kawa de oyogemasu. Fuyu wa taihen samui desu ga, yuki wa totemo utsukushii desu. Chikaku de *suki* mo *sukēto* mo dekimasu. Fuyu no samui yoru, irori o kakonde iroiro hanashiau koto mo totemo tanoshii desu.

4 Fubo wa dō shite-iru deshō ka. Fubo no koto ga omoi-dasaremasu. Nan-do ka Tōkyō-kenbutsu ni sasoiomashita ga, hatake no shigoto nado ga isogashikute nakanaka dete-koraremasen.

5 Mō mukō wa kanari samui darō to omoimasu. Yuki ga futte-iru kamo shiremasen. Kono fuyu wa hisashi-buri ni hon-ba no soba ga taberaremasu. Ima kara tanoshimi desu.



▶ A farmhouse

## Lesson 20 My Home Town

1 I had a dream last night. It was a dream about my home town. It is a small village in the Shinshu region. I have been so busy with my work since I came to Tokyo that I have not been able to go back very often. I plan to go back this December for the first time in five years.

2 Shinshu is famous for the beautiful scenery of the mountains and lakes of the Japan Alps. It is also well-known for its delicious *soba* and *miso*. Now you can buy them anywhere in Japan. The other day I was longing for some *miso* from Shinshu and went to a department store to buy it. The clerk said it is very popular and sells well.

3 I can see the Japan Alps from my home. The summers are very cool and we can sometimes hear the nightingale's beautiful song. We can also swim in a clear river nearby. The winters are very cold, but the snow is just beautiful. We can ski and skate nearby. During the cold winter nights, it is great fun to gather around the hearth and talk.

4 I wonder how my parents are. I often think about them. I have invited them to come sight-seeing in Tokyo several times, but they are too busy with farming and everything to get away easily.

5 It is probably rather cold in Shinshu already. There may even be snow. This winter I will be able to enjoy real *soba* for the first time in many years. I am looking forward to it already.

### ANSWERS pp 244, 245

I. 1. Anata wa Supein go ga hanasemasu ka? 2. *wiski* ga nomemasu ka? 3. *mō* is shū-kan matemasu ka? 4. *ie* ga kaemasu ka? 5. *sashimi* ga taberaremasu ka? 6. *asa* hayaku okiraremasu ka? 7. Nippon-go de denwa ga kakeraremasu ka? 8. *kuruma* ga unten dekimasu ka? 9. *kaigi* ni shusseki dekimasu ka? 10. *mō* ichi-do koko e koraremasu ka?

III. 1. noremassen deshita 2. tsukemassen deshita 3. kikoemasu 4. dekimasen 5. miemasu 6. mieru 7. miemasen

IV. 1. "Koko wa dōro no jūdōsha no oto ga kikoemasen ka?" "Hai. Kono heya wa taihen shizuka desu kara, yoku benkyō-dekimasu." 2. Kinshi desu kara, kokuban no ji ga miemasen 3. Kono hon wa taihen yoku urete-ite, kotoshi no *beato-jerē* no hito-tsu desu.

## § 82 Expressions of Ability

As has already been noted, the idea 'someone can do (is able to do) something,' can be expressed with the pattern: (§ 66)

X wa (N O) V (Dict. form) koto ga dekimasu.

This pattern can be simplified by using what is called the 'Potential form' of the Verb.

X wa  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} V\text{-}(\text{Stem}) \text{ (1st Group) } -\text{e-} \\ V\text{-}(\text{Stem}, \text{ (2nd Group) } -\text{rare-} \end{array} \right\}$  masu.

e.g. Watashi wa shinbun o yomu koto ga dekimasu. 'I can read the paper.'  
→ Watashi wa shinbun ga yom-e-masu.

Anata wa Ei-go o oshieru koto ga dekimasu ka? 'Can you teach English?'  
→ Anata wa Ei-go ga oshie-rare-masu ka?

The Irregular Verb suru becomes dekiru

e.g. Anata wa unten-suru koto ga dekimasu ka? 'Can you drive?'  
→ Anata wa unten dekimasu ka?

The other Irregular Verb kuru changes to either **koreru** or **korareru**.

e.g. Anata wa ashita hito-ri de koko e koremasu/koraremasu ka?  
'Can you come here tomorrow by yourself?'

NB: (1) The Potential form of Verbs is inflected just like 2nd Group Verbs.

(2) When a Verb takes the Potential form, it gains an Adjective-like quality, so that the (original) object of the Verb (e.g. *shinbun* in the first example above) becomes the Subject of the Predicate, taking the Particle *ga*, instead of *o*, as seen in above examples.

cf. 'I can read the paper.' → 'The paper is *readable*.'

## § 83 Expressions of 'Spontaneity'

Expressions in English such as 'I can see Mt. Fuji from my window,' 'Can you hear me?' (over the telephone), or 'Do you understand this?' often appear in Japanese as 'Mt. Fuji is visible from my window,' 'Is my voice audible?' 'Is this understandable?' (or, 'Is this clear?') The forms of the verbs used here are the same as the Potential forms, with a few exceptions as shown below. They are called the 'Spontaneous forms,' as distinct from the Potential forms, because they do not mean that something (Mt. Fuji or the voice in the above examples) has a certain ability to do something, but rather that such came about spontaneously, or that something has such and such innate property.

One of the striking differences between Japanese and English is that in expressions involving feeling (like, dislike, hate, etc.), perception (see, hear, smell, etc.), or conception (think, regard, etc.), Japanese prefers expressing as 'subject' what is usually expressed as 'object' in English. Some examples have already come up.

Compare the following English and Japanese expressions

'I love you.' Anata ga suki desu.

'I want coffee.' Kôfi ga hoshii desu.

'I need a million yen now.' (Watashi wa) ima hyaku-man-en irimasu.

'Can you teach English?' (Anata wa) Ei-go ga oshieraremasu ka?

'We can see Mt. Fuji clearly today.' Kyô wa Fuji-san ga yoku miemasu.

'Can you hear me?' (Watashi no koe ga) kikoemasu ka?

Compare also such expressions as the following.

'This book sells well.' Kono hon wa yoku uremasu.

'This knife doesn't cut well.' Kono naifu wa yoku kiremasen.

'Do you understand this?' Kore ga wakarimasu ka?

I. Make questions and answers with the key phrases as shown in the example.

Ex. (write *kanji*) Q: Anata wa kan-ji ga kakemasu ka?

A: Hai, kakemasu. (or, iie, kakemasen.)

1. (speak Spanish)
2. (drink whisky)
3. (wait another week)
4. (buy a house)
5. (eat *sashimi*)
6. (get up early in the morning)
7. (make a telephone call in Japanese)
8. (drive a car)
9. (attend the meeting)
10. (come here once again)

II. Answer the following questions.

1. Anata wa *gita*<sup>2</sup> ga hikemasu ka?
2. Anata wa *taipu* ga utemasu ka?
3. Anata wa saikin yoku nemuremasu ka?
4. Anata wa kan-ji ga iku tsu gurai yomemasu ka?
5. Anata wa hyaku *metoru* o ju-byō<sup>3</sup> nai<sup>4</sup> de hashiremasu ka?
6. Anata wa *radio* no shuri ga dekimasu ka?
7. Anata wa nan-*metoru* gurai oyogemasu ka?

語句

- 1 *shusseki* Nv attendance, presence
- 2 *gita* 'guitar'
- 3 -byō second(s)
- 4 *inai* within

- 5 *tsumo no usua* as always
- 6 *uta-goe* singing voice
- 7 *oto* sound
- 8 *hiru-yasumi* lunch break

III. Fill in the blanks.

Watashi no kaisha wa Tōkyō no  
kōgai ni arimasu. Watashi no ie kara  
kaisha made *basu* de san-jup-pun gurai  
desu. Shikashi, kesa wa ku-ji goro ni  
okimashita kara, itsumo no<sup>5</sup> *basu* ni  
1. could not board ). Sukoshi aruite, densha ni  
norimashita. Shikashi, itsumo no jikan  
niwa (2. could not arrive ).

Kaisha no chikaku ni ongaku-gakkō  
ga atte, itsumo kirei-na uta-goe<sup>6</sup> ya piano

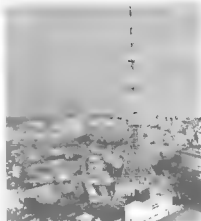
no oto<sup>7</sup> ga (3. can be heard ). Hiru-yasumi<sup>8</sup> niwa *biru* no okujō<sup>9</sup> e ikimasu. Soko  
dewa wakai hito-tachi ga *barē-bōru* o shite-imasu. Watashi wa *barē-bōru*  
ga <sup>4</sup> cannot play kara, tomodachi to hanashitari, atari no keshiki o nagame-  
tari<sup>10</sup> shimasu. *Biru* no okujō kara wa Tōkyō-tawā<sup>11</sup> ga yoku (5. can be seen )  
Fuji-san ga (6. can be seen ) koto ga arimasu. Shikashi, kumori no hi ya ame  
no hi niwa dochira mo (7. cannot be seen ).

IV. Put the following into Japanese.

- 1 'Don't you hear the noise of the cars in the street here?'
- 2 'No. It is very quiet in this room. I can study well.'
- 3 Being near-sighted, I cannot see the writing<sup>13</sup> on the blackboard.
- 4 This book is selling very well, and is one of this year's best sellers<sup>14</sup>.

- 9 *okujō* roof, topmost floor, of a building
- 10 *nagame-ru* look at, view
- 11 *tawā* 'tower'

- 12 *keshi* - *kin-gan* Nv near sighted
- 13 *ji* letter, character, handwriting
- 14 *best-seller* 'best seller'



## SOROIMASHITA KA?

- A Mo minna soroimashita<sup>1</sup> ka?  
Shuppatsu-dekimasu ka?
- B Iie, Kobayashi<sup>2</sup>-san to Yamada-san ga mada desu.
- A Iya, Yamada-san wa kyūyō<sup>3</sup> de korarenai to denwa ga arimashita.
- B Suruto,<sup>4</sup> ato wa Kobayashi-san dake desu ne?
- C Kare wa jikan ni rōzu<sup>5</sup> da kara, okureru kamo shiremasen ne.
- B Densha wa nan-ji ni demasu ka?
- A Hachi-ji ni jū-go-fun ni demasu. Daijobu desu, mada jikan wa arimasu yo.
- C Kyō wa yukkuri to Chuzenji-ko<sup>6</sup> ga miraremasu ka ne?
- A Chūzenji-ko to Kegon-no-taki<sup>7</sup> o mawatte, roku-ji niwa ryokan ni tsukemasu. Yuttari-shita<sup>8</sup> sukejuru desu.

- A: Are we all here now?  
Can we get started?
- B: No, Mr. Kobayashi and Mr. Yamada are not here yet.
- A: Mr. Yamada phoned to say that something has come up suddenly making it impossible for him to come.
- B: Then, that leaves only Mr. Kobayashi.
- C: He's very careless about time, so he may be late.
- B: What time does the train leave?
- A: It leaves at 8:25. It's all right, we still have time.
- C: Can we take our time seeing Lake Chuzenji today?
- A: After looking round Lake Chuzenji and Kegon Falls, we can get to the inn by six o'clock. This is a leisurely schedule.

## 語句

- 1 soro-u complete preparations (in the sense of having everyone/everything needed ready)
- 2 Kobayashi (a family name)
- 3 kyūyō urgent business
- 4 suruto then
- 5 rōzu 'loose'
- 6 Chūzenji-ko Lake Chuzenji
- 7 Kegon-no-Taki Kegon Falls
- 8 yuttari shita (+N)

- B: Ah, there he is! Mr. Kobayashi has arrived Kobayashi! Over here!
- K: Sorry to be late. No excuse for it. I thought I might not get here in time, so I came by taxi.
- B: In your haste, are you sure you didn't forget anything?
- K: There's nothing to worry about. I got everything ready before I went to bed last night.
- A: Now that everyone's here, we have to hurry. I'm afraid we might miss the train.

- B A, kita! Kobayashi-san ga kimashita yo.
- Kobayashi-san, kocchi<sup>9</sup> desu yo!
- K Iya..., okurete-shimaimashita.<sup>10</sup>
- Dōmo moshiwake arimasen.<sup>11</sup>
- Ma ni awana<sup>12</sup> ka to omotte, takushi de kimashita.
- B Sonna-ni awatete,<sup>13</sup> wasure-mono<sup>14</sup> wa arimasen ka?
- K Sore wa shinpai irimasen.
- Saku-ya junbi-shite kara nemashita kara.
- A Sā, kore de zen'in<sup>15</sup> soroimashita.
- Sukoshi isoganakereba<sup>16</sup> narimasen.
- Ressha ni norenai kamo shiremasen yo.

- without squeezing
- 9 kocchi (this way; here cf. atchi (that way), docchi (which way, where))
- 10 -te-shima-u See § 88
- 11 moshiwake nari inexcusable, unpardonable
- 12 ma ni a-u be in time
- 13 awate-ru make haste, rush, hurry, be frantic
- 14 wasure-mono something left behind
- 15 zen'in all the members
- 16 isog-u hurry



# 日本の芸能

お正月です。笛や太鼓の音が聞こえてきます。あれは「しし舞」です。

ししは普通にライオンのことで、このようなおどりはアジアの各地で見られます。日本では、昔の人がこの



▲No

おどりで田畑からしかやいのししを追い出しました。

日本の農村では、昔から田の神をまつて、おどりました。その

おどりは「田楽」と言われました。千年ほど前、朝鮮からアジア大陸の音楽が伝えられました。それを「散楽」と言います。それが

「猿楽」となり、これと田楽から「能」ができました。

十四世紀ごろ世阿弥という人が「花伝書」を書き、能の理論を

完成しました。能では「幽玄」ということばがよく使われます。

たとえば、世阿弥は「岩に花が咲く。それが幽玄だ。」と言っています。

あなたの心の目に幽玄の花が見えませんか。

「狂言」は短い劇で、こっけいなものが多く、普通は能の間に

上演されますが、それだけでも上演できます。

「人形」は散楽の中の人形劇です。十七世紀ごろ、近松という

人気作家が出て、文楽が民衆に愛されました。

「歌舞伎」は、十七世紀ごろ出雲のお国という女が京都で人々に

見せ、たいへん評判になりました。江戸時代、能は武士の芸術、

歌舞伎は町人の芸術とされ、武士は表向きには歌舞伎を見に行きませんでした。

## Japanese Arts

The sound of drums and flutes at New Year's signals the coming of the "lion dance." Common throughout Asia, "lion dances" were once performed in Japan to drive deer and wild boar from the fields. Farmers in ancient times also had the *Dengaku* festival dedicated to the god of the rice paddies. In addition, there was the *Sangaku* music introduced from the Asian mainland by way of Korea some 1,000 years ago. This later became *Sarugaku*, and it is the combination of these two, *Dengaku* and *Sarugaku*, which gave birth to *No*.

The ideals of *No* were set forth in a book called *Kaden-sho* written by Zeami around the 14th century, and one of the words commonly used to express this esthetic is *yugen*. For example, Zeami wrote "A flower blooms upon a rock. This is *yugen*." Can you picture this fanciful flower?

*Kyogen* are short, usually comical, plays. Although typically performed between *No* segments, they can also be played alone.

*Bunraku* is a puppet theater form within the *Sangaku* tradition. After *shamisen* replaced *biwa* accompaniment in the mid-16th century, *Bunraku* became popular with the masses in the 18th century with the emergence of the playwright Chikamatsu.

*Kabuki* was acclaimed in the 17th century when an actress named Okuni from Izumo performed in Kyoto. Still, *No* was theater for the *samurai* and *Kabuki* was for the common man, *samurai* not openly attending *Kabuki* performances.

1 geinō performing arts, entertainment	21 iwa rock
2 fue flute	22 me eye
3 taiko drum	23 Kyōgen (an interlude comedy,
4 shishi-mai lion dance mai dance	24 kokkei (Na) funny, humorous
5 rōken 'lion'	25 jōen (Nv) put on (a show),
6 Ajia 'Asia'	26 Bunraku (a puppet drama)
7 kaku-chi each place, every part of the country	27 ningyō-geki puppet play
kaku- each cf. sekai-kak koku (each/every nation in the world)	28 biwa (a traditional musical instrument),
8 ta-hata rice paddies and vegetable fields ta rice field	29 ni kawatte taking the place of
9 inoshishi wild boar	30 shamisen (a traditional musical instrument),
10 nō-son agricultural village cf. gyo-son (fishing village)	31 bansō (Nv) accompaniment
11 matsuri-u shrine, deity	32 Chikamatsu (1653-1724),
12 Dengaku (a traditional dance),	33 nuki sak-ka popular writer
13 Ajia-tairiku Asian Continent	34 minshū people, general public, common people
14 Sangaku (a traditional dance)	35 ai (Nv) love
15 Sarugaku (a traditional dance)	36 Izumo no Okuni (?-1607)
16 Nō-gaku) No theater	37 Edo-jidai Edo Period (1603-1867), Edo (the old name for Tokyo)
17 Zeami (founder of No; 1363-1443)	38 chōmin townsman (in Edo Period),
18 Kaden-sho (title of a book)	39 orimate-muki (N) officially, on the surface (implying that the real state of affairs is hidden behind)
19 kansei (Nv) complete	
20 yugen (N) subtle and profound	

# 第 21 課

## 久しぶりの訪問

「APE  
No. 6  
S de 1

① 先日 久しぶりに 友人の 山口さんを たずねました。

彼は 小説を 書いていますが、まだ あまり 有名では ありません。彼の 家は 郊外の 団地に あります。

② 彼は 音楽が たいへん 好きですから、レコードを 持って 行きました。ドボルザークの「新世界より」です。彼は ドボルザークが とても 好きです。

③ 彼は 仕事ちゅうは いつも ドアに かぎを かけておきます。そこで、前もって 電話を しておきました。

雨上がりでしたから、団地の どの 家の ベランダにも かさや せんたく物が ほしてありました。

④ 彼は 久しぶりの 訪問を とても 喜んでいました。「好きな レコードを 持って来てくれて ありがとう。」と言いました。机の上には 本や ペンや 原稿用紙が いっぱい 置いてありました。彼は きょうじゅうに 原稿を 書いてしまわなければならないと言いながら さっそく ウイスキーを出してきました。わたしは「だいじょうぶかい、仕事を してしまった ほうが いいんじゃないか。きょうは もう すく

帰るよ。」と言いましたが、彼は「だいじょうぶだ。もう ほとんど できている。」と言って 引き止めました。

⑤ 彼は もう 何日も 人と 会わないで 仕事を していたからでしょうか、小説の こと、音楽の ことなどを 夢中になっ て しゃべりました。彼は「おなが が すいてきたね。ご飯に しょうか。」と言いましたが、仕事の じゃまになっ ては いけないので、断わっ て 帰って 来ました。帰りに、彼は 今度の 小説は 自信が あるから、ぜひ 読んで みてくれと 言いました。



▲An apartment complex in Tokyo

### 語句

- 1 Yamaguchi (a family name)
- 2 danchi large (apartment) complex
- 3 Doboruzeki 'Dvorák'
- 4 Shin sekai yori 'From the New World'
- 5 shigoto chū (N) at work, while working
- 6 kagi key, lock
- kagi o kake-ru lock (V)
- 7 -te-ok-u See § 85
- 8 mae-motte in advance, beforehand
- 9 ame-agari (N) after the rain
- ame ga agaru (it stops raining)
- 10 dono mo every
- 11 beranda 'verandah'

- 12 sentaku-mono washing, laundry
- 13 hos-u (Vi) dry (in the sun,
- 14 -te-ar-u See § 84
- 15 genkō yōshi manuscript paper
- genkō manuscript
- 16 ja -dewa (Colloquial)

- 17 hiki-tome-ru ask someone to stay
- 18 muchū (N) utter absorption
- 19 shaber-u chatter, talk
- 20 jama ni nar-u be in the way
- 21 kotowar-u refuse, decline; warn
- 22 jishin self-confidence



## Dai 21-ka Hisashi-buri no Hōmon

1 Sen-jitsu hisashi-buri ni yūjin no Yamaguchi-san o tazunemashita. Kare wa shōsetsu o kaite-imasu ga, mada amari yūmei dewa arimasen. Kare no ie wa kōga no danchi ni arimasu.

2 Kare wa ongaku ga taihen suki desu kara, *rekōdo* o motte-ikimashita. *Doboruzōku* no “Shin-sekai yori” desu. Kare wa *Doboruzōku* ga totemo suki desu.

3 Kare wa shigoto-chū wa itsumo *doa* ni kagi o kakete-okimasu. Sokode, mae-motte denwa o shite-okimashita.

Ame-agari deshita kara, danchi no dono ie no *beranda* nimo kasa ya sentaku-mono ga hoshite-arimashita.

4 Kare wa hisashi-buri no hōmon o totemo yorokonde-imashita. “Suki-na *rekōdo* o motte-kite-kurete arigatō.” to iimashita. Tsukue no ue niwa hon ya *pen* ya genkō-yōshi ga ippai oite-arimashita. Kare wa kyō-jū ni genkō o kaite-shimawanakereba naranai to iinagara sassoku *uisuki* o dashite-kimashita. Watashi wa “Daijōbu kai? Shigoto o shite-shimatta hō ga ii n ja nai ka? Kyō wa mō sugu kaeru yo.” to iimashita ga, kare wa “Daijōbu da. Mō hotondo dekite-iru.” to itte hiki-tomemashita

5 Kare wa mō nan-nichi mo hito to awanaide shigoto o shite-ita kara deshō ka, shōsetsu no koto, ongaku no koto nado o muchū ni natte shaberimashita. Kare wa “Onaka ga suite-kita ne. Gohan ni shiyō ka?” to iimashita ga, shigoto no jama ni natte wa ikenai node, kotowatte kaette-kimashita. Kaeri ni, kare wa kondo no shōsetsu wa jishin ga aru kara, zehi yonde-mite-kure to iimashita.

## Lesson 21 A Visit to a Friend

1 I visited my friend Yamaguchi the other day for the first time in a long time. He is a novelist, but he is not very well known yet. He lives in a housing development in the suburbs.

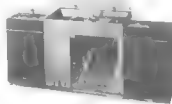
2 Since he is very fond of music, I took him a record. It was Dvořák's *New World*. He likes Dvořák a lot.

3 He always keeps the door locked when he is working. So I had called ahead to tell him I was coming.

Since it had just rained, all of the verandahs had umbrellas and wash hanging out to dry.

4 He was very pleased at having me visit. “Thank you for bringing me this good record,” he said. His desk was covered with books, pens, manuscript paper, and the like. He said he had to finish writing something by tomorrow, but while saying that, he got out a bottle of whisky for us. I said, “Is it okay? Shouldn't you finish your work? I won't stay very long today.” but he stayed me with “It's all right. It's almost finished.”

5 Maybe it was because he had been working for days without talking with anyone. He talked nonstop about novels, music, and everything. Although he said he was hungry and suggested we eat, I turned down the offer and came home because I didn't want to keep him from his work too long. As I was leaving, he told me he had confidence in the story he was writing and told me to be sure to read it.



ANSWERS pp. 256, 257

I. 1. tabete-shimaimashita 2. kaite-shimaimashita 3. benkyō o shite-shimaimashita 4. shira-bete-shimaimashita 5. tsukatte-shimaimashita

IV. 1. B: motte-iki A: motte-ika 2. B: tabete-iki 3. A: tsurete-ike B: tsurete-itte

V. 1. katte-kite 2. tsurete-ki 3. yonde-ki

VI. 1. kimashita 2. kimashita 3. ikimasu 4. ikimasu 5. kimashita

## § 84 V-te + Auxiliary Verbs (1)

V-te-aru (V: active, transitive)

This form indicates that something is in a certain state, but it is different from other stative expressions in that this implies that the state has been brought about by an unidentified person.

e.g. Doo ni kagi ga kakete-arimasu. 'The door is locked.'

(Almost synonymous with 'Doo ni kagi ga kakatte-imasu'.)

In addition this pattern often involves the meaning of being ready.

e.g. Heya ga totte-arimasu. (toru 'take')

'There is a room reserved.'

## § 85 V-te + Auxiliary Verbs (2)

V-te-oku (V: active, transitive or intransitive)

This means 'to put or leave something in a certain state' with the implication that the action is intended as preparation for some future use or occasion.

e.g. Denki o tsukete-okimashō.

'Let's leave the light on (because we are coming back soon, etc.).'

Denwa o kakete-oita hō ga ii desu. 'You'd better call (ahead).'

## § 86 V-te + Auxiliary Verbs (3)

V-te-iku 'do...and go' or 'go...ing'

e.g. Gohan o tabete-ikimashō. 'Let's finish lunch and then go.'

Kodomo wa hashitte-ikimashita. 'The child went running.'

## § 87 V-te + Auxiliary Verbs (4)

V-te-kuru

(1) 'do...and come' or 'come...ing'

e.g. Gohan o tabete-kimashita. 'I ate before I came.'

Kamera o motte-kute-kudasai. 'Please bring your camera.'

(2) Event in progress—toward the speaker:

e.g. Samuku natte-kimashita ne. 'It's gotten colder, hasn't it?'

## § 88 V-te + Auxiliary Verbs (5)

V-te-shima(w)u 'bring an action (V) to an end' or 'finish...'

e.g. Ano hon o yonde-shimaimashita ka? 'Have you finished the book?'

NB. This form is used mainly to emphasize, in one way or another, the completion of an action or event, the effect varying depending upon the form (Past, Imperative, Volitional, etc.) and the context.

e.g. Baka-na koto o itte-shimatta. 'I have said a foolish thing.'

Hayaku tabete-shimai-nasai. 'Come on. Finish up (eating) quickly!'

Kyō-jū ni kono shigoto o shite-shimaō.

'Let's finish this work today.'

## § 89 V-te + Auxiliary Verbs (6)

V-te-miru 'do...and see (how it will turn out)' or 'try...ing and see'

e.g. Ichi-do haite-mite-kudasai. 'Please try them on (and see if they fit).'

Yamada-san wa uchi ni iru deshō ka? 'I wonder if Yamada's at home.'

—Sā... Denwa o kakete-mimashō.

'Who knows? Why don't we call him up (and find out)?'

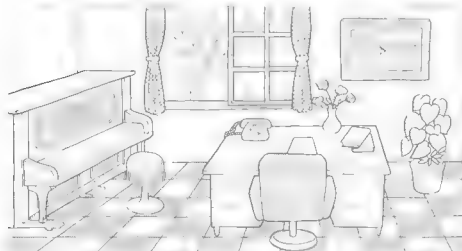
I. Make questions and answers with the key phrases using 'te-shimau' as shown in the example

Ex. (kono hon o yomu)

- Q: Anata wa mō kono hon o yonde-shimaimashita ka?  
A: Hai, mō yonde-shimaimashita.  
(or lie, mada desu.)
1. (hiru-gohan o taberu)  
2. (ronbun o kaku)  
3. (shiken no benkyō o suru)  
4. (mondai o shiraberu)  
5. (o-kane o tsukau)

II. Describe the interior of the room using 'te-aru' as shown in the example.

Ex. Mado ga akete-arimasu.



III. Using the picture above, make dialogs with 'te-oku' as shown in the example.

Ex. Q: Mado o akete-okimashō ka?

A: Hai, akete-oite-kudasai. (or lie, akete-okanaide-kudasai.)

語句

- 1 shirabe-ru examine, investigate,  
check  
2 dōbutsu-en zoo

- dōbutsu animal cf. shokubutsu  
(plants)  
3 hito-hako one box/package

IV. Practice the following dialogs adding the appropriate 'te-iku' forms.

1. A: Ashita yama e ikimashō.

B: Kamera o ( )mashō ka?

A: Iie, kamera wa ( )nai hō ga ii deshō.

2. A: Ima kara Nara e ikimasu ga, mukō ni tsuite kara hiru-gohan o tabe-mashō ka?

B: Iya, koko de ( )mashō.

3. A: Watashi no kodomo wa dōbutsu-en<sup>2</sup> e kitagatte-masu ga, watashi wa isogashikute ( )masen.

B: Soredewa, watashi ga ( )agemashō.

V. Complete the sentences using the appropriate forms of 'te-kuru.'

1. Tabako-ya e itte, tabako o hito-hako<sup>3</sup> ( )-kudasai.

2. Kanojo wa pāti ni kodomo o ( )mashita.

3. Haha ga byōki desu kara, watashi wa isha o ( )masu.

VI. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms of 'kuru' or 'iku.'

1. Higashi no sora ga akaruku-natte-( ).

2. Ame ga futte-( ).

3. Niji<sup>4</sup> ga dandan kiete<sup>5</sup>-( ).

4. Kokoro to kokoro ga hanarete-( ).

5. Kare no kangae<sup>6</sup> ga wakatte-( ).

4 niji rainbow

5 kie-ru disappear

6 kangae thought, idea ←kangae-ru

# NOKOSHITE-OKITAI

—Kore ga Kyoto no Minami-za<sup>1</sup> desu.

Takusan no kanban<sup>2</sup> ga kakete<sup>3</sup>-arimasu ne.

—E, yakusha<sup>4</sup> no namae ga kaite-arisu. 'Maneki'<sup>5</sup> to iimasu.

Sa, hairimasho.

Kippu o katte-kimasho ka?

—Iya, kippu wa mō katte-arimasu.

Kono mae Kyōto e kita toki ni katte-okimashita.

Sono hi niwa nakanaka kaemasen.

Sore wa arigatai...

—Dō desu, omoshirokatta desu ka?

E, taihen omoshirokatta desu ga, kotoba ga wakarimasen deshita.

—Kotoba wa Nippon-jin nimo nakanaka wakari-nikui<sup>6</sup> desu yo.

Wakai hito wa amari mi ni ikimasen.

This is the Kyoto Minami-za Theater

There sure are a lot of signboards hanging outside

Yes, the names of the actors are written on them

They're called "maneki," Let's go in

Shall I get the tickets?

—No, I already have our tickets. I bought them the last time I came to Kyoto

It's quite difficult to buy same-day tickets

That's very nice of you.

How did you like it?

Interesting?

Yes, it was very interesting, although I didn't understand the words.

—The language is difficult for Japanese too. Young people don't go to see it very often

You're right. There were a lot of old people there.

—If this continues, *Kabuki* may die out. I'd like to see this preserved

Are *No* and *Kyogen* in the same state?

—They're dying out, too. It's regrettable that the traditional arts of Japan are perishing, isn't it?

So desu ne. O-toshiyori<sup>7</sup> ga ōkatta desu ne.

—Kabuki mo kono-mama dewa horonde<sup>8</sup>-shimau kamo shiremasen.

Nokoshite<sup>9</sup>-okitai desu.

Nō ya Kyōgen mo onaji desu ka?

—Onaji yō-ni sutarete<sup>10</sup>-imasu.

Nippon no koten<sup>11</sup>-geijutsu ga nakunatte-iku no wa zannen desu ne.

語句

1 Minami-za (the name of the *Kabuki* theater in Kyoto)

2 kanban signboard, advertising billboards

3 kake-ru hang

4 yakusha actor

5 Maneki billboards ← maneki-u (invite)

6 -nikui difficult to

7 toshiyori (N) old (person)

8 horobi-u —horobi-ru (Vt) cease to exist, decline, decay

9 nokos-u (Vt) leave behind, preserve cf. nokor-u (Vi)

10 sutare-ru go out of use, die out, decline

11 koten classics





# 第 22 課

## 冬の 手紙

TAJ  
No. 6  
S-1

- ① だんだん 寒く なってきましたが、その後 お変わり  
ありませんか。わたしは かぜを ひいてしまいました。毎  
朝の 出勤が とても つらいです。あなたも 奥さんも 気  
をつけてください。
- ② 先日は 突然 おじゃまして ご迷惑を かけました。久  
しぶりでしたので、つい ゆっくりしてしまいました。奥さ  
んにも 親切に してもらって たいへん うれしかったです。
- ③ もう 三か月で あなたも 一兄の 父親に なりますね。  
何かと たいへんでしょうが、家庭が いっそう 楽しく に  
ぎやかに なるでしょうね。
- ④ あの 夜 帰り道 少し お酒に よっていたので、川べ  
りを ぶらぶら 歩きました。風が ヒューヒューと 吹い  
ていましたが、あまり 寒く 感じませんでした。それは  
お酒の せいばかりではなくて、あなたがたの ことが ほの  
ぼのと むねの 中に あったからでしょう。

語句

- 1 sono go after that, from that time on,  
since then  
2 o-kawari arimasen ka? (Cph) Hope  
you are still well (+lit. Have there  
been any changes in your situation?)  
3 shukkin (Nv) go to work  
4 tsura-i hard, painful, hard to bear  
5 totsuzen (Adv) suddenly  
6 meiowaku (Nv/Na) annoyance, nui-  
sance, bother

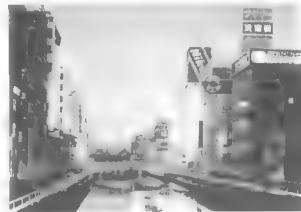
- meiwaku o kake-ru cause trouble,  
make a bother of oneself  
7 tsu in spite of oneself, without  
intending  
8 ichi-ji one child  
9 chichi-oya =chichu father cf. haha  
oya (mother)  
10 nanu ka to in various ways, with this  
or that, somehow  
11 issō (Adv) all the more

その 夜は 都会には めずらしく 星が きらきらと か  
がやいていました。

- ⑤ もう すぐ お正月ですね。これから しばらく 忙しく  
なって、なかなか 会えないでしょうが、おたがいに しっ  
かり がんばって よい 年を むかえましょう。

- ⑥ さくらの ころには 赤ちゃんに 会えますね。  
それでは、お元気で。奥さんと おなかの 赤ちゃんに  
よろしく。

12月3日



▲Dotonbori in Osaka

- 12 kaeri-michi the way back  
13 yo-u get drunk  
14 kawa-beri river bank  
15 bura-bura (to) (onomat) idly, aim-  
lessly  
16 hyū hyū (to) (onomat) sound of  
whistling wind  
17 no sei owing to, caused by,  
the fault of  
18 hono bono (to) (onomat) warmly,

- dimly, faintly  
19 mune chest, heart  
20 kira kira(to) (onomat) twinkle, glitter  
21 kagayak-u glitter, glisten, twinkle  
22 shikkari (to) (onomat) firmly, tightly,  
decidedly, positively  
23 ganbar-u exert oneself, put up a  
good fight, persist, stand firm, hang  
in  
24 aka-chan baby

# Dai 22-ka Fuyu no Tegami

1 Dandan samuku natte-kimashita ga, sono go o-kawari arimasen ka? Watashi wa kaze o hiite-shimaimashita. Mai-asa no shukkin ga totemo tsurai desu. Anata mo oku-san mo ki o tsukete-kudasai.

2 Sen-jitsu wa totsuzen o-jama-shite go-meiwaku o kakemashita. Hisashi-buri deshita node, tsui yukkuri-shite-shimaimashita. Oku-san nimo shin-sestu-ni shite-moratte taihen ureshikatta desu.

3 Mō san-ka-getsu de anata mo ichi-ji no chichi-oya ni narimasu ne. Nani ka to tainen deshō ga, kate ga issō tanoshiku nigiyaka-ni naru deshō ne.

4 Ano yoru kaeri-michi sukoshi o-sake ni yotte-ita node, kawa-beri o bura bura arukimashita. Kaze ga hyū-hyū to fuite-imashita ga, amari samuku kanjimasen deshita. Sore wa o-sake no sei bakari dewa nakute, anata-ga no koto ga hono-bono to mune no naka ni atta kara deshō.

Sono yoru wa tokai niwa mezurashiku hoshi ga kira-kira to kagayaite-imashita.

5 Mō sugu o-shōgatsu desu ne. Kore kara shibaraku isogashiku natte, nakanaka aenai deshō ga, o-tagai-ni shikkari ganbatte yoi toshi o mukae-mashō.

6 Sakura no koro niwa aka-chan ni aemasu ne.

Soredewa, o-genki de. Oku-san to onaka no aka-chan ni yoroshiku.

12(jū-ni) gatsu 3(mik-)ka



# Lesson 22 A Winter Letter

December 3

1 It is getting colder, but how have you been? I have caught a cold. It is very hard to get up and go to work every morning. You and your wife please take care not to catch colds.

2 I am sure my sudden appearance was an imposition on you both the other day. And since I had not seen you for so long I absently overstayed myself. I was very happy that your wife was also so kind to me.

3 In just another three months you will be a father. I am sure it will be very demanding, but it will also brighten up and enliven your household.

4 After leaving your home, I was still a little high from the wine and walked amblingly along the river bank. Although the wind was whistling by, I did not feel very cold. I think this is attributable not only to the wine but also to the warm fog which seeing you both had left in me.

Unusual for the big city, the stars were also out brightly that night.

5 Soon it will be New Year's. We will probably be too busy for a while to get together again, but let us both continue doing our best and have a good year next year.

6 I will be around to see the baby in cherry blossom time.

Farewell and good health to you. Please also give my best to your wife and unborn baby.

## ANSWERS pp.268, 269.

I. 1. ippai-ni narimashita. 2. kirei-ni narimashita. 3. takaku narimashita. 4. hima-ni narimashita. 5. isogashiku narimashita. 6. benri-ni narimashita. 7. kuraku narimashita. 8. yume-ni narimashita.

II. 1. kirei-ni 2. yasuku 3. hayaku 4. shizuka-ni 5. karuku 6. osoku 7. ōku 8. akaruku

III. 1. wan-wan 2. nyā nyā 3. zā-zā 4. pyu-pyu 5. gata-gata 6. ton ton 7. rin-rin 8. pachu pachu 9. gū-gū 10. suya suya

IV. Watashi no machi wa onsen de taihen yume-ni narimashita. Mukashi wa ryōkō-sha mo hotondo nakute, shizuka-na mura deshita. Shikashi kono-goro wa machi-ju ga nigiyaka-ni narimashita. Aterashiku tetsudō ga dekite, kōtsu mo benri-ni narimashita. Mata soko no hito-bito wa ryōkō-sha ni totemo shinsetsu desu.

## § 90 Adverbs (3)

A-ku } (+V)	cf.	A-i } (+N)
Na-ni }		Na-na }

- e.g. Samuku narimashita. 'It has gotten cold.'  
 cf. Kyō wa samui desu. 'It is cold today.'  
     samui hi 'a cold day'  
 Kanojo wa kirei-ni narimashita ne.  
     'She has gotten pretty, hasn't she?'  
 cf. Kanojo wa kirei desu. 'She is pretty.'  
     kirei-na hito 'a pretty person (girl)'

## § 91 'A-ku' form used as N

- Some of the -ku (adverbial) forms of adjectives are used as Nouns.  
 e.g. Gakkō no chikaku ni sunde-imasu.  
     'I live near (in the neighborhood of) the school.'  
 Kane no oto ga tōku kara kikoete-kimasu.  
     'The sound of a bell can be heard from afar.'  
 Kono sensō de ōku no hito ga shinimashita.  
     'Many people died in this war.'  
 NB: "ōi hito ga..."

## § 92 Adverbs (4): 'Onomatopoeia'

- Like some other languages, Japanese abounds in what is called 'onomatopoeia' or 'onomatopoeic words.'  
 Some of them are used just to imitate sounds.  
 e.g. Pisutoru o pan-pan to utta. '(He) shot the pistol bang-bang!'  
 Inu ga wan-wan to hoeru. 'The dog barks bow-wow'

More difficult for the non-native speaker, however, are those that are used to describe various manners in which an action or event takes place. Following are some of the most frequently used onomatopoeic expressions

**hakkiri (to)** 'clearly,' 'articulately.'

- e.g. Motto hakkiri kaite-kudasai. 'Please write more clearly.'

Hakkiri wakarimasen. 'I don't know exactly.'

**yukkuri (to)** 'leisurely,' 'without rush,' 'slowly'

- e.g. Motto yukkuri hanashite-kudasai. 'Please speak more slowly.'

Dōzo yukkuri mite-kudasai. 'Please take your time looking at it.'

**don-don** 'rapidly,' 'without restraint'

- e.g. Bukka ga don-don agarimasu. 'Prices are skyrocketing.'

Don-don shitsumon-shite-kudasai.

'Please don't hesitate to ask questions.'

Yushutsu ga don-don fuete, ichi-oku-en o koemashita.

'Exports increased rapidly, and exceeded 100 million yen.'

**shikkari** 'hard,' 'tightly,' 'with precision,' 'without fail'

- e.g. Rōpu o shikkari musunde-kudasai. 'Tie the rope tightly.'

Shikkari benkyō-shi-nasai yo. 'Study hard.'

## § 93 Some Idiomatic Expressions Involving Onomatopoeia

**at-to iu ma ni** 'While I was saying, 'Attt!' = 'Before I could say Jack Robinson.' = 'In the wink of an eye'

- e.g. Nippon e kite, atto iu ma ni is-shū-kan tachimashita.

'A week has passed in just a twinkling since I came to Japan.'

**At-to iu ma ni hi wa** hirogarimashita.

'The fire spread in a flash.'

**soro-soro**

- e.g. Mō soro-soro jikan desu. 'It's about time (to start/end something).'



## I. Transform the sentences as shown in the example.

Ex. (Atama ga itai desu.) Atama ga itaku narimashita.

- (Onaka ga ippai desu.)
- (Kanojo wa chika-goro kirei desu.)
- (Bukka ga takai desu.)
- (Shigoto ga hima desu.)
- (Kaisha ga isogashii desu.)
- (Kōtsū ga benri desu.)
- (Soto ga kurai desu.)
- (Kono kaisha wa *toranjisutō-rajio*<sup>1</sup> de yūmei desu.)

## II. Transform the sentences as shown in the example.

Ex. (Kono *zubon*<sup>2</sup> wa nagai desu.) Kono *zubon* wa nagai desu kara, mō sukoshi mijikaku shite-kudasai.

- (Kono heya wa *kitana*<sup>3</sup> desu.)
- (Heya-dai<sup>4</sup> ga takai desu.)
- (Jidōsha no *supido*<sup>5</sup> ga osoi desu.)
- (Sawagashii desu.)
- (Nimotsu<sup>6</sup> ga omoi desu.)
- (Kaigi no jikan ga hayai<sup>7</sup> desu.)
- (Kyūryō ga sukunai desu.)
- (Kono heya wa kurai desu.)

## 語句

- toranjisutō-rajio* 'transistor radio'
- zubon* trousers
- kitana* dirty
- heyā-dai* room rent
- supido* 'speed'
- nimotsu* luggage, load
- haya* early, rapid, fast
- nyā-nyā* (to, (onomat) mew, meow

- rin-rin* (to) (onomat) (sound of a small bell)
- pyū-pyū* (to) (onomat) (sound of wind)
- rā-zā* (to) (onomat) (sound of pouring rain)
- ton ton* (to) (onomat) (sound of someone knocking)
- suya-suya* (to) (onomat) (a manner of

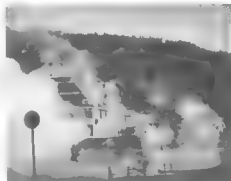
III. Choose a suitable word from group (A) and fill in the blanks in the sentences of group (B).

(A) *nyā-nyā*<sup>8</sup> *rin-rin*<sup>9</sup> *pyū-pyū*<sup>10</sup> *zā-zā*<sup>11</sup> *ton-ton*<sup>12</sup> *suya-suya*<sup>13</sup> *wan-wan*<sup>14</sup> *pachi-pachi*<sup>15</sup> *gū-gū*<sup>16</sup> *gata-gata*<sup>17</sup>

- (B) 1. Iru ga ( ) *naite*<sup>18</sup>-imasu.  
 2. Neko ga ( ) *naite*-imasu.  
 3. Ame ga ( ) *futte*-imasu.  
 4. Tsuyoi kaze ga ( ) *fuite*-imasu.  
 5. To ga ( ) *natte*<sup>19</sup>-imasu.  
 6. Dare ka ga to o ( ) *tataite*<sup>20</sup>-imasu.  
 7. *Beru*<sup>21</sup> ga ( ) *natte*-imasu.  
 8. Minna ga te o ( ) *tatakimashita*.  
 9. Chichi ga ( ) *nete*-imasu.  
 10. Aka-chan ga ( ) *nete*-imasu.

## IV. Put the following into Japanese.

My town became well-known for its hot springs.<sup>22</sup> It had been a quiet village with few visitors<sup>23</sup> before, but nowadays the whole town has become lively. A new railway was built and it is easier now to get to the town. People there are also very kind to visitors.



▲The Unzen spa in Nagasaki

sleeping soundly)

- wan-wan* (to) (onomat) bowwow
- pachi-pachi* (to) (onomat) (cracking or clapping)
- gū-gū* (to) (onomat) (sound of someone sleeping, mostly snoring)
- gata-gata* (to) (onomat) (rattling sound)

- nak-u* weep, cry, whine, call, note, chirp, etc
- nar-u* (something) make a sound or noise
- tatak-u* strike, hit, knock, tap
- beru* 'bell'
- onsen* hot spring
- ryōkō-sha* traveler, visitor

## AME GA YAMIMASHITA

- A Daibu<sup>1</sup> atatakaku natte-kimashita ne.  
 B Ē, soro-soro<sup>2</sup> ume<sup>3</sup> no kisetsu desu ne.  
 A Ima demo yappari<sup>4</sup> anata wa o-cha no o-keiko<sup>5</sup> ni kayotte<sup>6</sup>-irasshaimasu ka?  
 B Ē, mada tsuzukete-imasu no yo.  
 A Yoku tsuzukimasu wa ne. Misete-itadakō ka shira?  
 B Dewa, chotto shitaku<sup>7</sup> o shite-kimasu kara, sukoshi o-machi-kudasai ne.  
 B Ikaga desu ka?  
 A Taihen kekko deshita. Kibun<sup>8</sup> ga sukkiri<sup>9</sup>-shimashita. O-cha wa honto-ni ii desu ne.  
 B O-cha o tatete-iru toki wa, kibun ga yuttari-shimasu wa.  
 A Urayamashii wa. Watashi nante,<sup>10</sup>

- A: It has gotten warmer, hasn't it?  
 B: Yes, it'll soon be time for the plum blossoms.  
 A: Are you still taking tea ceremony lessons?  
 B: Yes, I still keep it up.  
 A: That's good that you do. Will you show me?  
 B: Well, since I'll have to get things ready, can you wait a little?  
 B: How do you like it?  
 A: I like it very much. It's very refreshing. The tea is really good.  
 B: I always feel so at ease while I'm making tea.  
 A: I envy you. As for me,

語句

- 1 daibu—daibun considerably  
 2 soro-soro (to) (onomat) slowly; little by little; pretty soon  
 3 ume plum  
 4 yappari—yahari (Adv) as was expected  
 5 keiko (Nv) practice, training, lessons  
 6 koyo-u commute  
 7 shitaku (Nv) preparations, arrangements  
 8 kibun feeling, mood  
 9 sukkiri (to) (onomat) refreshed; clear-cut  
 10 nante such a wretched thing as  
 11 nen-jū all the year round

- I'm too busy all year to do things like this.  
 B: Look, the rain's stopped, and it's clearing up. Let's open the *shoji*.  
 A: Oh, how splendid your garden is. Isn't the color of the moss so much prettier after a rain? And in a little while the flowers will gradually blossom and the garden will be gay.  
 B: I make my flower arrangements with flowers from the garden.  
 A: Did you also arrange the flowers in the *toko-no-ma*?  
 B: Yes. But flower arrangement is very difficult, and it's hard to get good at it.

- 12 bata bata (to) (onomat) bustling about  
 13 shōji sliding door of paper on a framework (Japanese)  
 14 nure-ru get wet  
 15 don-don (to) (onomat) (expressing force or rapidity)  
 16 kir-u (Vt) cut  
 17 ike-ru arrange (flowers)  
 18 toko-no-ma alcove (Japanese)  
 19 o-ni nar-u (Honorific of suru) See §118  
 20 dakedo however (←da keredomo)  
 21 o-hana—ike bana flower arrangement

nen-ju<sup>11</sup> bata-bata<sup>12</sup> isogashikute...

- B Ara, ame ga yande, soto ga akaruku narimashita ne.  
 Shoji<sup>13</sup> o akemasho.  
 A Ma, rippa-na o-niwa desu ne. Ame ni nurete,<sup>14</sup> koke no iro ga utsukushiku narimashita ne. Kore kara don-don<sup>15</sup> hana ga saki-hajimete, o-niwa ga nigiyaka-ni naru deshō ne.  
 B Niwa kara o-hana o kitte<sup>16</sup>-kite iketari<sup>17</sup> shimasu no yo.  
 A Ano toko-no-ma<sup>18</sup> no o-hana mo anata ga o-ike ni natta<sup>19</sup> no?  
 B Ē, dakedo,<sup>20</sup> o-hana<sup>21</sup> wa muzukashii wa. Nakanaka jōzu-ni naranai no.



## 都市問題

過密の地域と過疎の地域で、いろいろな問題が人面化してきた。大都市やその周辺地域では、朝夕の交通停滯、道路半歩の混雑が当たり前だ。地味にはなくなり、住宅不足は深刻になっている。せまい家に、テレビ、冷蔵庫、せんたく機などの電気製品や、たんすなどの家具がぎっしり置かれている。そのうえ、大気や水のよごれはひどく、河川環境は、ますます悪くなってきた。一方、農村では人口流出がはげしくなり、医師がいなくなったり、鉄道が廃止されたりして、だんだん暮らしにくくなってくる。これがいつそう、過疎化を進め、集団離村が、あちこちの問題になっている。



On the other hand, desolate rural villages are often without doctors, their train service is cut off, and life there has become more difficult. There have even been cases of entire villages being abandoned in the face of this isolation.

29 man'in-densha jam-packed train  
 30 konzatsu (Nv) crowding, confusion  
 31 buri manner, way, style  
 32 susamaji-i terrifying  
 33 chi-ka price of land  
 34 ūtaku-basoku housing shortage  
 35 shinkoku (Na) serious, grave  
 36 reizō refrigerator  
 37 sentaku-ki washing machine  
 38 denki-seihin electrical appliance  
 39 tansu cabinet (for clothes), dresser  
 40 kagu furniture  
 41 gishshi (to) (onomat (the way many things are squeezed into a small space)  
 42 ok-u put, set  
 43 sono ue (Adv. moreover, on top of that)  
 44 taiki air, atmosphere  
 45 yogore spot, smudge, contamination  
 ~yogore-ru (get dirty/polluted)  
 46 kankyō environment  
 47 masu-masu increasingly  
 48 ryūshutsu (Nv) outflow  
 49 hageshi-i violent  
 50 ishi-isha (medical) doctor  
 51 haishi (Nv) abolishment  
 52 susumu-ru (Vi) push forth, promote, hasten of susumu- (Vi)  
 53 shudan group  
 54 ashi (Nv) leaving a hamlet  
 55 achi-kochi (N) here and there

# 第 23 課

## 文 章

LAPF  
No. 6  
Ser. 2

① あなたは 文章を 書く ことが とても じょうずだと 田さんが 言っていました。

—いや、 そうでも ありません。 文章を 書く ことは たいへん 好きですが……。 文章と 言えば 小説の 「書き出し」などは たいへん 参考に なりますね。  
「国境の 長い トンネルを 抜けると 雪国であった。 夜の 底が 白く なった。 信号所に 汽車が 止まった。」 これは 川端康成の 「雪国」の 「書き出し」です。

② わたしも 知っています。 たいへん 有名な 文章ですね。 小説が 好きな 人なら たいてい 知っていますね。  
—とても 印象的な 文章ですからね。 小説家は 特に 小説の 「書き出し」に 気を使いますね。 わたしだったら とても こんな 文章は 書けません。 夏目漱石の 「草枕」も 有名ですね。

### 語句

- 1 to jeba speaking of
- 2 kaki dashi opening paragraph  
-dashi ←-das-u (begin to )
- 3 sankō reference
- 4 kuni-zakai (national/country) border
- 5 tonneru 'tunnel'
- 6 nuke-ru go through
- 7 -to See § 96
- 8 yuki-guni snow country
- 9 soko bottom
- 10 shingō-jo signal station

- 11 Yuki-guni (the title of a novel)
- 12 nara See § 95
- 13 inshō-tekki (Na) impressive  
inshō impression
- 14 tara See § 94
- 15 totemo Very much; (not ) by any means
- 16 Natsume Sōseki (novelist; 1867-1916)
- 17 Kusa-makura (the title of a novel)
- 18 kusa grass
- 19 makura pillow
- 20 chi-chie wisdom

③ どんな 文章ですか。

—「山路を 登りながら こう 考えた。 智に 働けば 角が 立つ。 情に さお させば 流される。 意地を 通せば きゅうくつだ。 とかくに 人の 世は 住みにくい。」

④ とても おもしろい 文章ですね。 一度 その 小説を 読んでみたいです。 漱石は あまり 読んでいません。 どんな 作品を まず 読んだら いいでしょうか。

—わたしなら 「心」を おすすめします。 外国人は これを 読むと 日本人の ものの 考え方が よく わかると 言いますね。 続いて、「それから」や「F」も 読んでみたら いいでしょう。 図書館へ 行けば 全集が あります。 よかったら わたしのを 貸しましうか。

⑤ だれかが 借り出していて、もし 図書館に なかったら、貸してもらえますか。



- 19 -ba See § 95
- 20 kado ga tats-u the corners stick out  
(and hurt people)
- 21 yō sentiment, emotion cf. kanjō
- 22 sao (bamboo) pole, rod, oar
- 23 ji pride, will, stubbornness
- 24 tōs-u (Vi) let through
- 25 kyūkutsu (Na) stuffy, squeezing, not free, restricting, cramped
- 26 tokaku (m) (Adv) be apt to
- 27 hito no yo this world of men, this

- earthly life
- 28 susume-ru recommend
- 29 Sore kara (the title of a story)
- 30 Mon (the title of a story)
- 31 zenshū complete works (usually literature)
- 32 yokattara if it's all right, if you don't mind See § 94
- 33 kari-das-u check out (a book from a library,

## Dai 23-ka Bunshō

1 Anata wa bunshō o kaku koto ga totemo jōzu da to Yamada-san ga itte-imashita.

—Iya, sō demo arimasen. Bunshō o kaku koto wa taihen suki desu ga... Bunshō to ieba shōsetsu no 'Kaki-dashi' nado wa taihen sankō ni narimasu ne. "Kuni-zakai no nagai tonneru o nukeruto yuki-guni de atta. Yoru no soko ga shiroku natta. Shingō-jo ni kisha ga tomatta." Kore wa Kawabata Yasunari no 'Yuki-guni' no 'kaki-dashi' desu.

2 Watashi mo shitte-imasu. Taihen yūmei-na bunshō desu ne. Shōsetsu ga suki-na hito nara taitei shitte-imasu ne.

—Totemo inshō-teki-na bunshō desu kara ne. Shōsetsu-ka wa tokuni shōsetsu no 'kaki-dashi' ni ki o tsukaimasu ne. Watashi dattara totemo konna bunshō wa kakemasen. Natsume Sōseki no 'Kusamakura' mo yūmei desu ne.

3 Donna bunshō desu ka?

—"Yama-michi o noborinagara kō kangaeta. Chi ni hatarakeba kado ga tatsu. Jō ni sao saseba nagasareru. Iji o tōseba kyūkutsu da. Tokaku ni hito no yo wa sumi-niku."

4 Totemo omoshiroi bunshō desu ne. Ichi-do sono shōsetsu o yonde-mitai desu. Sōseki wa amari yonde-imasen. Donna sakuhin o mazu yondara ii deshō ka?

—Watashi nara 'Kokoro' o susumemasu. Gaikoku-jin wa kore o yomuto Nippon-jin no mono no kangae-kata ga yoku waku to iimasu ne. Tsuzuite, 'Sore kara' ya 'Mon' mo yonde-mitara ii deshō. Toshokan e ikeba zen-shū ga arimasu. Yokattara watashi no o kashimashō ka?

5 Dare ka ga kari-dashite-ite, moshi tosho-kan ni nakattara, kashite-morae-masu ka?

## Lesson 23 On Writing

1 Mr. Yamada tells me you write very well.

—Not really. I like very much to write, but... Speaking of writing, I find it helps me a lot to read the lead-ins to novels. "The train came out of the long tunnel into the snow country. The earth lay white under the night sky. The train pulled up at a signal stop." This is the beginning of Kawabata Yasunari's *Yuki-guni* ('Snow Country'). (trans. Edward G. Seidensticker)

2 Yes, I know it. It is quite a famous passage. Anyone who likes to read is probably familiar with it.

—It is really a striking bit of writing. Novelists are especially careful of how they start their novels. I could never write sentences like these. Natsume Soseki's *Kusa-makura* ('The Three-Cornered World') is also very well known.

3 How does it go?

—"Going up a mountain track, I fell to thinking. Approach everything rationally, and you become harsh. Pole along in the stream of emotions, and you will be swept away by the current. Give free rein to your desires, and you become uncomfortably confined. It is not a very agreeable place to live, this world of ours." (trans. Alan Turney)

4 It is very interesting. I would like to read that novel sometime. I have not read much of Soseki. What would you suggest I start with?

—I would recommend *Kokoro*. It is supposed to be good for foreigners who want to understand the Japanese way of thinking. And then it would probably be good to read *Sore kara* and *Mon*. If you go to the library, they would have his complete works. Shall I lend you mine?

5 Would you let me borrow yours if someone has checked out the library's and I can not get it there?

### ANSWERS pp 280, 281:

- I. 1. kaitara/kakeba Neg.→kakanakattara, kakanakereba 2. benkyō-shutara/benkyō-sureba Neg.→benkyō shinakattara; benkyō-shinakereba 3. futtara/fureba Neg.→furanakattara, furanakereba 4. tsutaetara/tsutaereba Neg.→tsutaenakattara, tsutaenakereba 5. takakattara/takakereba Neg.→takaku nakattara, takaku nakereba 6. yokattara/yokereba Neg.→yoku nakattara; yoku nakereba 7. shizuka dattara/shizuka-nara Neg.→shizuka de nakattara; shizuka de nakereba 8. byōki dattara/byōki nara Neg.→byōki de nakattara; byōki de nakereba 9. shinshi dattara/shinshi nara Neg.→shinshi de nakattara, shinshi de nakereba
- II. 1. jōzu dattara, 2. kanemochi dattara, 3. ōikattara, 4. oyogetara, 5. otoko dattara,
- III. 1. kōsa-ten 2. ginkō 3. yūbin-kyoku 4. hon-ya 5. gakkō
- IV. Kare ga kitaru, oshiete-kudasai. Kare ga konakattara, anata ga kawari ni kenkyū-sho e itte-kuremasen ka? Kyō watashi ga hima dattara, issho ni ikita desu ga Mukō de jikken no kekka o setsumei shite kureru deshō. Wakaranai koto ga attara, enryo-naku kute kudasai

## § 94 Conditional Expressions (1)

V-tara, ...

'If..., ...'

A-kattara, ...

'When has done, ...'

N/Na dattara, ...

'Provided, ...'

(Form: the Past form (§ 41)+ra)

e.g. Ame ga furimasu (furu). 'It rains.'

Ame ga futtara, watashi wa ikimasen. 'If it rains, I won't go.'

Hiru-gohan o tabetara, watashi no heya e kite-kudasai.

'When you have eaten lunch, please come to my room.'

Yasukattara (←yasui), kaimasu. 'If it is cheap, I will buy it.'

Gakusei dattara (←gakusei da/desu), han-gaku desu.

'It is half-price (=There is a 50% discount) if you are a student.'

NB: (1) The adjective ii (=yoi) becomes yokattara (not ikattara).

(2) The negative forms:

furimasen→furanai →furanakattara 'if it doesn't rain'

samui→samuku nai→samuku nakattara 'if it is not cold'

gakusei da→gakusei de(wa) nai→gakusei de nakattara

'if you are not a student'

## § 95 Conditional Expressions (2)

V { (1st Group) (Stem+) -eba, ...

(2nd Group) (Stem+) -reba, ...

sureba (←suru)/kureba (←kuru), ... 'If..., ...'

A-kereba, ...

N/Na nara, ...

e.g. Ame ga fureba, shigoto wa yasumi desu. 'If it rains, there's no work.'

Nichiyōbi nara, uchi ni imasu. 'If it's Sunday, I will be home.'

NB: The adjective ii becomes yokereba (not ikereba).

## § 96 Conditional Expressions (3)

V

A

N/Na da

{ (Plain Present form) + -to, ... }

'(If you) do, then, ...'

'If..., then ...'

e.g. Ano kado o magaruto, yūbin-kyoku ga miemasu.

'If you turn that corner, you'll see a post office.'

('Turning the corner, you will.')

Ni ni ni o tasuto, yon ni narimasu.

'If you add 2 to 2, it will become 4.' '2 and 2 makes 4.'

## § 97 Comparison of the Three Conditional Expressions

The ranges of meaning covered by the three Conditionals **-tara**, **-(re)eba**, and **-to** overlap to a large extent, almost so much that they appear to be synonymous and freely interchangeable. There are, however, some slight differences in nuance and use. Following are some of the main points that should be noted here. For convenience, we will let 'P' stand for the first sentence (clause) ending with one of the Conditional forms, and 'Q' for the following 'consequent' sentence (clause).

(1) 'P-reba Q' and 'P-to Q' imply that Q is a necessary or natural consequence of P, and therefore these two are more commonly used in mathematics, logic, physics, etc. than 'P-tara, Q' which has an implication that the speaker is reserving judgment on Q. Thus 'P-tara Q' is preferred when the whole sentence involves invitation or suggestion ('-mashō'), request or order ('-te-kudasai' or '-nasai'), permission ('-terno ii desu'), prohibition ('-tewa ikemasen'), etc.

(2) 'P-tara' is mostly used in the spoken language; 'P-reba' is rather limited to the written, and 'P-to' is both spoken and written.

I. Fill in the blanks with the Conditional forms and then make the sentences negative.

Ex. Anata ga kono *kamera* o (kattara/kaeba), watashi mo kaimasu. (buy)  
 Neg.→Anata ga kono *kamera* o kawanakattara (kawanakereba), watashi mo kaimasen.

- Anata ga tegami o ( ), kare mo tegami o kaite-kureru deshō.  
(write)
- Yoku ( ), anata wa shiken ni tōru<sup>1</sup> deshō. (study)
- Ashita ame ga ( ), watashi wa yama e ikimasen. (rain)
- Kare ni sono koto o ( ), kare wa kaette-kuru deshō. (inform)
- Moshi<sup>2</sup> heya-dai ga ( ), watashi wa sono heya o karimasen.  
(expensive)
- Kono hon ga ( ), imōto ni yomasemasu. (good)
- Sono heya ga ( ), soko de shigoto o shimasu. (quiet)
- Kanojo ga ( ), watashi-tachi wa ryōkō ni ikimasen. (sick)
- Kare ga ( ), watashi wa kare to kekkon-shimasu. (gentleman<sup>3</sup>)

II. Make sentences using the Conditionals as shown in the example.

Ex. Watashi wa tori dewa arimasen.→Moshi watashi ga tori dattara, anata no tokoro e tonde-iku desho.

- Watashi wa Nippon-go ga jōzu dewa arimasen.
- Watashi wa kanemochi<sup>4</sup> dewa arimasen.
- Watashi no uchi wa ōkiku nai desu.

## 語句

- 1 tōru pass  
 2 moshi (Adv) if, provided  
 3 shinshi gentleman  
 4 kanemochi (N) rich; a rich man/class

- 5 massugu (Adv) straight  
 6 magaru (Vi) turn; bend  
 cf. mageru (Vt)  
 7 hidari-gawa (N) the left side

- Watashi wa oyogemasen.
- Watashi wa otoko dewa arimasen.

III. Use the map to fill in the blanks.



Eki kara massugu<sup>5</sup> ikuto, (1. ) ga arimasu. Migi e magaruto,<sup>6</sup> sugu (2. ) ga arimasu. Soko o hidari e magatte sukoshi ikuto, hidari-gawa<sup>7</sup> ni (3. ) ga arimasu. Sono mae ni (4. ) ga arimasu. Sono yoko no michi o kita e sukoshi ikuto, (5. ) ga arimasu.

IV. Put the following into Japanese.

When he comes, please let me know. If he doesn't come, will you go to the research institute<sup>8</sup> in his stead? If I were free today, I would like to go with you. There they will explain the results of their experiment.<sup>9</sup> If there is anything you don't understand, please feel free<sup>10</sup> to ask.

- 8 kenkyū-sho research institute  
 9 jikken (Nv) experiment  
 10 enryo naku without hesitation/  
 reserve

- enryo (Nv) reserve, hesitation,  
 modesty

## JIKO GA OKOREBA....

Kuruma ga taihen konde-imasu ne.

—Kyō wa Do-yōbi desu kara ne.

Shinai no doro wa doko mo kuruma de ippai desu.

Konna noro-noro-uten<sup>1</sup> nara, aruita hō ga hayai kamo shiremasen yo.

—Kuruma o unten shite-iruto minna ira-ira<sup>2</sup>-shimasu.

Nippon no dōro wa naze konna-ni<sup>3</sup> komu no desu ka?

—Kōtsū-ryō<sup>4</sup> ga konna-ni fuetemo, doro-seibi<sup>5</sup> ga oitsuite-ikanai kara deshō ne.

Koko wa tokuni hidoi desu ne.

—Koko wa kōsoku-dōro<sup>6</sup> no iri-guchi de, ryōkin-sho<sup>7</sup> ga aru kara desu.

Ryōkin-sho<sup>8</sup>-tte?

—Yū-ryō-dōro<sup>9</sup> desu kara, ryōkin o toraremasu.<sup>10</sup>

There're so many cars.  
Because today's Saturday. All the city roads are full of cars.  
At this snail's pace, it may be faster to walk.  
—Everyone gets irritated when driving.  
Why are the roads so crowded in Japan?

—It may be because road improvement has not kept up with the increase in traffic volume.  
This area is especially bad.

—Because this is the entrance to the expressway and there are toll gates.

Toll gates?  
—This is a toll road and so we have to pay to use it.

### 語句

- 1 noro-noro unten (Nv) driving slowly (in a traffic jam)
- 2 noro noro (to, onomat) slowly, lazily
- 3 ira-ira (to) (onomat) irritated, impatient
- 4 konna-ni (Adv) like this
- 5 kōtsū-ryō traffic volume
- 6 ryō quantity, amount
- 7 dōro seibi road construction
- 8 seibi (Nv) build, provide, maintain, arrange, improve
- 9 kosoku dōro express-way, highway
- 10 kōsoku (N) high speed
- 11 ryōkin-sho toll gate
- 12 -tte? Did you say?
- 13 What is? See § 106
- 14 yū-ryō-dōro toll road
- 15 yū-ryō (N) charged of

What? You have to pay to use the road?

—Once we get past this part, the rest is easy.  
From there on the speed limit is 100 km per hour.  
But, it would be terrible if there were an accident.  
—Yes. If you're careless on the expressway, there'd be a big accident before you knew it.  
You're all right though, aren't you?  
—Yes, leave it to me.

Hē<sup>11</sup>? Tsūkō<sup>12</sup> ni o-kane ga iru no desu ka?

—Koko o sugiruto,<sup>13</sup> ato wa raku<sup>14</sup> desu. Sokudo-seigen<sup>15</sup> wa hyak-kiri desu kara.

Shikashi, moshi jiko ga okoreba<sup>16</sup> taihen desu ne.

—Ē, kōsoku-dōro dewa, ukkari<sup>17</sup>-shite-iruto, at-to iu ma ni<sup>18</sup> dai-jiko ni nari masu.

Anata wa daijōbu deshō ne?

—Ē, makasete<sup>19</sup>-oite-kudasai.

- 16 mu-ryō, tada (free)
- 17 tor-u take
- 18 Hē? What a surprise!
- 19 tsūkō (Nv) passing, transit
- 20 sugi-ru go past; exceed
- 21 raku (Na) easy, comfortable
- 22 sokudo-seigen speed limit
- 23 sokudo speed
- 24 seigen (Nv) limit
- 25 okor-u happen, occur
- 26 ukkari (to) (onomat) carelessness, absent-minded
- 27 at to iu ma ni before you can say Jack Robinson, in the twinkling of an eye
- 28 makase-ru leave (something) to (someone), trust (somebody) with (something)





## 日本の芸術

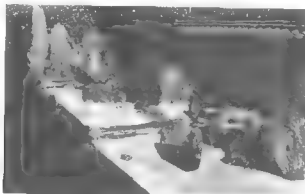
日本の芸術は自然をたいせつにする。これは、お茶やお花でも、四季おりの道具を使い、俳句にも、必ず、季節があって、伝統的な約束を守らなければならない。歳時記を見ると、季節がくわしく説明してある。

菊の香や 奈良には古き仏たち 芭蕉

この句の季語は「菊」で、これは秋の句である。菊は春でも、夏でも、冬でも咲いているが、春の菊だったら、「菊苗」とか、「菊若葉」と言わなければならない。夏の菊だったら、「夏菊」と言わなければならない。冬なら、「寒菊」と言わなければならない。

自然のままをたいせつにすることも、日本の芸術の特徴である。庭園を例にとってみよう。西欧の庭なら、円形や六角形など幾何学的な形の花壇を造ったり、噴水をこしらえたりする。しかし、日本人は、真に木を植えて、石を置いたり、池や水の流れを作ったりするときにも、できるだけ、自然の美しさをとどめようとする。ときには、へいの外のけしきく庭のてらみ、ふと考て、庭を造る。これを借景という。

このように、日本の芸術はつねに自然との永遠の一致を求める。



▶ The garden at Daisenji

## Japanese Arts

Nature plays an important part in Japanese arts, as in the tea ceremony or flower arrangement with their seasonal accessories. *Haiku* too has a traditional commitment to seasonal terms, and these are explained in *Saiki*.

Kiku no ka ya      The scent of chrysanthemums and  
Nara ni wa furuki      Long resident in Nara  
Hotoketachi      Buddhist spirits

In this *haiku* by Basho, *kiku* (chrysanthemum) is used as the seasonal clue to autumn. While these do also bloom in other seasons, spring chrysanthemums would have to be indicated by *kikunae* or *kikuwakaba*, summer ones by *natsugiku*, and winter ones by *kangiku*.

It is characteristic of Japanese art to present nature as it truly is. Whereas the typical Western garden would have a geometrically designed flower bed and a fountain, the Japanese strive to retain the beauty of nature by planting trees, placing rocks, and providing a flow for water in the pond. Gardens are sometimes even created so as to incorporate the outside view as part of the setting. This is called borrowing the scenery.

In all these ways, Japanese arts constantly seek eternal oneness with nature.

### 略号

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 shizen (N/Na) nature; natural  | 22 en-kei (N) circle   |
| 2 shiki oriori (N) for each season                                       | -kei shape   |
| ori ori (N) occasion cf. ori   | 23 san-kaku-kei (N) triangle (=three cornered shape)   |
| 3 dōgu tool  | 24 kikagaku-teki (Na) geometrical  |
| 4 ki-go special seasonal terms in <i>haiku</i> poems to show the seasons | kika-gaku geometry   |
| 5 dentō-teki (Na) traditional  | 25 zukei (geometrical) figure  |
| 6 yakusoku (Nv) promise, appointment                                     | 26 fonsu fountain  |
| 7 Saiji-ki (a glossary of <i>ki-go</i> )                                 | 27 koshirae+ru make  |
| 8 kuwashii detailed  | 28 ue+ru (Vi) plant  |
| 9 kiku chrysanthemum   | 29 ish stone, rock   |
| 10 ka =kaori scent, smell  | 30 nagare (N) flow ←nagare+ru (Vi)   |
| 11 ya (special ending for <i>haiku</i> poems)                            | 31 dekiru dake as as possible  |
| 12 furuki (archaic, ~furui)  | 32 utsukushi-sa beauty+ utsukushi  |
| 13 hotoke Buddha   | 33 todome+ru detain; stop; leave as it is  |
| 14 ku a <i>haiku</i> phrase  | 34 toki niwa sometimes   |
| 15 kiku-nae young chrysanthemum plant                                    | 35 hei fence   |
| 16 kiku-waka-ba young chrysanthemum leaves                               | 36 shakkei making use of the scenery (e.g. mountains behind the garden (lit. 'borrowing scenery')) |
| 17 natsu-giku summer chrysanthemum                                       | 37 tsune ni always   |
| 18 kan giku winter chrysanthemum   | 38 eien (N) eternity   |
| kan coldness, winter   | 39 itchi (Nv) oneness, coincidence, agreement  |
| 19 tokuchō characteristic, distinctive feature                           | 40 motome+ru seek; ask for, demand; buy  |
| 20 teien=niwa garden   |  |
| 21 rei example   |  |

# 第 24 課

## 広告・宣伝・コマーシャル

IAPE  
No. 6  
p. 2

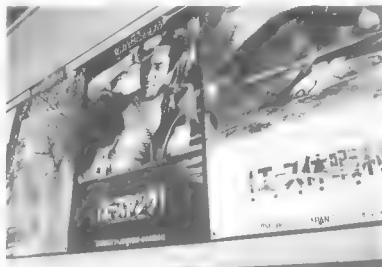
- ① あそこに 止まっている 電車に 乗りますか。  
いいえ、あれは 京都へ 行く 電車です。 わたしたちが 乗る 電車は もう すぐ 来るとして。
- ② ところで、近ごろ 駅には きれいな ポスターが たくさん ありますね。 あれには 「Discover Japan」と 書いてありますよ。 このごろ 英語を 使った 広告が 多いですね。  
——まちがった 英語の 使い方も よく 見かけます。 あまり たくさん 英語が 使っている 広告も ありますね。 この間、「クールな タッチで ハードな アクションを ダイレクトに サービスする『ナポレオン・ソロ』」という 映画の 宣伝が ありました。 一度 聞いた だけで どういう 意味が わかりますか。
- ③ うーん…。 英語だけでなく フランス語や 中国語などを 使った 広告も 多いですね。  
——そうですね。 必要以上に 外国語を 使う ことは よく

語句

- 1 posuto 'poster'  
2 har-u stick, paste, affix  
3 machigatta (+N) ←machigatte i-ru mistaken, wrong  
machiga-u ←machigae-ru make a mistake/an error, be wrong  
4 tsukai-kata usage, how to use  
5 mikake-ru see/find/notice by chance  
6 kôru (Na) 'cool'  
7 tatchi 'touch'  
8 hodo (Na) 'hard'  
9 akushon 'action'  
10 dourakuto (Na) 'direct'  
11 Napoleon Sora 'Napoleon Solo' (the title of a TV film series)  
12 senden (Nv) advertisement, publicity, propaganda  
13 dô ru what kind of

ないですね。

- ④ 近ごろ わたしの 子どもが テレビコマーシャルで 言った ことばを よく 使うので 困っています。「がんばらなくっちゃ」という ことばが よく 流行していますね。  
——あの テレビコマーシャルでしょう。 あの のんでまで がんばる 必要が あるか どうか 疑問ですね。
- ⑤ おしつけがましい 広告や 日本語を 混乱させる 宣伝は ほんとうに 困りますね。



- 14 Un Hmmm  
15 hitsuyô iô ni more than is needed  
16 terebi-kômasharu 'TV commercial'  
17 nakutcha (Colloquial) = nakutewa/nakereba narimasen have to  
18 ryûko (Nv) fashion, popularity  
19 -te made even taking the trouble of  
20 ka dô ka whether or  
21 gimon question, doubt  
22 oshitsuke-gamashi-i wishing to have one's own way  
osh-tsuke-ru press against/down, force  
-gamashi-i look/sound like  
23 konran (Nv) confusion

## Dai 24-ka

### Kōkoku, Senden, Komāsharu

1 Asoko ni tomatte-iru densha ni norimasu ka?

—Iie, are wa Kyōto e iku densha desu. Watashi-tachi ga noru densha wa mō sugu kuru deshō.

2 Tokorode, chika goro eki niwa kirei na posuta ga takusan hatte arimasu ne. Are niwa "Discover Japan" to kaite-arimasu yo. Kono-goro Ei-go o tsukatta kōkoku ga ōi desu ne.

—Machigatta Ei-go no tsukai-kata mo yoku mikakemasu. Amari takusan Ei-go ga tsukatte-aru kōkoku mo komarimasu ne. Kono aida, "Kōru-na tetchi de hādo-na akushon o dairekuto-ni sabisu-suru 'Napoleon Soro'" to iu eiga no senden ga arimashita. Ichi-do kiita dake de dō iu imi ka wakarimasu ka?

3 Ūn... Ei-go dake de naku Furansu-go ya Chūgoku-go nado o tsukatta kōkoku mo ōi desu ne.

—Sō desu ne. Hitsuyō ijō ni gaikoku-go o tsukau koto wa yoku nai desu ne.

4 Chika goro watashi no kodomo ga terebi-komasharu de itta kotoba o yoku tsukau node komatte-imasu. "Ganbaranakutchi" to iu kotoba ga yoku ryūkō-shite-imasu ne.

—Kusuri no terebi-komāsharu deshō. Kusuri o nonde made ganbaru hitsuyō ga aru ka dō ka gimon desu ne.

5 Osnitsuke-gamashi kōkoku ya Nippon-go o konran-saseru senden wa hontō-ni komarimasu ne.

## Lesson 24

### Advertising

1 Do we get on that train stopped over there?

—No, that is the train to Kyoto. Our train will be along soon.

2 Say, there has been an abundance of beautiful posters in the stations lately. That one says, "Discover Japan." A lot of the advertising uses English now.

—There is also considerable English used incorrectly. Advertisements that use too much English really turn me off. The other day I saw a movie advertisement for "Napoleon Solo—straight-served hard action with a cool touch."

How are we supposed to understand that the first time through?

3 Hmmm... And it is not only English but also French, Chinese, and all the others which are used a lot.

—You are right. Foreign words are used far more than necessary.

4 My kid has gotten into the bad habit of using the catch-phrases from television commercials. "Gotta try harder" was a big one a while ago.

—That was from a health-drink commercial. But I wonder if it is really necessary to try harder to the extent of taking that stuff.

5 Something ought to be done about hard-sell commercials and advertising which debases the Japanese language.

#### ANSWERS pp. 292, 293.

I. 1. Watashi ga/no kaita shōsetsu wa nagai desu. 2. Kare ga/no totta shashin wa kirei desu. 3. Watashi ga sensei kara karita hon wa omoshirokatta desu. 4. Watashi wa chichi ga (watashi ni) tsukutte-kureta tsue o mai-michi tsukatte-imasu. 5. Watashi ga tomodachi kara/ni moratta raita wa gaikoku-sei desu.

II. 1. Anata wa kono *rajo* ga ikura ka shitte-imasu ka? 2. Anata wa kare ga megane o kakete-ita ka dō ka oboete-imasu ka? 3. Yamada-san wa mata kuru ka dō ka wakarimasen. 4. Yamada-san no tsutomete-iru kaisha wa doko ka oshiete kudasai. 5. Watashi wa jibun no kangae-kata ga tadashii ka dō ka wakaranakatta.

III. 1. doko e iku 2. doko de katta 3. Watashi ga hanashite-ita 4. susumeru/ichiban ii to omou 5. tsukurarete-iru/tsukurareru/tsukutte-iru 6. shite-iru 7. Kono kōjō de hataraitte iru 8. Koko de tsukurareru/tsukurarete-iru

IV. Kinō watashi wa, Ōsaka e de Nippon-go o benkyō-shite-iru tomodachi kara, tegami o moraimashita. Kanojo wa Nippon no uta no *rekōdo* o okutte kudasai to karte-kimashita. Watashi wa *poppyō* ongaku no suki na otōto ni sōdan shimashita. Otōto wa kare no tomodachi ga hataraitte-iru *rekōdo*-ya-san e watashi o tsurete-itte-kuremashita. Kare-ra ga erande kureta ongaku wa taipei watashi no zenzen shiranai uta deshita. San-mai katte, Ōsaka e kōku bin de okurimashita.

## § 98 Using a Sentence as a Noun Modifier

In Japanese, a modifier always precedes what is modified. This section is concerned with the Noun-modifying constructions. Observe the following.

hon 'a book'

sono hon 'that book'

Nippon-go no hon 'a book in Japanese'

watashi no Nippon-go no hon 'my book in Japanese'

sono akai hyōshi no Nippon-go no hon 'that book in Japanese  
with the red cover'

This general order is maintained even when a Noun is modified by what could be a complete sentence, no matter how long or complex it may be.

e.g. Watashi ga kinō Kyōto de katta hon wa omoshiroi desu.

'The book (which) I bought in Kyoto yesterday is interesting.'

Sore wa anata ga kyōnen Tai e itta (←iku) toki (anata ga) katta (←kau) hon desu ka? (Literally translated and left in the same word order, this would be: 'that, you, last year, Thailand, to, went, time, (you) bought, book, is?')

'Is that the book you bought when you went to Thailand last year?'

NB: In using a sentence-equivalent as a Noun Modifier, a few adjustments are required ((1)-(3) below) or preferred (4).

(1) The Particle wa, since it shows the Topic of the (whole) sentence, cannot be used within the Noun-modifying construction. Ga must be used when N is the subject (as is usually the case), and o or ni when N shows the object or location of V.

e.g. Watashi wa hon o katta. 'I bought a book.'

→watashi ga katta hon 'the book which I bought'

Kono hon wa watashi no tomodachi ga kakimashita.

'A friend of mine wrote this book.'

→kono hon o kaita watashi no tomodachi

'a friend of mine who wrote this book'

(2) The Predicate of the Noun-modifying clause normally takes the Plain form, since the politeness is expressed by the main clause

e.g. Watashi wa kinō hon o kaimashita. 'I bought a book yesterday.'

→Watashi ga kinō katta hon wa omoshiroi desu. 'The book which I bought yesterday is interesting.'

Sono hi wa samukatta desu. 'It was cold that day.'

→samukatta sono hi 'that day when it was cold' (= 'that cold day')

(3) When the Predicate of the Noun-modifying clause is a Na-adjective, it takes the '-na form.'

e.g. Ano hito wa kōhi ga suki desu. 'That person likes coffee.'

→kōhi ga suki-na hito 'a person who likes coffee'

(4) When the Predicate of the Noun-modifying clause ends with 'Noun + desu,' it changes to 'N no.'

e.g. Ano hito wa byōki desu. 'That person is sick.'

→byōki no hito 'a person who is sick' (= 'a sick person')

(5) In the modifying clause, 'N ga' and 'N no' are interchangeable

## § 99 Using an Interrogative Sentence as part of another Sentence

An Interrogative sentence can be used as part of another sentence with the same modifications as noted in (1) and (2) above. When it contains no Interrogative word such as nani, doko, dare, etc., however, 'dō ka' must be added to 'ka.'

e.g. Kare wa doko e ikimashita ka? 'Where did he go?'

→Kare ga doko e itta ka anata wa shitte-imasu ka?

'Do you know where he went?'

Kare wa ikimashita ka? 'Did he go?'

→Kare ga itta ka dō ka watashi wa shirimasen.

'I don't know whether he went or not.'

I. Combine the sentences with the second sentence as the main clause.

Ex. Watashi wa *Furansu* de budō-shu o kaimashita. Sore wa oishii desu.

→Watashi ga *Furansu* de katta budō-shu wa oishii desu.

1. Watashi wa shōsetsu o kakimashita. Sore wa nagai desu.
2. Kare wa shashin o torimashita. Sore wa kirei desu.
3. Watashi wa sensei kara hon o karimashita. Sore wa omoshirokatta desu.
4. Chichi wa watashi ni tsue<sup>1</sup> o tsukutte-kuremashita. Watashi wa sore o mai-nichi tsukatte-imasu.
5. Watashi wa tomodachi ni *raita*<sup>2</sup> o moraimashita. Sore wa gaikoku-sei desu.

II. Combine (a) and (b) with (a) as the main clause.

1. (a) Anata wa shitte-imasu ka?  
(b) Kono *radio* wa ikura desu ka?
2. (a) Anata wa oboete-imasu<sup>3</sup> ka?  
(b) Kare wa megane o kakete-imashita ka?
3. (a) Wakarimasen.  
(b) Yamada-san wa mata kimasu ka?
4. (a) Oshiete-kudasai.  
(b) Yamada-san no tsutomete-iru kaisha wa doko desu ka?
5. (a) Watashi wa wakaranakatta.  
(b) Jibun no kangae-kata wa tadashii ka?

1 tsue walking stick, cane  
2 *raita* 'lighter'

3 oboete-iru remember, keep in mind  
oboe-ru memorize, remember, learn

III. Fill in the blanks to complete the translations.

1. Where does this train go?  
→Kore wa ( ) densha desu ka?
2. Where did you buy this watch?  
→Kore wa ( ) tokei desu ka?
3. The man I was talking with is Yamada.  
→( ) hito wa Yamada-san desu.
4. Which dictionary do you recommend?  
→Anata ga ( ) jisho wa dore desu ka?
5. This factory makes mostly transistor radios  
→Kono kōjō de ( ) omo-na seihihi wa *toranjisutō-radio* desu.
6. What kind of work does he do?  
→Ano hito ga ( ) shigoto wa nan desu ka?
7. About how much do the people who work in this factory get paid?  
→( ) hito-tachi no chingin wa ikura gurai desu ka?
8. Where do they export the radios produced here?  
→( ) *radio* wa doko e yushutsu-saremasu ka?

IV. Put the following into Japanese.

Yesterday I received a letter from my friend who is studying Japanese in Australia. She wrote asking me to send her some records of Japanese songs. I talked it over with my brother, who loves popular music,<sup>4</sup> and he took me to a record shop where a friend of his is working.

Most of the music (records) that they chose for me were songs which I didn't know at all. I bought three, which I sent to Australia by air mail.<sup>5</sup>

4 *poppyō-ōngaku* 'popular,' pop music  
5 *kōkū bin* air mail

## MOKUTEKI WA?

Watashi no hanasu kotoba ga  
wakarimasu ka?

—E, yoku wakarimasu.

Watashi wa Nippon e kite mada ichi-nen  
tarazu<sup>1</sup> desu. Sorede, amari jōzu-ni  
hanasemasen.

—Sonna koto wa arimasen, rippa-na  
mon<sup>2</sup> desu yo. Tokorode, Nippon e  
kite, ichiban komatta mondai wa nan  
desu ka?

Yahari,<sup>3</sup> kotoba desu ne. Nippon-go wa  
taihen muzukashii desu.

—Nippon e kita mokuteki<sup>4</sup> wa  
nan desu ka?

Nippon no chūsei<sup>5</sup>-bungaku no kenkyū  
desu.

—Sorejā, chusei-bungaku de  
tsukawarete-iru kotoba wa gendai no  
Nippon-go to kanari chigaimasu kara,  
taihen deshō ne.

Do you understand what  
I say?

—Yes, very well.

It's a little less than a year  
since I came to Japan, so  
I'm not so fluent

—Oh, that's not true.

You're quite good. By  
the way, what was your  
biggest problem after  
you got here?

As might be expected, the  
language. Japanese is very  
difficult.

—What was your purpose  
in coming to Japan?

To study Japanese medie-  
val literature

—Then, since the lan-  
guage used in medieval  
literature is quite dif-  
ferent from modern  
Japanese, you must be  
having a hard time.

You have to study lit-  
erary Japanese, don't  
you?

That's right. The classes  
at the university are not  
enough, so I'm learning  
from a friend my profes-  
sor introduced me to.

—Is he Japanese?

No, another English stu-  
dent. But he's been study-  
ing in Japan for 3 years,  
and his Japanese is very  
good. Moreover, since  
he's doing research on the  
*waka*, he understands the  
old Japanese very well.

—That's very good.

The classical writings  
are difficult even for  
Japanese. Study hard.

Thank you.

Bungo<sup>6</sup> no benkyo o shinakereba nari-  
masen ne.

Sō desu. Daigaku no jugyō dake dewa  
ma ni awanai node, kyoju<sup>7</sup> ga shōkai-  
shite-kureta tomodachi ni oshiete-  
moratte-imasu.

—Sono hito wa Nippon-jin desu ka?

Iya, onaji Igarisu no gakusei desu.

Demo, kare wa san-nen mo Nippon de  
benkyo-shite-imasu kara, Nippon-go wa  
pera-pera<sup>8</sup> desu. Soreni, kare ga ken-  
kyū-shite-iru kadai<sup>9</sup> ga 'waka'<sup>10</sup> desu  
kara, furui kotoba mo yoku shitte-  
imasu.

—Sore wa yokatta desu ne.

Bungo-bun<sup>11</sup> wa Nippon-jin ni tottemo  
muzukashii kotoba desu.

Shikkari benkyo-shite-kudasai.

Domo arigato.

語句

- 1 tarazu less than
- 2 mon (Colloquial)—mono
- 3 yahani—yappari as ex-  
pected
- 4 mokuteki purpose, ob-  
jective
- 5 chusei the medieval age
- 6 bungo literary language
- 7 kyōju professor; (Nv)

instruction

- 8 pera pera (onomat)  
(speak) fluently
- 9 kadai theme/problem  
to be solved, task
- 10 waka (Japanese poem  
of 5-7-5-7-7 syllables)
- 11 bungo-bun Japanese in  
written style

► From *Tsurezure-gusa*



公害

日本、公的、通商、貿易、の、利益、を、保護、する、ため、に、  
大、量、の、日本、経済、を、破壊、する、ため、に、

しかし、そのかた<sup>10</sup>で国士<sup>11</sup>は急速<sup>12</sup>に荒廃<sup>13</sup>して、人口<sup>14</sup>の半<sup>15</sup>に自化<sup>16</sup>、水<sup>17</sup>俣<sup>18</sup>と新潟<sup>19</sup>の水銀<sup>20</sup>中毒<sup>21</sup>、四日市<sup>22</sup>の大気汚染<sup>23</sup>、東<sup>24</sup>の公害<sup>25</sup>に人<sup>26</sup>が死<sup>27</sup>んだ。新幹線<sup>28</sup>の騒音<sup>29</sup>と震動<sup>30</sup>など、日本<sup>31</sup>全土<sup>32</sup>で公害<sup>33</sup>が起<sup>34</sup>った。

うえ、PCB<sup>17</sup>など、一つの地域に限られない公害も出てきた。  
工場廃液によって、河川や海が汚染され、さかになに水銀、カドミウム、PCE<sup>21</sup>

け、<sup>22</sup> 預された。 <sup>24</sup> さかなをよく食べる日本人にとって、 <sup>26</sup> これは大きな問題 <sup>27</sup> だ。 <sup>28</sup> 公害病にかかった住民は、 <sup>29</sup> 治療法もなく、 <sup>30</sup> 苦しんでいる。 <sup>31</sup> <sup>32</sup> <sup>33</sup> <sup>34</sup> <sup>35</sup> <sup>36</sup> <sup>37</sup> <sup>38</sup> <sup>39</sup> <sup>40</sup> <sup>41</sup> <sup>42</sup> <sup>43</sup> <sup>44</sup> <sup>45</sup> <sup>46</sup> <sup>47</sup> <sup>48</sup> <sup>49</sup> <sup>50</sup> <sup>51</sup> <sup>52</sup> <sup>53</sup> <sup>54</sup> <sup>55</sup> <sup>56</sup> <sup>57</sup> <sup>58</sup> <sup>59</sup> <sup>60</sup> <sup>61</sup> <sup>62</sup> <sup>63</sup> <sup>64</sup> <sup>65</sup> <sup>66</sup> <sup>67</sup> <sup>68</sup> <sup>69</sup> <sup>70</sup> <sup>71</sup> <sup>72</sup> <sup>73</sup> <sup>74</sup> <sup>75</sup> <sup>76</sup> <sup>77</sup> <sup>78</sup> <sup>79</sup> <sup>80</sup> <sup>81</sup> <sup>82</sup> <sup>83</sup> <sup>84</sup> <sup>85</sup> <sup>86</sup> <sup>87</sup> <sup>88</sup> <sup>89</sup> <sup>90</sup> <sup>91</sup> <sup>92</sup> <sup>93</sup> <sup>94</sup> <sup>95</sup> <sup>96</sup> <sup>97</sup> <sup>98</sup> <sup>99</sup> <sup>100</sup>

これらの結果から、企業側から、公害対策、取引上の姿勢を、こころ  
から、<sup>1</sup> 社会に、<sup>2</sup> 市民に、まず、公害対策を考えなければならないとい  
う、<sup>3</sup> 社会に、<sup>4</sup> 市民に、<sup>5</sup> 政府など多くの関係者、<sup>6</sup> 社会、<sup>7</sup> 市民に  
している。しかし、問題はまた残されていて、公害はこれからの政治の大きな課

▼ Keihin industrial area



## Pollution

Japan is said to have the worst pollution in the world and has been called an "advanced pollution nation." Although the economy has grown to a position of prominence since the War, this has also ravaged the land and generated intolerable pollution.

Be it the mercury poisoning in Minamata and Nigata, air pollution in Yok-  
lachi, photochemical smog in Tokyo and Osaka, the noise and vibration caused  
by super-express railways, or what have you, Japan has countless cases of environ-  
mental disruption.

When the industrial effluents pollute waterways, fish build up concentrations of mercury, cadmium, PCB, and other pollutants, and fish-eating Japanese are stricken with pollution-diseases. This has become a major social problem recently, especially as the people afflicted must suffer with no cure in sight.

As the situation has gotten worse, citizens have banded together to fight pollution. Court suits have even been instituted seeking, and winning, indemnification from polluting industries.

Many people have come to feel that pollution prevention should come before economic growth. The Government too has formulated legislation and shown concern, yet the problem remains a major unresolved political issue.

## 語句

- |    |  |    |   |
|----|--|----|---|
| 25 | senshin-koku advanced country                          | 25 | jūmin inhabitants, residents  |
| 26 | kōdo (Na) height, high degree, rapid, sophisticated    | 26 | chiryō-shō remedy, cure   |
| 3  | tai koku Great Power                                   |    | chiryō (Nv) cure, medical treatment                                 |
| 4  | kokudo the land of a country                           |    | hō method, measure  |
| 5  | kōhai (Nv) devastation                                 | 27 | kurushim-u suffer, be afflicted                                     |
| 6  | Minamata (a place name)                                | 28 | shinkoku-ka becoming more serious                                   |
| 7  | Niigata (a place name)                                 | 29 | ni tsurete in proportion to, as                                     |
| 8  | suigin chūdoku mercury poisoning                       | 30 | higai-sha victim, sufferer  |
|    | suigin mercury   |    | higai damage  |
|    | chūdoku (Nv) poisoning                                 | 31 | hanta-andō movement/campaign  |
| 9  | Yokkaichi (a place name)                               |    | protesting against  |
| 10 | taiki-osen air pollution                               |    | hantai (Nv) opposition, objection,                                  |
|    | osen (Nv) pollution, contamination                     |    | reverse, contrary and/or (Nv) movement, campaign; physical exercise |
| 11 | kinōdo suburbs, area near the city                     | 32 | tachi-agaru-u stand up, set oneself to                              |
| 12 | kōkagaku-sumoggu "photochemical smog," sumoggu "smog," | 33 | sangai baishō compensation  |
| 13 | ensen (N) along the (railroad) line                    | 34 | saiban (Nv) trial (in court)  |
| 14 | shindo (Nv) vibration, trembling                       | 35 | okosu-u (V) start (a movement; organize; generate (electricity)     |
| 15 | yendo the whole land                                   | 36 | soshō (Nv) lawsuit, legal action                                    |
| 16 | kazoe kirenai countless, innumerable                   | 37 | zure mo each/all of them  |
|    | kazoe-u count  | 38 | tsutsu win  |
| 17 | PCB polychlorinated biphenyl                           | 39 | shinken (Na) earnest, sincere, serious                              |
| 18 | kagiri-u limit   | 40 | tasaku countmeasure, policy to cope with                            |
| 19 | haeki waste fluid                                      |    |   |
| 20 | kasen -kawa (more common) rivers                       | 41 | torikumu-u wrestle/come to grips with                               |
| 21 | kadomium "Cadmium"                                     | 42 | shise posture, attitude   |
| 22 | chikuseki (Nv) accumulation                            | 43 | yatto (Adv) at last, with difficulty, barely                        |
| 23 | kōgai byō pollution-caused diseases                    |    |   |
|    | byō-byōki disease                                      | 44 | iken opinion  |
| 24 | (byōki ni) kakar-u fall ill, suffer from a disease     | 45 | tasaku ni noridas-u embark upon countmeasures.                      |

# 第 25 課

## 映画を見る

「API  
7  
7  
7」

① きのは 久しぶりに ひまが できたので、友人と いっしょに 映画を 見に行く ことに しました。

友人は 今 上映している 中で いちばん 見たいのは チャップリンの「モダン・タイムス」だと 言いました。わたしは その 映画は ずっと 昔、子どもの ときに 一度 見た ことが ありました。それで、今 評判の 日本映画を 見たかったのですが、友人が どうしても「モダン・タイムス」を 見たいと 言うので、それを見る ことに しました。

② たいへん おもしろかったです。子どもの ときは、見て ただ ゲラゲラ 笑っていただけですが、今度は いろんな ことを 考えさせられました。まず、第一に その 新鮮さに おどろかされました。何十年も 前に 作られているのに その 新しさは まったく おどろえていません。

③ 映画を 見おわってから、友人と 喫茶店て フリーに 飲みながら この 映画の よさや おもしろさを 論じ合いました。

語句

- 1 dekiru be ready, come into being, form; be possible; be able to
- 2 jōei (Nv) show (a movie) cf jōen
- 3 no See §101 (2)
- 4 Chappurin 'Chaplin'
- 5 Modan Taimusu 'Modern Times'
- 6 dō shitemo at any cost, by any means
- 7 tada only

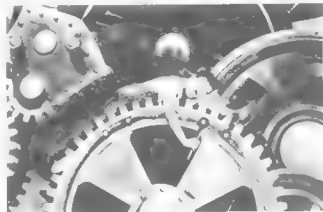
- 8 gera-gera (to) (onomat) a manner of laughing loudly and continuously
- 9 ironna -ironro na various
- 10 dai ichi ni firstly
- 11 shinsen-sa fresh +shusen (Na)
- 12 atarashi sa newness
- 13 mattaku totally, (not) in the least
- 14 otoroe-ru become weak, wither, decline

した。

④ チャップリンの 言いたい ことが よく わかったと 思います。近ごろ、わたしも 友人も 忙しくて、なかなか 映画を見る ことが できませんが、これからは できるだけ よい 映画は 見ようと いう ことになりました。

⑤ よい 映画を見る ことは たいへん いい ことです。ところが、今の 日本映画には なかなか よい 作品が ありません。エロ・グロ・ナンセンスの 映画が 多いです。これは 作る 人にも 見る 人にも 問題があると 思われます。

ほとんどに すぐれた 映画と いうのは いつまでも 生きつづける 映画の ことなのでしょう。



- 15 yo-sa good point +yo-i (good
- 16 omoshiro-sa fun, the point of a story
- 17 ronji-a-u discuss
- 18 to su koto ni na-ru That means
- 19 tokoroga however
- 20 ero guro-nansensu pornographic, grotesque, and nonsense
- ero 'erotic'
- guro 'grotesque'

- nansensu 'nonsense'
- 21 to iu no wa means
- 22 itsu made mo forever
- 23 tsuzuke-ru continue to live
- tsuzuke-ru continue ing
- 24 (N/Na) na no desu See §101 (4),



# Dai 25-ka Eiga o Miru

1 Kinō wa hisashi-buri ni hima ga dekita node, yūjin to issho-ni eiga o mi ni iku koto ni shimashita.

Yūjin wa ima jōei-shite-iru naka de ichiban mitai no wa Chappurin no 'Modan Taimusu' da to iimashita. Watashi wa sono eiga wa zutto mukashi, kodomo no toki ni ichi-do mita koto ga arimashita. Sorede, ima hyōban no Nippon-eiga o mitakatta no desu ga, yūjin ga dō shitemo 'Modan Taimusu' o mitai to iu node, sore o miru koto ni shimashita.

\* \* \*

2 Tainen omoshirokatta desu. Kodomo no toki wa, mite tada gera-gera waratte-ita dake desu ga, kondo wa ironna koto o kangaesaseraremasnita. Mazu, da-ich ni sono shinsen-sa ni odorokasaremashita. Nan-jū nen mo mae ni tsukurarete-iru noni sono atarashi-sa wa mattaku otoroete-imasen.

3 Eiga o mi owatte kara, yūjin to kissa-ten de kōhi o nominagara kono eiga no yo-sa ya omoshiro-sa o ronji-aimashita.

4 Chappurin no itai koto ga yoku wakatta to omoimasu. Chika-goro, watash mo yūjin mo sogashikute, nakanaka eiga o miru koto ga dekimasen ga, kore kara wa dekiru dake yoi eiga wa miyō to iu koto ni nari-mashita

5 Yoi eiga o miru koto wa taihen ii koto desu. Tokoroga, ima no Nippon-eiga niwa nakanaka yoi sakuhin ga arimasen. Ero-guro-nansensu no eiga ga ōi desu. Kore wa tsukuru hito nimo miru hito nimo mondai ga aru to omowaremasu.

Hontō-ni sugureta eiga to iu no wa itsu made mo iki-tsuzukeru eiga no koto na no deshō.

# Lesson 25 Going to a Movie

1 Since I had some free time yesterday, I decided to go to a movie with a friend.

My friend said he wanted to see Chaplin's *Modern Times* more than anything else showing. I had already seen it a long time ago when I was little. So I wanted to see one of the popular Japanese movies playing, but my friend insisted that he just had to see *Modern Times*, so we went to see it.

\* \* \*

2 It was very interesting. When I saw it as a child, it only made me laugh, but this time it also made me think. I was especially surprised at how timeless it is. Even though it was made decades ago, it still has an astonishing freshness about it.

3 After the movie, we went to a coffee shop for some coffee and talked about how good and how interesting the movie was.

4 I think I understand what Chaplin wanted to say. We have both been too busy to go to movies of late, but we decided we want to see as many good movies as possible from now on.

5 It is a very good thing to see a good movie. But there are not very many good movies among the Japanese products. There is just a lot of sex, sadism, and stupidity. I think this is the fault of both the people who make movies and the people who go to see them.

A really good movie, I believe, is one that never loses its appeal.

## ANSWERS pp 304, 305

I. 1. Watashi wa kinō no ban jishin ga atta koto/no o shinbun de shirimashita. 2. Anata wa ima Kyōto de ōki-na kokusai-kaigi ga hirakarete-iru koto/no o shitte-imasu ka? 3. Raigetsu kara bōsu-dai ga agaru koto/no wa tashika desu ka? 4. Watashi wa mō sugu sōsenkyō ga aru koto/no o *reijo* no *nyūsu* de shirimashita. 5. Watashi wa kono hon ga zeppan ni natte-iru koto/no o tomodachi kara kikimashita. 6. Ano kaisha ga tōsan shita no/koto wa hontō desu ka?

II. 1. benkyō suru koto ni shimasu (shimashita). 2. yameru koto ni shimasu (shimashita). 3. nomanai koto ni shimasu (shimashita). 4. suwanai koto ni shimasu (shimashita). 5. awanai koto ni shimasu (shimashita).

III. I koto 2. koto/no 3. koto 4. koto 5 koto 6 koto 7. no 8 no 9. koto

IV "Watashi ga kare kara *gite* o katta koto/no o shitte-imasu ka? Kore ga kare kara katta *gite* desu?" "Kare wa *gite* o hiku koto ga dekimasu ka? Watashi wa kare ga hiku no o kuta koto ga arimasen." "Iie, kare wa hikemasen. Sorede kare wa watashi ni *gite* o uru koto ni shita no desu."

## § 100 The Use of koto

(1) Koto meaning 'matter, thing' is used just like any other Noun  
e.g. Kore wa daiji-na koto desu. 'This is an important matter.'

Watashi ga/no itta koto o oboete-imasu ka?

'Do you remember what (=the thing which) I said?'

(2) Koto is also used as a Pseudo Noun, whose function is to give a Noun-like quality to a V (as we have already seen in § 67) as well as to other types of Predicates. It can thus function to nominalize a sentence, i.e. to change a sentence into a Noun Clause

Sentence + **koto** 'that (Sentence)'

e.g. Kinō asoko de kaji ga arimashita. 'There was a fire there yesterday.'  
Anata wa sore o shitte-imasu ka? 'Do you know that?'  
→ Anata wa kinō asoko de kaji ga atta koto o shitte-imasu ka?  
'Do you know that there was a fire there yesterday?'

NB: The modifications necessary (or preferred) in using a Sentence as a Noun Modifier (See NB: (1)-(5) in § 98) generally apply here, except (4), i.e., 'N desu' changes to 'N de aru (koto)' or 'N da to iu (koto),' rather than 'N no (koto).'

(3) The Pseudo Noun koto is also used in the following fixed pattern:

V (Dict. form) <b>koto ni</b>	<b>shimasu</b>	'I have decided to...'
	<b>narimasu</b>	'It is decided to...'

e.g. Watashi wa mō ichi-nen Nippon ni iru koto ni shimashita.  
'I have decided to stay in Japan for another year.'  
Mō ichi-nen Nippon ni iru koto ni narimashita.  
'It has been decided that I am to stay in Japan for another year.'

## § 101 The Use of no

(1) The Particle no sometimes plays the same roles as koto  
e.g. Anata wa kinō asoko de kaji ga atta koto/no o shitte-imasu ka?

'Do you know that there was a fire there yesterday?'

Koko de tabako o suu koto/no wa kiken desu.

'It is dangerous to smoke here.'

No cannot replace koto, however, when koto is used in some fixed (or idiomatic) patterns, e.g., '...koto ga dekimasu,' '...koto ga arimasu,' '...koto ni shimasu/narimasu,' etc.

(2) The Emphatic Construction using no:

...no wa...desu 'It is... that...'

e.g. Kare wa kyo-nen Indo e ikimashita. 'He went to India last year.'  
→ Kyo-nen Indo e itta no wa kare desu.

'It is he who went to India last year.'

→ Kare ga Indo e itta no wa kyo-nen desu.

'It was last year that he went to India.'

(3) The Object of Perception:

N ga/no V no o mimasu/kikimasu, etc. 'see/hear/etc. N doing...'

e.g. Watashi wa hen-na otoko ga heya kara dete-kuru no o mimashita.  
'I saw a strange man come (or coming) out of the room.'

(4) The Explanatory Sentence: Sentence + no/n desu

When the speaker intends to explain a reason, cause, or circumstance, the Predicate is followed by 'no desu'

e.g. Anata wa kinō kimasendeshita ne. 'You didn't come yesterday.'  
—Hai, kuni kara haha ga kita no desu.

'(That was because) Mother came to visit me yesterday.'

Seeing someone looking pale, one will ask:

Dō shita no/n desu ka? 'What is the matter?'

—Kesa kara atama ga itai no/n desu.

'I've had a headache since this morning.'

## I Combine the sentences as shown in the example

Ex. Rai-shū shiken ga arimasu. Watashi wa sore o shirimasen deshita.

→Watashi wa rai-shū shiken ga aru koto/no o shirimasen deshita.

1. Kinō no ban jishin<sup>1</sup> ga arimashita. Watashi wa sore o shinbun de shirimashita
2. Ima Kyōto de ōki-na kokusai-kaigi<sup>2</sup> ga hirakarete<sup>3</sup> imasu. Anata wa sore o shitte-imasu ka?
3. Rai-getsu kara basu-dai<sup>4</sup> ga agarimasu.<sup>5</sup> Sore wa tashika desu ka?
4. Mō sugu sō-senkyō<sup>6</sup> ga arimasu. Watashi wa sore o *raijo* no *nyūsu* de shirimashita.
5. Kono hon wa zeppan<sup>7</sup> ni natte-imasu. Watashi wa sore o tomodachi kara kikimashita.
6. Ano kaisha wa tōsan<sup>8</sup>-shimashita. Sore wa hontō desu ka?

## II. Transform the sentences as shown in the example

Ex. Rai-getsu kuni e kaerimasu.

→Rai-getsu kuni e kaeru koto ni shimasu (shimashita).

1. Mai-asa Nippon-go o benkyō-shimasu.
2. Shigoto o yamemasu.
3. O-sake o nomimasen.
4. *Tabako* o suimasen
5. Kanojo to aimasen.

語句

- 1 jishin earthquake  
2 kokusai kaigi international conference

- 3 hirakare-ru be held  
4 basu-dai bus fare  
5 agaru (Vi) rise cf. age-ru (Vi)

## III. Fill in the blanks using 'koto' or 'no.'

Nippon wa taihen subarashii to iu (1. ) o tomodachi kara kite, watashi wa kyo-nen Nippon e kima-shita. Nippon e kite, odoroi-ta (2. ) wa, doko e ittemo hito ga taihen ōi (3. ) desu. Asa no basu ni noru (4. ) ga dekinakute, takushi de gakkō e iku (5. ) mo arimasu. Takushi ga nakanaka konakute, taihen komatta (6. ) mo arimasu.

Sen-shū wa gakkō ga yasumi datta node, Nara e ikimashita. Furui o-tera ya butsu-zō<sup>9</sup> ga sono mama nokosarete-iru (7. ) o mite, hontō-ni subarashii to omoimashita. Tomodachi ga ii to omotta (8. ) mo, tabun ano o-tera ya butsu-zō o mita kara deshō. Kondo no natsu-yasumi niwa Kyōto e mo itte-miru (9. ) ni shite-imasu.



## IV Put the following into Japanese.

"Did you know that I bought a guitar from him? This is the guitar I bought from him."

"Can he play the guitar? I have never heard him play it."

"No, he can't. That's why he decided to sell me his guitar."

- 6 sō senkyō general election  
senkyō (Nv) election  
7 zeppan (N) out of print

- 8 tōsan (Nv) bankrupt  
9 butsu-zō statue of Buddha

## MOSHI-MOSHI

K: Rai-shū ni bonen-kai<sup>1</sup> ga nobita<sup>2</sup> koto wa, mō mina ni shirasete<sup>3</sup> kai?

T: Iya, mada renraku ga tsukanai<sup>4</sup> hito ga futa-ri iru n da.

K: Sore wa komatta na.<sup>5</sup>  
Dare-dare<sup>6</sup> dai?

T: Yamada to Satō<sup>8</sup> da yo.

K: Yamada no tokoro niwa denwa ga aru darō? Soko no kōshū-denwa<sup>9</sup> kara denwa o kakeyō yo.<sup>10</sup>

T: Un, boku ga kakete-miru yo.

T: Moshi-moshi, Yamada-san no o-taku desu ka?

Y: Hai, Yamada desu ga.

T: Masao<sup>11</sup>-kun wa imasu ka?

Y: Hai, Masao wa orimasu ga, dochira-sama deshō ka?

T: Do-kyū<sup>12</sup> no Takada<sup>13</sup> desu.

Y: A, Takada-san desu ka.

K: Have you noticed everyone that the year-end party has been postponed to next week?

T: No, I have two more people to contact.

K: We can't leave them uninformed. Who are they?

T: Yamada and Sato.

K: Yamada has a phone, doesn't he? Let's call him from that phone-booth.

T: Yeah, I'll try it.

T: Hello, is this the Yamada's?

Y: Yes, this is.

T: Is Masao here?

Y: Yes, he is. May I ask what's wrong?

T: His classmate Takada.

Y: Oh, Mr. Takada.

Thank you for everything you've done for Masao. Please wait a minute while I call him.

M: Hello.

T: Hello, Yamada? Takada here. How are you?

M: Oh, Takada. It's been a long time.

T: To get right to the point, it's about that year-end party. It had to be moved back to next week. Sorry I'm so late getting in touch with you.

M: And, when is it for now?

T: Next Saturday. It'll be still at the same place, but I haven't been able to contact Sato.

M: Since I'll be seeing him this Sunday, I'll tell him.

T: Great! I'll leave it all to you.

M: OK, I'll do it.

## 語句

1 bonen-kai year-end party (lit. party to forget the year gone by)

2 nobi-ru (Vi) extend, expand; be postponed

3 shirase-ru inform

4 renraku ga tsuk-u (Vi) get in touch with

cf. renraku o tsuke-ru (Vi) na (vaguely exclamatory ending)

6 dare-dare who and who

7 dai? (Colloquial)

WH-question, desu ka?

8 Satō (a family name,

9 kōshū-denwa public phone

kōshū (N) public

10 yo. . ., I say. . . I assure you.

11 Masao (a given name'm)

12 dō kyū (N) the same class/grade

dō the same

-kyū class, grade

13 Takada (a family name).

14 Ō oh

15 tsugō convenience

16 nobas-u (Vi) postpone, extend, expand

cf. nobi-ru (Vi)

17 De And, then

18 soitsu (Colloquial, derogatory) that one

(thing or person)

Itsumo Masao ga o-sewa ni natte-imasu. Yonde-kimasu kara, sukoshi o-machi-kudasai.

M: Moshi-moshi.

T: Yā, Yamada-kun kai?

Takada da yo. Genki kai?

M: Ō,<sup>14</sup> Takada ka, hisashi-buri da ne.

T: Sassoku da ga ne, rei no bonen-kai no koto da ga, tsugō<sup>15</sup> de,

rai-shū ni nobasu<sup>16</sup> koto ni natta n da.

Renraku ga okurete mōsiwake-nai ga.

M: De,<sup>17</sup> itsu ni natta?

T: Rai-shū no Do-yōbi na n da.

Kaijo wa kono mae kimeta tokoro da ga, Sato-kun nimo renraku ga tsukanakute ne.

M: Kare to wa kondo no Nichi-yōbi ni au koto ni natte-iru kara, boku ga itte-oku yo.

T: Soitsu<sup>18</sup> wa ii. O-negai-suru yo.

Yoroshiku na.

M: Ii yo, hiki-uketa.

## 日本の歴史—3

日本でも封建社会に商品経済が発達し、徳川幕府の支配力は弱くなっていった。そのころ、ヨーロッパの資本主義諸国が、相ついで幕府に、鎖国をやめて貿易することを求めてきた。幕府は、この圧力に負けて、1858年以後、アメリカ、その他の国々と条約を結び、貿易することにした。このことが、一つのきっかけになって、270年間続いた「徳川幕府」は倒れた。

これを「明治維新」と呼んでいる。新しい明治政府は、ヨーロッパ諸国に追いつこうとして、「富国強兵策」を打ち出した。以後、日本の産業は、飛躍的に発展したが、農民や労働者の長時間労働と低賃金によってもたらされたものであった。この結果、日本は国内市場だけではまにあわなくなり、大陸に市場を求めた。

1890年に第一回の衆議院議員の選挙が行なわれたが、投票できたのは、全人口のわずか1%にすぎなかったし、選挙権も自由ではなかった。

そうした中でも、選挙権の拡大を求める運動や、労働組合の運動が続けられた。

特に、第一次世界大戦が終わった1918年ごろから、労働運動は、一段とはげしくなった。しかし、こうした動きに対する

政府の弾圧はきびしく、年々、運動も弱められ、すべての民主的な権利や思想が否定されていった。こうして、長くて、

平和、戦争の時代が続くことになった。



▲ Perry's to Japan (1853)

## Japanese History—3

During Japan's feudal age, a mercantile economy was developed and the power of the Tokugawa Shogunate weakened. At the same time, Western capitalism was calling upon the Shogunate to open the country to overseas trade. Yielding to such pressures, the Government concluded trade agreements with America and other nations, leading to the fall of the Shogunate 270 years after its establishment.

In 1868, a new Government was formed around the Emperor, this revolution being referred to as the Meiji Restoration. The new Government adopted a policy of "Rich Nation, Strong Army" to catch up with the West and Japan began its spectacular growth, growth supported by massive governmental assistance as well as by farmers and laborers working long hours for slight wages. As industrialization progressed, Japan sought to expand to the continental Asian market.

Although the first election was held in 1890, only a mere 1% of the population was able to vote, and there was very little freedom of speech or the press. Even so, campaigns to extend suffrage and labor union movements grew, the labor movement becoming especially active after World War I. Nevertheless, the Government moved to suppress and slowly crushed these movements, denying all democratic thoughts and rights. Thus it was that Japan entered the long, dark years of World War II.

### 語句

- 1 hōken-shakai: feudal society  
cf. hōken-seido (feudal system)
- 2 shōhin merchandise, commodity
- 3 shihai-ryoku ruling power  
shihai (Nv) rule, govern, control  
-ryoku power, force
- 4 shokoku (many) countries
- 5 atsudei in succession, one after another
- 6 atsuryoku pressure
- 7 make-ru be defeated, lose
- 8 ta no-hoka no other
- 9 kuni-guni countries
- 10 jōyaku treaty
- 11 musubu tie; conclude
- 12 kikkake chance, turning point
- 13 taore-ru (V) fall over, collapse  
cf. taos-u (V)
- 14 kakumei revolution
- 15 Meiji ishin Meiji Restoration
- 16 fukoku-kyōhei-saku (lit. 'rich-country-strong-military policy')  
-saku policy
- 17 uchidas-u set forth, launch
- 18 hiyaku-teki (Na) leaping  
hiyaku (Nv) jump, leap
- 19 ta gaku (N) great amount (of money)
- 20 enjo (Nv); aid
- 21 nōmin farmer cf. gyomin
- 22 chō-jikan (N/Adv) (for) many hours
- 23 Shūgin gin member of the House

- of Representatives  
Shūgin the House of Representatives  
tates gun assembly man
- 24 okona-u (formal expression of suru)
- 25 tōhyō (Nv) vote
- 26 ni suginau no more than
- 27 genron speech (as in 'freedom of speech')
- 28 sō shita naka de in such a situation, under such circumstances
- 29 senkyo-ken suffrage  
-ken ← keneri (right)
- 30 rōdō kumai labor/trade union  
kumai union
- 31 Dai-ichi-n-seka-taisen World War I
- 32 ichi-dan to (Adv) a grade higher, more, all the more
- 33 ugoki motion; trend, movement  
← ugoku
- 34 ni taitsuru against, toward  
cf. ni taishi(ite) (Adv)
- 35 dan'atsu (Nv) oppression
- 36 kibishii harsh, rigid
- 37 yowame-ru (V) make weak/feeble
- 38 minshu teki (Na) democratic  
cf. minshu shugi (democracy)
- 39 kenri right
- 40 shisō (political/philosophical) thought
- 41 kō-shite thus, in this way

# 第 26 課

## ステレオを買う

EXERCISE  
No. 7  
Story 1

① 山田さん、いいところで会いました。これから、ステレオを買いに行くとありますが、どこか安くていい店を知りませんか。

——ステレオ! それはいいですね。わたしも買いたいと思っていたところです。いっしょに見に行きましょうか。日本橋の店がいいという話です。

② ステレオがほしいのですが。

——どれぐらいのがいいですか。

そうですね。わたしが楽しむために買うというより子どもたちのために買うのです。すぐこわしたりしますから、安ければ安いほどいいですが……。

——これはどうですか。手ごろだと思えますが……。

③ 一度音を聞かせてもらえますか。……少し音がかたいですね。山田さん、どうですか。

わたしもそう思います。向こうにあるのはどうでしょう。あれは広告でいい音が出ると言っ

ていましたよ。

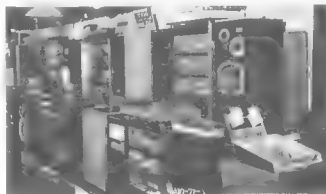
④ 少し高いですが、あなたの言うとおりいい音ですね。

——これはいいですよ。これぐらいのがよく売っています。これは聞く人の思うとおりの音が出ます。この五つのつまみは低音や高音を調節するためのものです。

⑤ これはなかなかいいですね。山田さん とうですか。

——たいへんいいですね。わたしもこれぐらいのものがほしいです。このクラスではこれほどのものはちょっとないでしょう。

⑥ わたしは今まで忙しかったためにゆっくり音楽を楽しむこともできませんでした。これからはひまを見つけてよい音楽を聞こうと思います。音楽を聞くためのひまぐらひはぜひ作りたいですね。



語句

- 1 tokoro See § 102  
2 Nippon bashi (a place name)  
3 tanoshim-u (Vi) enjoy  
4 tame See § 103  
5 to iu yori rather than  
6 kowas-u (Vi) break, destroy

- cf. koware-ru (Vi)  
7 -ba hodo See § 104  
8 te-goro (Na) handy, easy to handle  
9 kata-i hard, solid cf. yawaraka-i soft  
10 tōri See § 105

- 11 das-u (Vi) put/take out; send, mail (a letter) cf. de-ru (Vi)  
12 tsumami knob  
13 tei-on low-pitched sound  
14 kō-on high-pitched sound  
15 chōsetsu (Nv) adjust

- 16 kurazu 'class'  
17 kore hodo as (N) to this degree  
18 mitsuke-ru (Vi) find out, discover cf. mitsukar-u (Vi)

## Dai 26-ka Sutereo o Kau

1 Yamada-san, ii tokoro de aimashita. Kore kara, *sutereo* o kai ni iku tokoro desu ga, doko ka yasukute ii mise o shirimasen ka?

—*Sutereo!* Sore wa ii desu ne. Watashi mo kaitai to omotte-ita tokoro desu. Issho-ni mi ni ikimashō ka? Nippon-bashi no mise ga ii to iu hanashi desu.

\* \* \*

2 *Sutereo* ga hoshii no desu ga.

Dore gurai no ga ii desu ka?

Sō desu ne. Watashi ga tanoshimu tame ni kau to iu yori kodomo-tachi no tame ni kau no desu. Sugu kowashitari shimasu kara, yasukereba yasui hodo ii desu ga...

Kore wa dō desu ka? Te-goro da to omoimasu ga...

3 Ichi-do oto o kikasete-moraemasu ka? ...Sukoshi oto ga katai desu ne. Yamada-san, dō desu ka?

—Watashi mo sō omoimasu. Mukō ni aru no wa dō deshō. Are wa kōkoku de ii oto ga deru to itte-imashita yo.

4 Sukoshi takai desu ga, anata no iu tōri ii oto desu ne.

Kore wa ii desu yo. Kore gurai no ga yoku urete-imasu. Kore wa kiku hito no omou tōri no oto ga dasemasu. Kono itsu-tsu no tsumami wa tei-on ya kō-on o chōsetsu-suru tame no mono desu

5 Kore wa nakanaka ii desu ne. Yamada-san dō desu ka?

—Taihen ii desu ne. Watashi mo kore gurai no mono ga hoshii desu.

Kono *kurasu* dewa kore hodo no mono wa chotto nai deshō.

6 Watashi wa ima made isogashikatta tame ni yukkuri ongaku o tanoshimu koto mo dekimasendeshita ga, kore kara wa hima o mitsukete yoi ongaku o kikō to omoimasu. Ongaku o kiku tame ni hima gurai wa zehi tsukuritari desu ne.

## Lesson 26 Buying a Record Player

1 Mr. Yamada, just the man I wanted to see. I'm on my way to buy a stereo set, and I wondered if you might know of someplace that is good but inexpensive.  
—A stereo set! That's very nice. I've been wanting to get one myself. Why don't we go looking together? There's supposed to be a good place near Nippon-bashi.

\* \* \*

2 We'd like to see some stereo sets.

What sort of a set did you have in mind?

Let's see. I'm not buying it so much for my own enjoyment as for my children to have fun with. Since it will probably get broken fairly soon, the cheaper the better.

How about this one? It's not too expensive.

3 Could I hear how it sounds? ... Sounds a little harsh to me. What do you think, Yamada?

—I think so too. What about that one over there? The advertisements say it has good reproduction.

4 It's a little expensive, but the sound is good.

—This is a good set. And sets in this range are selling very well. You can adjust the sound the way you like it. These five controls here are to adjust the tone.

5 This is a nice set, isn't it? What do you think, Yamada?

—It's very nice. I'd like something like this myself. It's rare to find a set this good in this price range.

6 I've been too busy until now to sit down and enjoy good music, but from now on I want to find the time to listen to good music. Surely I can find the time for music.

### ANSWERS pp 316, 317

I. 1. (A) kaku (B) kaite-iru (C) kaita 2. (A) yomu (B) yonde-iru (C) yonda 3. (A) toru (B) totte-iru (C) totta 4. (A) hairu (B) haite-iru (C) haitta 5. (A) kakeru (B) kakete-iru (C) kaketa 6. (A) shiraberu (B) shirabete-iru (C) shirabeta 7. (A) benkyō-suru (B) benkyō-shite-iru (C) benkyō-shita 8. (A) suru (B) shite-iru (C) shita  
II. (A) 1. iku tame ni 2. shiraberu tame ni 3. iwasu tame ni  
(B) 1. neta tame ni 2. ki ga chisai tame ni 3. amari dekinai/dekinakatta tame ni  
III. 1. Yoyaku wa hayakereba hayai hodo ni desu. 2. Aeba au hodo kanojo ga suki ni narimasu. 3. Kōjō ga fureba fueru hodo kōga ga ōku narimasu  
IV. 1. tame ni 2. tōri ni 3. hodo/gurai 4. tōri, hodo 5. tōri ni 6. hodo 7. tame ni, tame ni  
V. "Ima nani o shite-iru tokoro desu ka?" "Jikken ga owatte, ie ni kaeru tokoro desu."  
"Nan no jikken desu ka?" "Maufu-ronbun no tame ni jikken desu. Jikan ga amari nakatta node, isoganakereba narimasen deshita. Isogeba isogu hodo takusan machigai o shimashita."  
"Kyōju ga itta tōri ni shimashita ka?" "Hai, mochiron. Shikashi kyōju ga watashi ni itte-ita hodo yasashiku wa arimasen deshita."

§ 102 The Use of *tokoro*

(1) *Tokoro*, as an ordinary Noun, means 'place.'

e.g. O-tokoro wa doko desu ka? 'Where is your place (=Where do you live)?'

Koko wa Natsume Sōseki ga umareta tokoro desu.

'This is the place where Natsume Soseki was born.'

(2) *Tokoro*, on the other hand, is used as a kind of Pseudo Noun in some fixed patterns like the following; here *tokoro* means something like 'a certain point (in time or in a process).'

V(Dict. form)+*tokoro desu* 'be about to... (at this moment)'

e.g. Ima ginkō e iku tokoro desu. 'I am on my way to the bank.'

V(Past form)+*tokoro desu* 'have just finished...ing now'

e.g. Ima anata ni denwa o kaketa tokoro desu.

'I have just phoned you.'

V-te-iru *tokoro desu* 'I am in the process of ...ing'

e.g. Ima rokuon-shite-iru tokoro desu. 'I am recording now.'

§ 103 The Use of *tame* (ni)

(1) Reason or Cause

e.g. Kinō kaminari ga ochita tame ni teiden ni narimashita.

'There was a power failure because of the lightning yesterday.'

Teiden no tame ni nani mo dekimasen deshita.

'Because of the power failure, I couldn't do anything.'

(2) Purpose:

e.g. Kekkō-suru tame ni o-kane o tamete-imasu.

'I am saving money (in order) to get married.'

cf. Gohan o tabe ni ikimasu/kimasu/kaerimasu. (See § 34)

§ 104 The Use of *hodo* as a Pseudo Noun

e.g. Kare wa anata ga iu hodo warui ningen dewa arimasen.

'He is not so bad a person as you say he is.'

Kyōto wa Ōsaka hodo ōkiku nai desu. 'Kyoto is not so large as Osaka.'

Anata wa Nippon-go ga jōzu desu ne. 'You speak very good Japanese.'

—lie, sore hodo dewa arimasen.

'No, not all that much (=not to the extent that you praise me).'

*Hodo*, preceded by the Conditional '-(r)eba form' (See § 95), forms the following fixed pattern:

Predicate (-(r)eba form)+Predicate (Dict. form) *hodo...*

'The more... , the more...'

e.g. Hayakereba hayai hodo ii desu. 'The earlier the better.'

Kangaereba kangaeru hodo wakaranaku narimasu.

'The more I think about it, the more difficult it is to understand.'

§ 105 The Use of *tōri*

e.g. Watashi ga iu tōri ni kaite-kudasai.

'Please write it as I say it (=the way I say it).'

Kore wa mina ga iu hodo kantan-na mondai dewa arimasen.

'This is not so simple a problem as everyone says it is.'

—Sono tōri desu. 'That's right.'

## § 106 -tte: A Contraction in Informal Conversation

e.g. O-mikoshi-tte nan desu ka? (←O-mikoshi to iu (mo)no wa nan desu ka?)

'What is *omikoshi*, anyway?'

Yamada-san kyō kuru-tte. (←Yamada-san wa kyō kuru to itte-imasu.)

'Yamada says he will come today.'



## I. Practice the pattern '...tokoro desu' as shown in the example.

Ex. (gohan o taberu)

(A) Gohan o taberu tokoro desu.(B) Gohan o tabete-iru tokoro desu.(C) Gohan o tabeta tokoro desu.

1. (tegami o kaku)

5. (denwa o kakeru)

2. (shinbun o yomu)

6. (jiko no gen'in<sup>1</sup> o shiraberu)

3. (shashin o toru)

7. (benkyō-suru)

4. (furo ni hairu)

8. (ryokō no junbi o suru)

## II. Connect (a) and (b) using 'tame (ni)'

(A) Ex. (a) Kare wa kekkon-shimasu. (b) O-kane o tamete<sup>2</sup>-imasu.

→ Kare wa kekkon-suru tame ni o-kane o tamete-imasu.

1. (a) Kanojo wa gaikoku e ikimasu. (b) Kaisha o yamemashita.<sup>3</sup>2. (a) Kono mondai o shirabemasu. (b) Iin-kai<sup>4</sup> o tsukurimashō.3. (a) Sotsugyō o iwaimasu. (b) *Pai* o hirakimashō.

(B) Ex. (a) Tomodachi to hanashite-imashita. (b) Osoku narimashita.

→ Tomodachi to hanashite-ita tame ni osoku narimashita.

1. (a) Yūbe osoku nemashita. (b) Kesa wa asa-nebō<sup>5</sup> o shimashita2. (a) Kanojo wa ki ga chisai<sup>6</sup> desu. (b) Jibun no iken o iu koto ga dekimasen.3. (a) Kare wa Nippon-go ga amari dekimasen. (b) Kurō<sup>7</sup>-shimashita.

## 語句

1 gen'in cause

2 tame-ru (Vt) save (money), accumulate

3 yame-ru (Vt) quit; stop

4 iin-kai committee

iin member of a committee

5 asa nebō (Nv) sleeping till late in the morning

nebō (Nv) late rising/riser

6 ki ga chisai-i timid, cautious

## III. Make sentences using the key phrases as shown in the example

Ex. (shiken) (yasashii) (ii) → Shiken wa yasashikereba yasashii hodo ii desu

1. (yoyaku<sup>8</sup>) (hayai) (ii)

2. (au) (kanojo ga suki ni naru)

3. (kōjō ga fueru) (kōgai ga ōku naru)

## IV. Fill in the blanks with 'tōri (ni)', 'hodo', 'gurai', or 'tame (ni)'.

1. *Sutoraiki*<sup>9</sup> no ( ) kyō wa densha ga tomarimasu.2. Kono mihon<sup>10</sup> no ( ) tsukutte-kudasai.

3. Kare wa zenzen ugokenai ( ) tsukarete-imasu.

4. Kan-ji wa omotte-ita ( ) taihen muzukashii desu ga, kaiwa wa omotte-ita ( ) muzukashiku nai desu.

5. Anata ga watashi ni hanashita ( ) shimashita ga shippai<sup>11</sup>-shimashita.

6. Nippon no natsu wa taihen atsui desu ga, fuyu wa sore ( ) samuku nai desu.

7. Anata wa taberu ( ) hataraitte-imasu ka, hataraku ( ) tabete-imasu ka?

## V Put the following into Japanese

"What are you doing now?" "I have just finished an experiment, and now I'm going home." "What is the experiment for?"

"It's for my Master's thesis.<sup>12</sup> I didn't have enough time, so I had to rush. But the more I hurried, the more mistakes I made."

"Did you do it just as your professor had told you?"

"Yes, of course. But it was not as easy as it sounded (as he had said)."

cf. ki ga ōki-i (bold, generous, broad-minded)

7 kurō (Nv) hardship, suffering

8 yoyaku (Nv) reservation

9 sutoraiki 'strike', walk-out

10 mihon sample

11 shippai (Nv) failure

12 *mosuta-ronbun* Master's thesis  
*masuta* 'master'

## WASSHOI, WASSHOI!

Mo soro-soro, o-matsuri no gyoetsu<sup>1</sup>  
ga kuru koro desu yo. O-shaber<sup>2</sup> wa  
yamete, mi ni ikimasen ka?

Mochiron, ikimasu yo. O-matsuri o miru  
tame ni kita n desu kara.

—O-mise-suru hodo rippa-na mono dewa  
arimasen ga ne.

Iya, zehi, Nippon no matsuri wa  
mite-ikitai to omoimasu.

—Hora,<sup>3</sup> fue ya kane no oto ga kikoete-  
kita deshō? Yatte-kimashita<sup>4</sup> yo.  
Takusan no hito ga katsuide<sup>5</sup>-iru  
mono ga aru deshō?

Are o o-mikoshi<sup>6</sup> to iimasu.

Hoho, o-mikoshi desu ka?

—So desu. Chiisai ho ga kodomo no  
mikoshi de, ato kara otona no mikoshi  
mo kimashita yo.

Nani o sakende<sup>7</sup>-iru no desu ka?

It's almost time for the  
festival procession to  
pass by here. Shall we  
stop talking and go see  
it?

Of course, let's go. I  
came here mainly for the  
festival.

—Though, honestly, it isn't  
really all that great.

Oh, but please. I really  
want to see a Japanese  
festival before I leave.

—Listen, can you hear the  
sounds of the flutes and  
bells? Here it comes.  
Do you see that thing  
all those people are  
carrying? That's called  
an "omikoshi."

So that's an "omikoshi"!

—That's it. The small one  
is for children, and the  
adults' "omikoshi" is  
coming later.

What are they shouting?

## 語句

1 gyōetsu (Nv) proces-  
sion; queue

2 o shaber (Nv) chatter-  
ing +shaber-u (speak,  
chatter)

3 Hora Look, There!

4 yatte-kuru come

5 katsug-u carry on the  
shoulder, play a trick on;  
be superstitious

6 mikoshi (a portable  
shrine used in Shinto  
festivals)

7 sakeb-u cry out, shout

8 Wasshoi, wasshoi!  
Heave-ho, heave-ho!

9 kake-goe encouraging  
shout

—They're shouting their  
chant of "Wasshoi, was-  
shoi!"

Isn't that a "shishimai"  
coming from behind?

—Hey, you know all about  
this. It certainly is.

I've seen photographs of  
them before. By the way,  
how many people are  
there in this parade?

—Let's see. Probably  
about a hundred or so,  
wouldn't you say?

So many! Where do they  
go?

—I'm sure they're going  
to the shrine a little way  
beyond here.

Shall we follow?

—No, let's not. Even if  
you go to the shrine,  
there's nothing special  
there.

kake-goe o kake-ru  
shout time/encourage-  
ment

10 parādo 'parade'

11 tsuite-iku accompany  
cf tsuite kuru See § 86

12 yos-u =yame-ru stop/  
refrain from

13 betsu ni (nai) (not) in  
particular, special

14 dō-te koto wa nai=dō to  
u koto wa nai It is noth-  
ing to get excited about.,  
It's nothing to surprise  
(or worry) you

Are wa "Wasshoi, wasshoi!" to

kake-goe<sup>9</sup> o kakete-iru tokoro desu.

Ushiro no hō kara kuru no wa

'shishi-mai' dewa nai desu ka?

—He, yoku shitte-imasu ne.

Sono tōri desu yo.

Izen, shashin de mita koto ga arimasu.

Tokorode, kono parādo<sup>10</sup> niwa nan-nin  
hodo no hito ga imasu ka?

—Sō desu ne... hyaku-nin gurai  
ja nai desu ka.

Takusan no hito desu ne.

Doko made iku no deshō ka?

—Tashika, kono saki ni aru jinja made  
da to omoimasu yo.

Tsuite-ikimashō<sup>11</sup> ka?

—Iya, yoshimashō.<sup>12</sup>

Jinja made ittatte, betsu-ni<sup>13</sup>  
dot-te koto wa nai<sup>14</sup> desu yo.



▶ Omikoshi



# 第 27 課

## 魚 っ り

TAPE  
No. 7  
Side 2

① 急に<sup>1</sup> 寒く なりましたね。

——寒い<sup>2</sup> はずですよ。 きょうは「大寒<sup>3</sup>」ですから。

そうですか。 あなたは 年の<sup>4</sup> わりに そういう ことを よく 知っていますね。

——ええ、わたしは ずっと 祖母に<sup>5</sup> 育てられましたから。 そんな わけで、日本の<sup>6</sup> 古い こよみ<sup>7</sup> や 行事の<sup>8</sup> ことは わりあい よく 知っているのです。 二月<sup>9</sup> 四日<sup>10</sup> が「立春」で、三月二十一日<sup>11</sup> が「春分」の<sup>12</sup> はずです。

② 「春分」は「お彼岸」<sup>13</sup> とも 言いますね。 昔から「暑さ<sup>14</sup> 寒さも 彼岸<sup>15</sup> まで」と 言いますから、「春分」までは まだまだ 寒い わけですね。

——ところで、山田さんは おそいでですね。 もう 来る はずですが……。

③ そうですね。 きょうの 魚っりは 彼が<sup>16</sup> いちばん 期待<sup>17</sup> し

ていたのですから、遅れる<sup>18</sup> はずは ないでしょう。 あなたは 初づりに<sup>19</sup> 行ったのでしょう。 どうて<sup>20</sup> たか。

——あまり つれませんでした<sup>21</sup> が、 楽しかったですよ。 朝早く<sup>22</sup> まっかな<sup>23</sup> 太陽<sup>24</sup> が 海から<sup>25</sup> 上るの<sup>26</sup> を 見ながら、 大好きな<sup>27</sup> つりを<sup>28</sup> するのですから。

④ わたしは 行けなくて 残念<sup>29</sup> でした。 ですから、きょうが 初づり<sup>30</sup> という わけです。 山田さんは 行ったの<sup>31</sup> でしょう。

——あれほど つりの<sup>32</sup> 好きな<sup>33</sup> 人が 行かなかった<sup>34</sup> はずは ないでしょう。

⑤ 近ごろは 公害<sup>35</sup> で 海も<sup>36</sup> 川も<sup>37</sup> きたなく なりましたね。 わたしたち 「釣り好き」<sup>38</sup> にとっては 悲しい<sup>39</sup> ことですね。

——た さかなも 安心して<sup>40</sup> 食べられ<sup>41</sup> ませんし。 ほんとうに 困りますね。 家の<sup>42</sup> 近くにも 昔は<sup>43</sup> よい つり場<sup>44</sup> が あったのに、こんなに 遠くまで<sup>45</sup> 出か<sup>46</sup> けなければ なりません。

なんとかすれば<sup>47</sup> 海も 川も もっと されい、てきる<sup>48</sup> はず なんてすかね。

### 語句

- 1 kyū-ni suddenly
- 2 hazu (N) supposed to. See §107
- 3 Dai-kan the coldest day of the year
- 4 no wari ni considering ; for (as in 'He looks young for his age.')
- 5 sobo grandmother of sofu (grandfather)
- 6 wake See §108 7 koyomi calendar
- 8 wariai (N/Adv) ratio, proportion, comparatively, rather

- 9 tashika if I remember right, surely
- 10 Risshun (the period when signs of spring show up here and there, around February 4 in the solar calendar)
- 11 Shunbun vernal equinox (around the 21st of March in the solar calendar)
- 12 Higan the week around March 21 and the week around Sept. 23 in the solar calendar

- 13 uo-tsuri ← sakana-tsuri fishing uo ← sakana fish
- 14 kitai (Nv) expectation, hope
- 15 hatsu-zuri the first fishing trip hatsu- the first of the new year
- 16 makka (Na) crimson, bright red
- 17 taiyō sun
- 18 nobor-u rise, go up
- 19 are hodo that much
- 20 tsuri-zuki fishing fan

- zuki (N/Na, lover/fan of ←suki
- 21 kanashi ← sad, sorrowful
- 22 anshin (Nv) peace of mind, freedom from care, feeling easy
- 23 tsuri ba fishing spot
- 24 nan toka suru muddle through, manage to do
- 25 ga ne , I dare say

## Dai 27-ka Uo-tsuri

1 Kyū-ni samuku narimashita ne.

—Samui hazu desu yo. Kyō wa 'Dai-kan' desu kara.

Sō desu ka. Anata wa toshi no wari ni sō iu koto o yoku shitte-imasu ne.

—Ē, watashi wa zutto sobo ni sodateremashita kara. Sonna wake de, Nippon no furui koyomi ya gyōji no koto wa wariai yoku shitte-iru no desu. Tashika Ni-gatsu yok-ka ga 'Risshun' de, San-gatsu ni-jū-ichi-nichi ga 'Shunbun' no hazu desu.

2 'Shunbun' wa 'O-higan' to mo iimasu ne. Mukashi kara "Atsu-sa samu-sa mo Higan made" to iimasu kara, 'Shunbun' made wa mada-mada samui wake desu ne.

—Tokorode, Yamada-san wa osoi desu ne. Mō kuru hazu desu ga...

3 Sō desu ne. Kyō no uo-tsuri wa kare ga ichiban kitai-shite-ita no desu kara, okureru hazu wa nai deshō. Anata wa hatsu-zuri ni itta no deshō? Dō deshita ka?

—Amari tsuremasen deshita ga, tanoshikatta desu yo. Asa hayaku makka-na taiyō ga umi kara noboru no o minagara, dai-suki-na tsuri o suru no desu kara.

4 Watashi wa ikenakute zannen deshita. Desukara, kyō ga hatsu-zuri to iu wake desu. Yamada-san wa itta no deshō ka?

—Are hodo tsuri no suki-na hito ga ikenakatta hazu wa nai deshō.

5 Chika-goro wa kōgai de umi mo kawa mo kitanaku narimashita ne.

Watashi-tachi 'tsuri-zuki' ni totte wa kanashii koto desu ne.

—Tsutta sakana mo anshin-shite taberaremasen shi, hontō-ni komarimasu ne. Ie no chikaku nimo mukashi wa yoi tsuri-ba ga atta noni konna-ni tōku made dekakenakereba narimassen.

Nan toka sureba umi mo kawa mo motto kirei-ni dekiru hazu na n desu ga ne...

## Lesson 27 Fishing

1 It sure has gotten cold all of a sudden, hasn't it?

—What do you expect? Today's *Daikan*, the coldest day of the year. Is that so? You know the old traditions very well for your age.

—I was brought up by my grandmother. So I have a fair acquaintance with the old Japanese customs and festivals. If I remember right, February 4 is *Risshun*, the first day of spring, and March 21 is *Shunbun*, the vernal equinox.

2 The equinoxes are also called *O-higan*, aren't they? There used to be an old saying that both hot and cold last until *Higan*, so I guess we've got some more cold weather ahead of us until the equinox.

—Yamada's late, isn't he? He should be along any time now.

3 You're right. He was looking forward to today's fishing the most, so I don't expect he'll be late. You went on that New Year's fishing trip, didn't you? How was it?

—Didn't catch much, but it was fun. Got up early in the morning and watched the bright red sun come up over the sea while we fished.

4 I'm sorry I couldn't go. Today will be my first time this year. Did Yamada go too?

—You'd hardly expect him not to have gone, the way he loves fishing.

5 But the pollution sure has dirtied the rivers and oceans. It's enough to make a fisherman want to cry.

—We can't even feel safe eating our catches, it's such a messed up situation. There used to be some good fishing spots in our neighborhood, but no more. It ought to be possible somehow to clean up the rivers and seas, but...

### ANSWERS pp 328, 329

I. (A)2 + (B)8 Kyūryō-bi mae desu kara, kare wa o-kane ga nai hazu desu. (A)3 + (B)2 Kanojo wa jū-nen mae ni kekkon-shimashita kara, mō kodomo ga ni-san-nin iru hazu desu. (A)4 + (B)4 Sono ie wa yama no naka ni arimasu kara, shizuka-na hazu desu. (A)5 + (B)1 O-tō-san mo o-kā-san mo kirei-na hito desu kara, musume-san mo kirei-na hazu desu. (A)6 + (B)7 Kare wa han jikan mae ni ie o demashita kara, mō sugu koko e kuru hazu desu. (A)7 + (B)5 *Dizuni* no oiga desu kara, tanoshii hazu desu. (A)8 + (B)6 Tsukue no ue ni *memo* o oite-okimashita kara, kare wa mita hazu desu. (A)9 + (B)9 Kare wa san-nen mae ni sotsu-ji shimashita kara, anno sensen ni naratta hazu desu.

II. 1. Anata ga sonna koto ni kyōmi o mochi hajimeta wake o hanashite-kudasai

2. Kan-ji ni nan-tōri mo yomi-kata ga aru wake ga, kono hon ni kaite-arimasu

3. Bukka ga konna-ni takai wake o keizai-gakusha ni kikimashita

4. Kōbe no niku ga konna ni orishii wake wa, ushi ni *biru* o nomaseru kara desu

5. Kare ga kekkon shinai wake wa, kare ni o-kane ga nai kara desu

6. Kanojo ga kono-goro tokuni kirei-na wake wa, kanojo ga ren'ai-shite-iru kara desu

III. 1. Kono keikaku ni tsuite nan do mo kare ni setsunai shite arimasu kara, yoku shitte-iru hazu desu. Kare ga ima kono keikaku ni hantai-suru wake ga wakarimasen.

2. Anata ga Nippon no Bukkyō ni kyōmi o motta wake wa nan desu ka? Ni-nen mae ni Ryōan-ji no niwa o mite, taihen kandō shimashita. Sono toku, Bukkyō o shiranakereba, Nippon no niwa no hontō no imi ga wakaruru hazu ga nai to oshieraremasen. Sorede Bukkyō o benkyō shi-hajimeta wake desu



I. One of the sentences in (A) is the basis, in one way or another, supporting a statement in (B). Combine them and conclude the whole sentence with 'hazu desu'.

Ex. (A)1 + (B)3 Ima jū-ji go-fun mae desu kara, *depāto* wa mō sugu aku hazu desu.

(A)

(B)

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Ima jū-ji go-fun mae desu.   | 1. Musume-san wa kirei desu.         |
| 2. Kyūryō-bi <sup>1</sup> mae desu.   | 2. Mō kodomo ga ni-san-nin imasu.    |
| 3. Kanojo wa jū-nen mae ni kekkon-shimashita.                               | 3. <i>Depāto</i> wa mō sugu akimasu. |
| 4. Sono ie wa yama no naka ni arimasu.                                      | 4. Shizuka desu.                     |
| 5. O-tō-san mo o-kā-san mo kirei-na hito desu.                              | 5. Tanoshii desu.                    |
| 6. Kare wa han-jikan <sup>2</sup> mae ni ie o demashita.                    | 6. Kare wa mimashita.                |
| 7. <i>Dizuni</i> <sup>3</sup> no eiga desu.                                 | 7. Mō sugu koko e kimasu.            |
| 8. Tsukue no ue ni <i>memo</i> <sup>4</sup> o oite-okimashita. <sup>4</sup> | 8. Kare wa o-kane ga arimasen.       |
| 9. Kare wa san-nen mae ni sotsugyō-shimashita.                              | 9. Ano sensei ni naraimashita.       |

II. Combine (a) and (b) with 'wake,' as shown in the example.

Ex (a) Watashi niwa wakaranai.

(b) Kare wa naze okotte<sup>6</sup>-imasu ka?

→Watashi niwa kare ga okotte-iru wake ga wakaranai.

語句

1 kyūryō-bi pay day

2 han-jikan half an hour

3 *Dizuni* 'Walt Disney' 1901 66)

4 *memo* 'memo'

5 oite-oku leave behind and come

6 okoru get/be angry

7 dō shite How, Why

8 -tōri (N) different ways/methods

1. (a) Hanashite-kudasai.

(b) Anata wa dō shite<sup>7</sup> sonna koto ni kyōmi o mochi-hajimemashita ka?

2. (a) Kono hon ni kaite-arimasu.

(b) Kan-ji ni naze nan-tōri<sup>8</sup> mo yomi-kata ga arimasu ka?

3. (a) Keizai-gaku-sha<sup>9</sup> ni kikimashita.

(b) Naze konna-ni bukka ga takai desu ka?

4. (a) Ushi ni *biru* o nomaseru<sup>10</sup> kara desu.

(b) Kōbe no niku<sup>11</sup> wa naze konna-ni oishii desu ka?

5. (a) Kare niwa o-kane ga nai kara desu.

(b) Dō shite kare wa kekkon-shimasen ka?

6. (a) Kanojo wa ren'ai<sup>12</sup>-shite-iru kara desu.

(b) Naze kanojo wa kono-goro tokuni kirei desu ka?

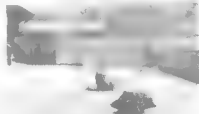
III. Put the following into Japanese using 'wake' or 'hazu'.

1. I have explained this plan<sup>13</sup> to him many times, so he should understand it well.

I can't see why he is opposed to this plan now.

2. Tell me how you came to be interested in Buddhism.

→Two years ago, I visited the garden at Ryōan-ji Temple<sup>14</sup> and was greatly impressed. I was then told that I could not understand the real meaning of Japanese gardens without knowing about Buddhism. That is why I began to study Buddhism.



▶ The garden at Ryōan-ji Temple

9 *keizai gaku-sha* economist

10 *nomasu* *nomase-ru* make/let

drink

11 *niku* meat

12 *ren'ai* (Nv) love between man and

woman

13 *keikaku* (Nv, plan

14 Ryōan-ji (a temple in Kyoto,

## IRASSHAIMASE

Gomen kudasai.

—Irasshaimase.

Ōsaka-dō' no 'Kokugo-gaku' Jiten' o  
kudasai.

—Mōshiwake arimasen ga,

tada-ima<sup>3</sup> shina-gire<sup>4</sup> desu.

Okashii desu ne. Sen-shū denwa de  
chumon-shita toki, kyō atari<sup>1</sup> hairu hazu  
da to iu koto deshita yo.

Sorede kyō yotta wake desu.

—Ima sugu o-shirabe-shimasu ga,

nan-yobi ni go-chumon-itadakimashita  
ka?

Ē...to, are wa, tomodachi no ie ni  
itta hi da kara, tashika, sen-shu no Do-  
yobi no hazu desu.

—(Chūmon-kado o shirabenagara)

A, tashika-ni chumon wa o-uke-shite-  
imasu ne. Moshiwake arimasen ga,  
kyō no gogo atari hairu hazu desu

Excuse me.

—Welcome

I'd like the Osaka-do Dic-  
tionary of Japanese Lin-  
guistics, please.

—I'm sorry, but we don't  
have it in stock

That's strange. When I  
phoned in my order last  
week, I was told it would  
be here today or so. That's  
why I came by for it to-  
day.

—I'll check for you.

On what day exactly did  
we have your order?

Well, let me see. That  
was the day I visited my  
friend's place, so it must  
have been last Saturday.

—(Checking the orders)

Yes, we certainly re-  
ceived your order. I'm  
sorry, but your book  
will be in this

afternoon.

Then, I'll come back in a  
couple of days.

—I'm really sorry about  
this.

By the way, do you have  
a complete set of *The  
History of the Japanese  
Language* published by  
Okada-shoten?

—Yes, we should have  
them all. On one of  
the top shelves at the  
far end of the room.

How much for the set?

—6,400 yen. If you're not  
in a hurry, we can de-  
liver them

In that case, I'd like them  
delivered.

Would you please?

ga....

Ja, ni-san-nichi shite kara<sup>6</sup>

mata kimasu.

—Honto-ni ai-sumimasen.<sup>7</sup>

Tokorode, Okada-shoten<sup>8</sup> kara dete-iru

'Nippon-go no Rekishi' wa sorotte-  
imasuka?

—Ē, zenbu aru hazu desu. Ano oku no  
tana<sup>9</sup> no ue no hō desu.

Zenbu de ikura desu ka?

—Roku-sen-yon-hyaku-en desu.

O-isogi<sup>10</sup> de nakereba

o-todoke<sup>11</sup>-shimasu ga....

Jā, todokete-moraimashō.

O-negai-shimasu.

## 語句

- 1 dō Suf to a name of  
a shop
- 2 kokugo gaku study of  
the national language,  
Japanese (traditional,  
linguistics  
koku go national lan-  
guage)
- 3 tada-ima (N/Adv) this  
moment, in a minute,  
Cph used when one has  
come home
- 4 shina-gire(N)out of stock
- 5 atari (N/Adv) around
- 6 (time) shite (kara  
after has passed
- 7 ai-sumimasen (Cph) very  
sorry
- 8 shoten book shop,  
publishing company
- 9 tana shelf
- 10 isogi (N) haste-isog-u
- 11 todoke-ru deliver; re-  
port (to an office

▼ Bookshops in Kanda







11 PF  
12 2

① ウィルさん、あなたは日本の文学を研究しているそうですね。

—はい。近代文学を研究しています。アンさんも日本の文学を研究していますが、彼女のように日本語がうまくないので困っています。

② あなたもたいへんじょうずですよ。彼女は日本の古典も読めるらしいですね。ところで、新聞によれば近く京都の国際会議場で「日本文化研究国際会議」が開かれるそうですね。外国のシャノロニストがおおいに来るらしいですよ。

そうらいてすね。キーン教授やクルスキナ女史のような有名な研究者がおおいに出席するそうですね。

③ おア！は専門外ですか。その話はたいへんおもしろそうですね。その成果はあなたに大いに参考になりそうですね。

—山田さん、そろそろ帰りましょうか。

雨が降りそうですから、少し急いだほうがよさそうですね。

\* \* \*

④ ウィルさん、例の国際会議はどうでしたか。新聞によるといろいろ問題があったそうですが……。ペンクラブの主催でしたが、会議の持ち方について一部の作家からいろいろと批判が出ていたらしいですね。

ええ、分科会も少なすぎたようでしたし、討論も日本語と英語だけで行なわれて、不都合も多かったように思います。世界のジャパノロジストを初めて集めて持ったことはいい／＼意義深いことだと思います。

⑤ そうですね。そのことは問題はないそうですね。それに、日本研究は戦後いっ／＼盛んになり、いろいろな研究が行なわれるようになったことになりました。

## 語句

- 1 Uiru 'Will', a given name)
- 2 sō be said to, look like See §111
- 3 yō the same way as, like
- 4 uma-i skilful, good (at), tasty
- 5 rashi-i seem to See §112
- 6 ni yoreba according to
- 7 chaku in the near future
- 8 Kokusai kaigi jō International Conference Hall
- 9 Nippon bunka-kenkyū study of Japanese culture

- 10 nese culture
- 10 Japanorajisuto 'Japanologist'
- 11 Kin 'Keene'
- 12 Gurusukina 'Grusukina' (a famous Soviet Japanologist)
- 13 joshi Mrs., Miss, Ms. (for famous women)
- 14 kenkyū sha researcher
- 15 senmon-gai (N) out of one's field/specialty
- gai out of

- 16 seika great success, achievement
- 17 ō-i greatly, to a great extent
- 18 pen-kurobu 'PEN Club'
- 19 shusai (Nv) sponsorship, promoting
- 20 mochi-kata how to hold
- 21 hihan (Nv) criticizing
- 22 bunka kai sub-committee meeting
- 23 sugi-ru too, excessively
- 24 tōron (Nv) debate, discussion
- 25 fu-tsugō (Na) inconvenience

- 26 hajimete for the first time
- cf. hajime wa at first
- hajime ni first of all
- 27 atsumari meeting
- = atsumaru (assemble, gather)
- 28 igi buka-i significant, fruitful
- igi significance; sense meaning
- buka-i deep
- 29 ichi-jirushi-i remarkable, distinguishing, considerable

## Dai 28-ka Nippon-kenkyū

- 1 Uru-san, anata wa Nippon no bungaku o kenkyū-shite-iru sō desu ne.  
—Hai, kindai-bungaku o kenkyū-shite-imasu. An-san mo Nippon no bungaku o kenkyū-shite-imasu ga, kanojo no yō-ni Nippon-go ga umaku nai node komatte-imasu.
- 2 Anata mo taihen jōzu desu yo. Kanojo wa Nippon no koten mo yomeru rashii desu ne. Tokorode, shinbun ni yoreba chikaku Kyōto no Kokusai-kaigi-jō de “Nippon-bunka-kenkyū Kokusai-kaigi” ga hirakareru sō desu ne. Gaikoku no *Japanorōjisuto* ga ōzei kuru rashii desu yo.  
—Sō rashii desu ne. *Kin-kyōju* ya *Gurusukina-joshi* no yō-na yūmei-na kenkyū-sha ga ōzei shusseki-suru sō desu.
- 3 Watashi wa senmon-gai desu ga, sore wa taihen omoshirosō desu ne. Sono seika wa anata niwa ō-ni sankō ni narisō desu ne.  
—Yamada-san, soro-soro kaerimashō ka?  
Ame ga furisō desu kara, sukoshi isoida hō ga yo-sasō desu ne.

\* \* \*

- 4 Uru-san, rei no kokusai-kaigi wa dō deshita ka? Shinbun ni yoruto, iroiro mondai ga atta sō desu ga... *Pen-Kurabu* no shusai deshita ga, kaigi no mochi-kata ni tsuite ichi-bu no sak-ka kara iroiro to hihan ga dete-ita rashii desu ne.  
—Ē... bunka-kaï mo sukuna-sugita yō deshita shi, tōron mo Nippon-go to Ei-go dake de okonawarete, fu-tsugō mo atta yō desu. Shikashi, sekai no *Japanorōjisuto* ga hajimete atsumari o motta koto wa taihen igi-bukai koto da to omoimasu.
- 5 So desu ne. Sono koto niwa mondai wa na-sasō desu ne.  
—Soreni, Nippon-kenkyū ga sen-go ichijirushiku hattatsu-shi, kuwashii kenkyū ga okonawareru yō-ni natta koto ga yoku wakarimashita.

## Lesson 28 Japanology

- 1 I hear you're studying Japanese literature, Will.  
—Yes, I'm doing research on modern literature. Ann is also studying Japanese literature, but I'm having trouble because my Japanese is not as good as hers.
- 2 But you're quite proficient. I hear she can even read the classics. Say, I see by the paper that there's going to be an international conference on Japanese culture at the International Conference Hall in Kyoto. A lot of foreign Japanologists are supposed to come.  
—That's what I hear. There are supposed to be a lot of famous scholars coming, like Keene and Gruskina.
- 3 It's not my field, but it sounds very interesting. I expect you'll find the results of the conference very helpful.  
—I guess we'd better be getting home, Yamada. It looks like rain, so we'd better hurry.
- \* \* \*
- 4 How was the conference, Will? The newspapers said there were some problems, but what was it? It was sponsored by the P.E.N. Club, but it seems there was considerable criticism from some writers about the way it was done.  
—Well, there weren't enough group sessions, and the discussion was only in Japanese and English, so some people were not very happy, I hear. But I think it was still very significant as the first gathering of the world's Japanologists.
- 5 I guess you're right. There doesn't seem to be any disagreement on that point.  
—Also it showed me that Japanology has made great strides since the War and that detailed research is being done.

### ANSWERS pp. 340, 341

- I. 1. a. ame ga furi b. ame ga furu 2. a. oishii b. oishi 3. a. yoi b. yo-sa 4. a. benri b. benri da 5. a. na-sa/nai b. nai
- II. 1. byōki rashii desu. 2. kita rashii desu. 3. oishi rashii desu 4. nai rashii desu 5. (none) 6. datta rashii desu
- III. 1. Kare wa kanemochi rashii 2. Kare wa kanemochi rashikatta 3. Kare wa senso mae wa kanemochi datta rashii 4. Watashi wa sono hito ni ni nen mae Kyōto de atta Kare wa sono toki o-kane ni komatte ite, tochi o urō to shite-ita Kare wa mukashi wa taihen kanemochi datta rashikatta
- IV. 1. (yō-ni) Please write the way I write. 2. (yō-na, I once heard a story as follows 3. (yō-ni) She gradually became able to walk. 4. (yō-ni) I did as my teacher had told me to, but it did not work. 5. (yō-na) Her cheeks are like apples. 6. (yō-ni) She prayed to God that her child would recover soon. 7. (yō-ni, She stood up suddenly as if remembering something

## § 110 Presumption or Estimation based upon an Observation

V(Conj. form)	} + <b>-sō desu.</b>	{ looks like.... 'It looks...' appears
A stem		
Na		

→ **no yō desu.**

- e.g. Ame ga furisō desu. 'It looks like rain.'  
 Himo ga kiresō desu. 'The string looks like it's going to break.'  
 Kono ringo wa oishisō desu ne. 'This apple looks delicious, doesn't it?'  
 Kono eiga wa amari omoshirosō dewa arimasen ne.  
 'This movie doesn't look very interesting, does it?'  
 Are wa sha-chō no yō desu ne. 'That man looks like the boss.'
- NB na becomes na-sasō  
 ji becomes yo-sasō

## § 111 Hearsay

Sentence + <b>sō desu.</b>	'I hear that...'
	'They say that...'

- e.g. Ame ga furu sō desu. 'They (radio, newspaper, etc.) say it will rain.'  
 Kino Hokkaidō de ō yuki ga futa sō desu.  
 'They say there was heavy snow in Hokkaidō yesterday.'  
 Shinbun ni yoruto, ano eiga wa taihen sō desu.  
 'According to the newspaper, that movie is very good.'  
 Ano nito wa yumei na joyū da sō desu.  
 'They say she is a famous actress.'  
 Ano hito wa yumei na joyū datta sō desu.  
 'They say she used to be a famous actress.'

## § 112 Appearance

V (present/past)	} + <b>rashii desu.</b>	'It seems that...'
A present/past		'It appears that...'
Na		

\* rashii desu is ambiguous in the sense that it is not clear whether the speaker makes that statement of presumption or estimation based upon his own observation or based upon information he got from some other source.

- e.g. Ame ga furu rashii desu ne. 'It seems that it's going to rain.'  
 Ame ga futta rashii desu ne. '(Since the road is wet,) it looks like it rained.'  
 Kono eiga wa omoshiroi rashii ne. 'This movie is said to be interesting.'  
 or 'This movie looks interesting.'

NB: 'N rashii desu' is slightly different from 'N no yō desu.' Both mean 'N looks like...' or 'N seems appears to be...' but 'N no yō desu' can mean that N seems to be, but is not really, as in:

She is just like a flying fish. Kanojo wa manju de tobi-uo no yō desu (or, tobi-uo mitai desu which is slightly colloquial).

'N rashii' cannot be used in this descriptive way.

## § 113 Other Use of yō

V present/past	} <b>yo-na -ni ...</b>	In the manner of
A present/past		Like
Na-na datta		Just like

- e.g. Kanojo wa tobi-uo no yō ni hayaku oyogu.  
 'She swims as fast as a flying fish.'  
 Kanojo wa Nippon-ni no yō-na kao o snite iru.  
 'She has a Japanese-looking face.'  
 Anata ga itta yō-ni (= itta tōri), are wa muzukashii shigoto deshita.  
 'As you said, that was tough work.'

## I. Fill in the blanks using the key words.

1. (rain) a. Sora ga kumotte<sup>1</sup>-ite, ( ) sō desu.  
b. *Rajio* ni yoruto, gogo kara ( ) sō desu.
2. (delicious) a. Ane no hanashi dewa, akai ringo no hō ga ( ) sō desu.  
b. Kono ringo wa akakute, ( ) sō desu.
3. (good) a. Gakusei-tachi ni kiite-miruto, kono *taipu-raiā* wa hontō-ni ( ) sō desu.  
b. Chotto miruto, kono *taipu-raiā* wa ( ) sō desu ga, hontō wa<sup>2</sup> amari yoku nai desu.
4. (convenient) a. Kono daidokoro<sup>3</sup> wa sekkei<sup>4</sup> ga yokute, ( ) sō desu.  
b. Kanojo ni yoruto, kanojo no atarashii ie no daidokoro wa ( ) sō desu.
5. (there is no...) a. Kore yori hōhō<sup>5</sup> wa ( ) sō desu.  
b. Sekkei-sha<sup>6</sup> no setsumeri ni yoruto, kore yori hōhō wa ( ) sō desu.

## II. Correct the errors, if any.

1. Kanojo wa byōki da rashii desu.
2. *Takushi* ga kimashita rashii desu.
3. Ano mise no kōhi wa oishi rashii desu.
4. Kanojo wa o-kane ga amari nakute rashii desu.
5. Konban gakusei-tachi no *pōti* ga aru rashii desu.
6. Kare wa mukashi sensei da rashii desu.

## 語句

- 1 kumoru get cloudy, dim  
2 hontō wa the truth is, in reality  
3 daidokoro kitchen

- 4 sekkei (Nv; planning, design (for a building or a city)  
5 hōhō means, method

## III. Put the following into Japanese (in the Plain style)

1. He seems to be rich.
2. He seemed to be rich.
3. He seems to have been rich before the War.
4. I met the man two years ago in Kyoto. He was in financial trouble at that time and was going to sell his land. He seemed to have been very rich a long time ago.

## IV. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms of 'yō (da),' and then translate the sentences.

1. Watashi no kaku ( ) karte-kudasai.
2. Tsugi no ( ) hanashi o kiita koto ga aru.
3. Kanojo wa dandan arukeru ( ) natta.
4. Sensei kara oshierareta ( ) shita ga, dame datta.
5. Kanojo wa ringo no ( ) hoho<sup>7</sup> o shite-iru.<sup>8</sup>
6. Kanojo wa kodomo no byōki ga hayaku yoku naru ( ) kami-sama<sup>9</sup> ni o-inori<sup>10</sup> o shita.
7. Kanojo wa nani ka omoidashita ( ), totsuzen tachi-agatta.

- 6 sekkei-sha designer  
7 hoho cheek(s)  
8 o shite-iru have (some feature)

- See § 115  
9 kami(-sama) God, Goddess  
10 inori prayer + noru (pray)

## GO-SHINPAI NE....

- A: Anata no o-kā-san, nyuin<sup>1</sup>-nasatta<sup>2</sup> so ne?
- B: Un, i-kaiyō<sup>3</sup> rashii n da.
- A: Sore wa go-shinpai ne.  
Ichi-do mimai ni ikō ka shira?
- B: Sonna hitsuyō wa nai yo.  
Sugu taiin<sup>4</sup>-dekiru rashii kara.
- A: Demo....
- B: Sore yori,<sup>5</sup> eiga ni demo ikanai?  
'Aka-hige'<sup>6</sup> ga omoshiroi rashii yo.
- A: O-kā-san ga byōki-na noni?
- B: Sore mo sō<sup>7</sup> da ne. Jā, yappari, byōin e ikō ka? Koko kara sonna-ni tōku mo nai shi.
- A: Ē, so shimasho yo.  
Watashi, nani ka katte-iku wa.
- B: Sonna-ni ki o tsukawanakutemo ii yo.
- A: Demo.... Nani ga ii ka shira?  
Kudamono nanka<sup>8</sup> dō?

- A: I hear your mother has been in the hospital
- B: Yes, it seems she's got an ulcer.
- A: You must be worried. Shall I go and look in on her some time?
- B: There's no need. I've been told that she'll be able to leave the hospital soon.
- A: But ..
- B: Why don't we go to a movie instead? I hear "Red Beard" is interesting.
- A: When your mother is ill?
- B: Well, you're right .. OK, shall we go to the hospital, then? It's not so far from here.
- A: Yes, let's. I'll buy something to take her.
- B: You don't need to bother
- A: But .. What shall it be? How about fruit?

### 語句

- 1 nyūin (Nv) entering/going into the hospital, being hospitalized
- 2 nasaru (u) .Honoric form of suru
- 3 i-kaiyō stomach ulcer  
i stomach kaiyō ulcer
- 4 taiin (Nv) leaving, being discharged from the hospital
- 5 sore yori rather than that, more than that
- 6 Aka-hige "Red Beard" (the title of a film)  
hige mustache, beard, whiskers
- 7 Sore mo sō da That's true too; I guess you're

- B: No. I was told she's not allowed to eat anything but hospital food. Seems everything else is out
- A: OK, then how about magazines or flowers?
- B: Umm .., that'd be all right
- \* \* \*
- A: Excuse me, I'd like some of these white carnations.
- C: Yes, thank you, thank you. Always a pleasure. Are they for a gift?
- A: Yes, for someone in the hospital. Could you wrap them appropriately?
- C: Here you are. Sorry to have taken so long
- A: Thank you. OK, let's go

- right
- 8 nanka (Colloquial)= nado or the like
- 9 kunjiru forbid
- 10 issai (N/Adv) all, whole, entire
- 11 kaneshon 'carnation'
- 12 mai-do every time, always
- 13 byōki mimai inquiry after a sick person
- 14 tsutsum-u wrap, pack, envelop, conceal
- 15 -te chōdai (Colloquial and Intimate) -te kudasai

- B Iya, byōin no shokuji igai wa kinji<sup>9</sup> rarete-iru sō da.  
Issai<sup>10</sup> dame rashii yo.
- A Ja, zasshi ka o-hana ni shimasho ka?
- B Un, ii daro.
- A Oji-san, kono shiroi kaneshon<sup>11</sup> o kudasai na.
- C Hai, mai-do<sup>12</sup> arigato gozaimasu.  
Okuri-mono ni nasaru n desu ka?
- A Byōki mimai<sup>13</sup> desu.  
Sono yō-ni tsutsunde<sup>14</sup>-chōdai.<sup>15</sup>
- C Hai, o-machidō-sama.
- A Arigato.  
Sā, ikimashō.



## Japanese Religion

## 日本の宗教

日本には、<sup>いんとうきょう</sup>仏教、<sup>かみち</sup>神道、<sup>きりすときょう</sup>キリスト教など、<sup>しゅうきょう</sup>多くの宗教がある。ある調査によ  
ると、<sup>しゅうきょう</sup>宗教別の人口の合計は、<sup>ぜんじんこう</sup>全人口の2.7倍ぐらいになったそうだ。日本では、<sup>ひとり</sup>一人の人が、<sup>ふたつ</sup>二つ以上の宗教をもっていることが多いのだ。この辺に日本  
の宗教の特徴がありそうだ。

日本人の大部分は、形式的には仏教徒である。しかし、たいていの家庭には、仏教の儀式、葬式、お盆、お彼岸、お正月、お彼岸の行事、小正月に参加する人が、多数は日本人の信仰者である。これは、キリスト教などの立場から見れば、きわめて奇妙な現象である。日本では、仏教伝来から初めて、比較的自覚に行なわれてきたようだ。

時代の日本人は、自然発見的に<sup>16</sup>山を<sup>17</sup>神とし、山に見えぬ<sup>18</sup>精霊が<sup>19</sup>無数に  
 いて、これらの精霊や祖先の霊が、人々を幸福にし、不幸にもすると考えた。こ  
 れらの精霊はカミと呼ばれた。人々は、カミの力を求めたものの、カミも  
 は、カミのたたりかみで済むために、宗<sup>20</sup>教儀礼<sup>21</sup>を<sup>22</sup>行なっ<sup>23</sup>てカミ御<sup>24</sup>の起<sup>25</sup>り  
 らしい。

六世紀に仏教が朝鮮をへて日本に伝えられた。朝鮮、外国から新しい宗教がはいったときは、衝突<sup>29</sup>するものは、あまり見られなかった。それは、外国の神を合わせ<sup>31</sup>て祭<sup>32</sup>ったほうがききめがありそうだと考えたかららしい。こういう意味で、日本の仏教では、ふつうの時代を通して、宗教を重要段階を画<sup>37</sup>いている。

今日、神道は、新年を祝い、雪作をいのりとか、新しく建てられる建物の安全をいのりとか、災害の予防に用いられることが多い。よう、結婚に内出をすすめる人が多い。一方、仏教は葬式やおぼんなどの死んだ人の霊をなぐさめる行事として、人々の生活につながっているわけである。

There are many religions in Japan, including Buddhism, Shinto, and Christianity. Yet according to one survey, the sum of all religious affiliations comes to 27 times the total population. This is because each person has more than one religion, a feature characteristic of Japan.

While most Japanese are formally Buddhist, there is also a small Shinto altar next to the Buddhist altar in most homes. It is customary for people to go to both temples and shrines in the same way. While this may seem very strange in Christian eyes, it has persisted naturally since Buddhism's earliest days in Japan.

The ancient Japanese believed that there were innumerable holy spirits in nature, and that these divine spirits and ancestral spirits could act to make men blessed or damned. These divine spirits were called *kami*, and men performed religious ceremonies in order to call down their blessings and to ward off their curses. This is the origin of Shinto.

In the 6th century, Buddhism was brought to Japan by way of Korea. Because it was felt that it might be more efficacious to pray to these foreign gods as well, there has generally been little outward conflict when new religions were introduced from abroad. In this sense, superstition has played a major role in Japanese Buddhism throughout the ages.

Today, Shinto rites are used to celebrate the New Year or plentiful harvests, to pray for the safety of new building projects, and to protect against accidents, as well as for many weddings. Buddhism is used for funerals, *bon*, and otherwise to placate the dead. Thus the two are intermixed within Japanese life.

### 精句

- |    |   |    |   |
|----|---|----|---|
| 2  | shintō Shintoism  | 25 | tatari divine punishment, curse         |
| 2  | shūkyō religion   | 26 | giri ritual, courtesy                   |
| 3  | betsu (N) according to the classification/distinction of ; by           | 27 | okori origin =okor-u (originate, begin) |
| 4  | gōkei total   | 28 | heru go through, via                    |
| 5  | dai-bubun (N/Adv) most  | 29 | shōtotsu (Nv) collisions, discord       |
| 6  | keishiki-teki (Na) formally   | 30 | rashi-i mono something like             |
| 7  | Bukkyō-to Buddhist (cf. Kirisutokyō-to (Christian), Kaikyō-to (Moslem)) | 31 | awase-te put together, in addition      |
| 8  | butsudan a Buddhist altar   | 32 | awase-u (Vt) put together, fit          |
| 9  | to narande ranking-together with  | 33 | ikime effect                            |
| 10 | kami-dana a family Shinto altar   | 33 | arayuru (+N) all sorts of               |
| 11 | sanka (Nv) participate, join in   | 34 | o tsūite all through                    |
| 12 | tasū (N/Adv) a large number   | 35 | jūjutsu witchcraft                      |
| 13 | kimyō (Na) strange, queer   | 36 | yakuwari part, role (in a drama, plot)  |
| 14 | denrai (Nv) coming from   | 37 | enji-ru play (a part)                   |
| 15 | hukaku-teki comparatively   | 38 | Shinnen New Year                        |
| 16 | shizen-kai the world of nature  | 39 | inoru pray                              |
|    | -kai area, field =sekar   | 40 | azen (N/Na) safety                      |
| 17 | mori forest   | 41 | sagai disaster                          |
| 18 | seirei holy spirit  | 42 | yobō (Nv) prevention                    |
| 19 | musū (N) numberless, countless  | 43 | mochi-ru utilize, employ, use           |
| 20 | sosen=senzo ancestor  | 44 | shinsen (N) in the gods' presence       |
| 21 | rei spirit, soul (of a dead person)                                     | 45 | ōshiki funeral                          |
| 22 | kōfuku (N/Na) happiness, happy  | 46 | shinda (+N) -shinde-iru (be dead)       |
| 23 | fukō (N/Na) unhappiness, misfortune                                     | 47 | nagusame-ru console, soothe, cheer      |
| 24 | megumi blessing, mercy, charity   | 48 | tsunagar-u (Vi) be connected/tied       |
|    | =megum-u (bless, give in charity)                                       |    | cf tsunag-u (Vt)                        |

# 第 29 課

## 後悔

31  
8  
1

- ① 外は 雨が 降っているようです。ときおり 風が 吹いて 雨が バラバラと まどを 打ちます。わたしは さきほどから ぼんやりしています。たばこの けむりが すうっと 一すじ 立ち上っています。わたしは さきほどから じいっと それを なかめています。ときおり まどを 打つ 風の 音に はっと われに 帰ります。
- ② あなたは どうして いるだろう……。この 間は どうして あのような 別れ方を してしまったのだろう……。今になって あなたの 気持ちが いたい ほど よく わかります。
- ③ あなたは ほんとうに 悲しそうな 目を していました。あなたは 今にも なき出しそうな 顔を していました。そして くるりと 背を 向けて、さようならも 言わずに 去り去ってしまいました。

### 語句

- 1 toki-ori occasionally  
2 para-para (to) (onomat) pattering  
3 bon'yari (onomat) absent-mindedness, not clear  
4 sūto onomat straight, quietly  
5 hito suji one straight line  
6 tachi-noboru ascend, go up  
7 jitto (onomat) fixedly, patiently, quietly, intently, motionlessly  
8 hatto (onomat) with a start, in surprise  
9 ware myself  
ware ni kaeru come to/return to oneself

- 10 imani natte now things have to come to this pass, after so long a time, at this juncture  
11 kimochi feeling  
12 itai hodo to the extent that one feels pain  
13 ima nimo at any moment  
14 naku das-u burst into tears  
15 kururi (onomat) (turn) around, wheel (about)  
16 se the back (side)  
17 se o muke-ru turn one's back  
muke-ru (Vi) turn toward  
18 iwazu ni without saying  
19 hashiri sar-u run away (out of sight)

④ わたしは 今 その ときの あなたの うしろ姿を 思い浮かべています。それは とても さびしそうな 感じが しました。その とき わたしは たいせつな ものを 失ってしまったと いう 気が しました。

⑤ わたしは ほんとうに どうかしていたのです。仕事 が うまく いかず、毎日 いらいらしていたのです。自信も まったく なくなっていました。あなたの 真剣な はげましや なぐさめも わずらわしく 感じるだけでした。やけに なって 飲んだ お酒も ただ 苦い 後悔の 味が するだけでした。

⑥ けさ 起きて 鏡を 見たら 自分でも おどろく ほど ずさんだ 顔に なっていました。

これでは わたしは だめです。今 心から 立ち直りたい と思います。たふん、あすは 旅先です。旅は と わたしを なぐさめてくれるでしょう。心身とも 元気になる であなを たずねます。

それでは、また 会う 日まで。

sar-u go away, leave

- 20 ushro-sugata view of someone from behind sugata figure, look (whole body)  
21 omori ukabe-ru imagine, recollect  
22 kanji feeling, touch, impression  
See §114 kanji ga suru feel  
23 ushina-u lose  
24 ki ga suru feel (like)  
25 dō ka shite iru something must be wrong  
26 umaku ik-u work well, be successful  
27 hagemashu encouragement  
+ hagemas-u (encourage, cheer up)  
28 nagusame consolation, comfort  
+ nagusame-ru (console)

- 29 wazurawashiku troublesome, annoying  
30 yake ni nar-u turn desperate/bitter  
31 niga-i bitter  
32 kōkai (Nv) regret  
33 aji taste  
34 kagami mirror  
35 odoroku hodo astonishingly, to a surprising extent  
36 susanda (+N) desolate, barren  
37 tachi-naor-u regain one's footing, recover  
38 tabi saki place visited, be on a trip  
tabi-ryokō (Nv) trip, travel  
39 shin shin tomo in both mind and body, physically and mentally



## Dai 29-ka Kōkai

1 Soto wa ame ga futte-iru yō desu. Toki-ori kaze ga fuite ame ga para-para to mado o uchimasu. Watashi wa saki-hodo kara bon'yari-shite-imasu. Tabako no kemuri ga sūto hito-suji tachi-nobotte-imasu. Watashi wa saki-hodo kara jitto sore o nagamete-imasu. Toki-ori mado o utsu kaze no oto ni hatto ware ni kaerimasu.

2 Anata wa dō shite-iru darō... Kono aida wa dō shite ano yō-na wakare-kata o shite-shimatta no darō... Ima ni natte anata no kimochi ga itai hodo yoku wakarimasu.

3 Anata wa hontō-ni kanashisō-na me o shite-imashita. Anata wa ima nimo naki-dashisō-na kao o shite-imashita. Soshite kururi to se o mukete, sayōnara mo iwazu ni hashiri-satte-shimaimashita.

4 Watashi wa ima sono toki no anata no ushiro-sugata o omoi-ukabete-imasu. Sore wa totemo sabishisō-na kanji ga shimashita. Sono toki watashi wa taisetsu-na mono o ushinatte-shimatta to iu ki ga shimashita.

5 Watashi wa hontō-ni dō ka shite-ita no desu. Shigoto ga umaku ikazu, maini-chi ira-ira-shite-ita no desu. Jishin mo mattaku naku natte-imashita. Anata no shinken-na hagemashi ya nagusame mo wazurawa-shiku kanjiru dake deshita. Yake ni natte nonda o-sake mo tada nigai kōkai no aji ga suru dake deshita.

6 Kesa okite kagami o mitara jibun demo odoroku hodo susanda kao ni natte-imashita.

Koredewa watashi wa dame desu. Ima kokoro kara tachi-naoritai to omoimasu. Tabun, asu wa tabi-saki desu. Tabi wa kitto watashi o nagusamete kureru deshō. Shin-shin tomo genki ni natte anata o tazunemasu.

Soredewa, mata au hi made.

## Lesson 29 Regret

1 It is raining outside. Sometimes the wind blows and the rain pitter-pats against my window. I have been just sitting here lazily for some time. With the smoke from my cigarette wafting dreamily upward, I just sit here watching it. Occasionally, the sound of the rain against my window abruptly recalls me to myself.

2 I wonder what you are doing. Why did we have to part that way? I know now how you must have felt then, know so much it hurts.

3 You looked so forlorn. You looked about to cry at any moment. Then suddenly you turned and were gone without so much as a fare-thee-well.

4 Even now I still recall the sight of your fleeting figure. It is a very saddening feeling. I feel as though I have lost something very important.

5 I must have been out of my mind. My work had not been going well and I was wracked with irritation every day. I had lost all confidence in myself. Your well-meant encouragement and sympathy seemed to me but mockery. The sake drunk to drown my self-pity left only a bitter after-taste.

6 This morning when I got up and looked at myself in the mirror, even I was surprised at how washed-out I looked.

I can not go on this way. I feel I must refresh my spirit. Tomorrow I will probably be far from here. A trip will surely do me good. When I am well again in mind and body, I will visit you again.

Until we meet again

▼An old inn in Takayama



### ANSWERS pp. 352, 353

- I. 1. moi 2. oto 3. moi 4. ki 5. kanji 6. ki/kanji 7. moi/aji 8. ki 9. moi 10. kanji  
II. 1. katchi/kakkō 2. kao 3. yōsu 4. kakkō/kao 5. yosu 6. kao 7. katchi

## § 114 Idiomatic Expressions (1): '...ga suru'

yō-na	aji	ga shimasu	'have a	taste	{ (like) .. }
	nioi			smell	
	kanji			feeling (impression)	
	ki			mind (feeling)	

e.g. Sono *sōpu* wa donna aji ga shimasu ka (=aji desu ka)?

'What does the soup taste like?'

—Henna/i/kusuri no yō-na aji ga shimasu.

'It tastes strange good like medicine.'

Kono kudamono wa kawatta/kusatte-iru yō-na/*banana* no (yō-na) nioi ga shimasu. 'This fruit smells strange/rotten, like a banana.'

Ano hito to hanashite-iruto, (marude) *robotto* to hanashite-iru yō-na kanji ga shimasu. 'When I talk with him, I feel as if I am talking with a robot.'

Kyō wa kaisha e iku ki ga shinai. 'I don't feel like going to work today.'

## § 115 Idiomatic Expressions (2): '...shite-iru'

yo-na	katachi	o shite-imasu	'have a	shape	{ of/that }
	īro			color	
	kao			face (look)	
	kakkō			appearance	

e.g. Ano tatemono wa omoshiroi katachi o shite-imasu.

'That building has an interesting shape.'

Anata wa aoi kao o shite-imasu ne.

'You look pale.'

Sono otoko wa kojiki no yō-na kakkō o shite-imashita.

'That man was dressed like a beggar.'

## § 116 A Remark on Omission

As you have probably already noticed, Japanese allows far greater freedom for the omission of sentence elements than do most other languages. The speaker often leaves out what he believes is known or understood by the hearer in a dialog between two persons where the principals to the conversation share common situations or interests.

e.g. (Watashi wa) An desu. Dōzo yoroshiku. 'I am Ann Glad to meet you.'

(Anata wa) gohan o tabe ni ikimasu ka? '(Are you) going to eat?'

This general tendency often results in constructions which may look 'illogical' or strange if translated literally into English.

e.g. Shutchō wa tsukaremasu. 'Business trips are (things that make me) tired.'

Sore wa komarimasu. 'It is (something that will cause me to be) troubled.'

The pattern in the next section may thus be regarded as typical condensation.

## § 117 'N wa N desu' as Condensed Predicates

The very basic sentence pattern with which we began Lesson 1 in this book is capable of containing virtually all kinds of predicates, with their meanings depending entirely upon the previous statement or situation.

e.g. Watashi wa tenpura o tabemasu. Anata wa?

—Watashi wa sushi desu. (←Watashi wa sushi o tabemasu.)

Watashi wa Haneda kara shuppatsu-shimasu. 'I am departing from Haneda.'

—Sō desu ka. Watashi wa Itami desu. 'I am (departing from) Itami.'

Uchi no musuko wa rai-nen Tōkyō Daigaku o ukemasu.

'Our son is going to take the University of Tokyo entrance exam next year.'

Sō desu ka. Uchi wa Keio desu.

'Is that so? Ours is (going to take the exam for) Keio (Univ).'

I. Fill in the blanks with 'nnoi,'<sup>1</sup> 'aji,' 'kanji,' 'ki,' or 'oto.'

1. Doko ka de sakana o yaku<sup>2</sup> ( ) ga suru.
2. Ni-kai o dare ka ga aruite-iru ( ) ga suru.
3. Kono hana wa ii ( ) ga suru.
4. Kare wa kyō konai yō-na ( ) ga suru.
5. Kinu<sup>3</sup> no kimono wa doko ka yawarakai<sup>4</sup> ( ) ga suru.
6. Erebetā-gāru<sup>5</sup> ga kyū-ni warai-dashita<sup>6</sup> node hen<sup>7</sup>-na ( ) ga shita.
7. Kono sarada wa tamanegi<sup>8</sup> no ( ) ga suru.
8. Kare wa kanojo to kekkon-suru yō-na ( ) ga suru.
9. Kono kōsui<sup>9</sup> wa bara no ( ) ga suru.
10. Kanojo wa tsumetai ( ) ga suru hito da.

II. Fill in the blanks with 'katachi,'<sup>10</sup> 'yōsu,' 'kakkō,'<sup>11</sup> or 'kao'

1. Ano tatemono wa kyōkai<sup>12</sup> no yō-na ( ) o shite-iru.
2. Kare wa o-sake o nonda yō-na akai ( ) o shite-ita.
3. Kare wa sha-chō no mae de nanda ka<sup>13</sup> ochitsukanai ( ) deshita.
4. Kanojo wa piero<sup>14</sup> no yō-na ( ) o shite-ita.
5. Ni-kai no ( ) ga hen da. Nani ka okotta rashii.
6. Kanojo wa aoi ( ) o shite-iru. Kibun ga warui yō da.
7. Kono jidōsha wa mita koto mo nai yō-na ( ) o shite-iru.

## 語句

- 1 nioi smell, odor, fragrance  
+nio-u (smell)  
nioi ga suru smell (of) .  
2 yak-u bake, burn, scorch, fry  
3 kinu silk

- 4 yawaraka- soft, tender, pliant  
5 erebeta-gāru 'elevator girl,' elevator operator  
6 warai das-u begin to laugh  
7 hen (Na) strange, unusual

III. Practice patterns with the key phrases

(A) Ex. (kiku no hana) Ano ie no chikaku o tōruto kiku no hana no nioi ga suru.

1. (karē-raisu)
  2. (pan o yaku)
  3. (ii)
  4. (o-cha o hiite<sup>15</sup>-iru yō da)
- (B) Ex. (sankaku) Sono isu wa sankaku no katachi o shite-iru.
1. (marui<sup>16</sup>)
  2. (dōbutsu)
  3. (hako no yō da)
- (C) Ex. (kaze) Soto de kaze no oto ga shite-iru.
1. (jidōsha)
  2. (sawagashii)
  3. (ame ga futte-iru yō da)

IV. Continue the dialogs as shown in the example

Ex. a) O-cha to kōhi to dochira ga ii desu ka?

b) Watashi wa o-cha desu. Anata wa?

a) Watashi wa kōhi desu.

1. a) Nippon no eiga to gaikoku no eiga to dochira o yoku mimasu ka?
2. a) Hokkaidō to Kyūshū to dochira e ikitai desu ka?
3. a) Kare to kanojo to dochira ga suki desu ka?
4. a) Anata wa shingaku-shimasu ka, shūshoku-shimasu ka?
5. a) Anata wa densha de kayotte-imasu ka, basu de kayotte-imasu ka?

- 8 tamanegi onion  
9 kōsu perfume  
10 katachi shape  
11 kakkō shape, appearance  
12 kyōkai church

- 13 nanda ka somewhat, kind of  
14 piero 'pierrot,' clown  
15 hik-u grind  
16 maru- round, circular

## YORU NI NARUTO...

—Tokyo dewa ima takai tatemono ga don-don taterarete-imasu.

Nippon wa jishin no ôi kuni da to kiite-imasu ga, daijôbu na n desho ne?

—Mâ, gijutsu mo shinpo<sup>1</sup>-shite-imasu kara, kitto anzen-na n deshô.

Shikashi, san-juk-kai ya yon-juk-kai de shigoto o suru no wa, amari ii kanji no mono dewa nai deshô ne.

Kono atari mo, mukashi to wa taihen-na kawari-yo<sup>2</sup> na n deshô ne.

—Kono mae inaka kara jû-nen-buri ni dete-kita chichi ga, yume no yô-na ki ga suru to itte, me o mawashite<sup>3</sup> imashita.

Sô desho ne. Shikashi, kono yo-ni machi ga kindai-teki<sup>4</sup>-ni nareba naru hodo, Nihon-rashisa<sup>5</sup> ga ushinawarete-iku n ja arimasen ka?

—There are a lot of tall buildings being built in Tokyo nowadays.

I hear Japan has many earthquakes. But are these buildings all right?

Well, engineering techniques are very advanced, so I'm sure they are safe. But I'll bet it's no fun to work on the 30th or 40th floor.

This area must be very different from what it was like in the old days.

—The other day when my father came from the country for the first time in 10 years, he was very surprised and said he must be dreaming.

I'll bet. But the more a city is modernized like this, the more Japanese characteristics will be lost, don't you think?

## 語句

1 shinpo (Nv): progress, advance

2 kawari-yô change, how has changed

-yô manner, way

3 me o mawas-u be stunned, swoon; be astonished

mawas-u (Vi) revolve, send/hand round

cf. mawar-u (Vi)

4 kindai teki (Na) modern

5 rashisa (N) -ness, characteristic quality

cf. ningen rashisa otoko-rashisa, kodomo rashisa

-rash-i. See § 112

6 bakari ka not only (but also)

7 ofuisu-gai 'office' street, -gai town, street

cf. chika gai (underground shopping area)

8 hakaba graveyard, cemetery

That's not all. The population of central Tokyo is decreasing. For example, I hear the business centers are as quiet as graveyards at night.

Really? How could all these cars and people disappear so completely? Just thinking of it gives me an eerie feeling.

—Well, look at it in the daytime too. What with being surrounded by exhaust fumes and stinking canals, this is no place for people to live in.

It's probably just that urban modernization and human happiness don't necessarily go together.

haka grave, tomb

9 hissoni (onomat) silent, deserted

10 kaidan ghost story

11 -meita (+N) seeming to be something of a

12 haiki-gasu engine exhaust

haiki (Nv) exhaust, ventilation gasu 'gas'

13 torimak-u surround

14 dobu gawa muddy river

dobu gutter, drainage ditch

15 tôtei nai by no means

16 kindai ka (Nv) modernization

17 shiawase kôfuku (Na) happiness

18 kanarazu shimo nai not necessarily/always

19 pittan (to) (onomat) the state of matching just right or fitting perfectly

—Sore bakari ka,<sup>6</sup> Tōkyo no chushin-bu no jinko wa sukunaku natte, ofuisu-gai<sup>7</sup> nado wa, yoru ni naruto, hakaba<sup>8</sup> no yo-ni hissoni<sup>9</sup>-shite-shimau sô desu yo.

Hê..., konna-ni takusan no kuruma ya hito ga kiete-shimau no desu ka....

Nanda ka, kaidan<sup>10</sup>-meita<sup>11</sup> kanji ga shimasu ne.

—Hiru-ma wa hiru-ma de, kuruma no haiki-gasu<sup>12</sup> ni torimakare,<sup>13</sup>

dobu-gawa<sup>14</sup> wa iya-na nioi ga suru, to iu wake de, tôtei<sup>15</sup> ningen no sumeru tokoro dewa arimasen.

Toshi no kindai-ka<sup>16</sup> to ningen no shiawase<sup>17</sup> to wa, kanarazu-shimo<sup>18</sup>

pittari<sup>19</sup> to ikanai, to iu koto deshô ne.



## 日本の文学—3

近代文学のあけぼのは、明治十五年の『新体詩抄』である。西欧詩の白が

においがするが、何といっても、清新の気にあふれている。散文の世界でも、

明治二十年に『浮雲』が『葉亭四迷』によって

書かれた。この小説は、それまでの小説とち

がって、登場人物も平凡な一市民であり、文

体も言文一致で、まさに新時代を代表する

感があった。

しかし、間もなく政治的にも反動期になり、文学に

おいても、古典が復活し、小説も古い文体で書かれる

ようになる。

‘イソやイギリスへの留学から帰ってきた森鷗外や

日本文は、最初、日本の現実を高いところからなが

めているような顔をしていたが、やがて自然主義の

‘イソやイギリスへの留学から帰ってきた森鷗外や

で行くようになる。しかし、彼らも晩年には『レニ

アショ』や『則天去私』の心境にいった

他の自然主義作家たちも現実分析をあらわめて、

なる私生活の記録を無批判に書きとどめた。これを私

小説といひ、日本の近代小説の大きな特徴となった。

社会的にもめざめ、自我を追求しようとする、ほん

とりの意味での近代文学が一般的になったのは、1945

年の敗戦後からといえる。



▲Futabatei Shimei



▲Mori Ogai



▲Natsume Soseki

The dawn of modern literature was with *Shintaishi-sho* in 1882. Although at times reading like literal translations from the West, these poems were still undeniably fresh. Prose too changed with *Ukigumo* written by Futabatei Shimei in 1887. This differed from previous novels in that the characters are all ordinary townsfolk and it is written in a colloquial style, making it truly representative of the new age.

However, political reaction soon set in and literature too reverted to its classical forms. Back from their studies in Europe, Mori Ogai, Natsume Soseki, and others initially wrote as people observing the Japanese scene from on high, but they soon joined with the naturalists in speaking out on society's contradictions after the Russo-Japanese War. In later years, however, they adopted attitudes of resignation.

The other naturalists too gave up on social analysis and contented themselves with uncritical records of private life. These “I-novels” are a unique feature of the modern Japanese novel. Nevertheless, modern literature in the true sense of the term did not begin until after Japan's defeat in 1945.

## 語句

- 1 akabono dawn, daybreak
- 2 Shintaishi shō (the name of an anthology of poems)
- 3 shi poetry, poem
- 4 shō selection, extract, abstract
- 5 choku-yaku (Nv) literal/word-for-word translation cf. i-yaku
- 6 nan to itte mo when all is said and done, after all
- 7 seishin (Na) fresh
- 8 afure-ru overflow
- 9 sanbun prose cf. inbun, shi
- 10 Uki-gumo (the title of a novel)
- 11 Futabatei Shimei (novelist, 1864-1909)
- 12 to chigatte differently from
- 13 tōjō-jinbutsu dramatis personae, cast
- 14 tōjō (Nv) come on stage
- 15 jinbutsu person, personality
- 16 heibon (Na) commonplace, ordinary
- 17 ichi-shimin a citizen, a member of the society
- 18 gen-bun-itchi accord of the spoken and the written languages, writing as one speaks
- 19 itchi (Nv) accord, agreement
- 20 masu-ru exactly, precisely
- 21 shin- new
- 22 kan feeling, impression
- 23 handō-ki reaction period
- 24 handō reaction; anti-revolutionary cf. handō-tekki (reactionary, cf. kikan period)
- 25 ni oite mo in too
- 26 yō-ni nar-u turn out to be
- 27 Mori Ogai (novelist; 1862-1922,
- 28 Shizen-shugi-sha Naturalist (literature)
- 29 Shizen shugi Naturalism (literature)
- 30 Nichi-Ro-sensō Russo-Japanese War (1904-5)
- 31 mujun (Nv) contradiction
- 32 tachi-muka-u confront, fight against
- 33 ban-nen (N/Adv) one's closing years, late in life (lit. 'evening years')
- 34 reninshayon (Ogai's term) ← resignation (Fr.)
- 35 sokuten-kyōshi to identify oneself with nature and get rid of one's ego
- 36 shinkyō state of mind
- 37 bunseki (Nv) analysis
- 38 akirame-ru give up, resign
- 39 tannaru (PreN) mere
- 40 shi-seikatsu private life
- 41 kiroku (Nv) record, document
- 42 mu-jihan (Na, without criticism)
- 43 kaki todome-ru write down for the record
- 44 shi-shōsetsu (a particular type of novel in which the writer confines himself to describing daily happenings around him)
- 45 shakai-tekki (Na) social
- 46 mezame-ru wake to
- 47 jiga self, ego
- 48 tsūkyū (Nv) pursuit; chase
- 49 ippan tekki (Na) general
- 50 haisen go (N/Adv) after the lost war, after World War II
- 51 haisen (N) lost war, defeat

# 第 30 課

## 先生への電話

TAPE  
No. 8  
Side 1

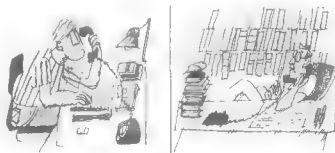
- ①—もしもし、吉田先生のお宅でしょうか。  
奥さまでいらっしゃいますか。わたし 学生時代に  
吉田先生にお世話になりました山田と申します。  
先生はおいでになりますか。  
今お出かけですか。七時ごろにはお帰りになりま  
すね。それでは、七時過ぎに もう一度お電話  
させていただきます。
- ②—吉田先生でいらっしゃいますか。わたし 山田です。  
ごぶさたいたしております。先生もお変わりなく、  
お元気ですか。ところで、近々、先生をお囲みし  
て 同窓会を開きたいと思っております。先生に  
ぜひご出席願いたいと思っております。
- ③—はい、ありがとうございます。元気でやっております。  
いつも先生がおっしゃっていましたように、

語句—

- 1 Yoshida (a family name)
- 2 oku-sama oku-san wife (Polite)
- 3 to mōs-u (Humble form of to i-u)
- 4 oide ni nar-u (Honorific form of i-ru, k-u, kuru,
- 5 sugi (N) past, after
- 6 sasete itadak-u (Humble form of suru,
- 7 gobusata suru fail to keep in touch
- (e.g. not calling or writing as frequently as one should)
- 8 itas-u (Humble form of suru)
- 9 chika jika one of these days, before long, in the near future
- 10 dōso-kai alumni meeting
- 11 dozo (N) graduates of same school
- 12 go/o- nega-u ask you to please

「千里の道も一歩から」でがんばっております。

- ④—はい、木下君も山本さんも元気だそうです。  
はい、ぜひまたそのうちにおうかがいしたいと思  
っております。ところで、先生は毎日大学へ  
出ておられますか。一度研究室の方へもおじゃま  
したいと思っております。先生がなさった翻訳の  
お仕事たいへんごりっぱなものだと評判です。
- ⑤—それでは、みなてお待ちいたしております。木下君  
が四時ごろお宅へ車でおむかえにまいります。  
それでは、きょうはこれで失礼いたします。



- 12 sen-ri (N) thousand ri (1 ri=244 miles)
- 13 ip-po one step
- 14 Sen-ri no michi mo ip po kara (proverb) A journey of a thousand miles must begin with the first step. (High buildings have low foundations.)
- 15 Kinoshita (a family name,

- 16 Yamamoto (a family name,
- 17 ukaga-u (Humble ask; visit
- 18 orare-ru (Honorific form of i-ru)
- 19 kenkyū-shitsu study room, laboratory
- 20 hon'yaku (Nv) translation
- 21 mukae coming for; going to see  
+mukae-ru

## Dai 30-ka Sensei e no Denwa

- 1—Moshi-moshi, Yoshida-sensei no o-taku deshō ka?  
Oku-sama de irasshaimasu ka? Watashi gakusei-jidai ni Yoshida-sensei ni o-sewa ni narimashita Yamada to mōshimasu.  
Sensei wa o-ide ni narimasu ka?  
Ima o-dekake desu ka? Shichi-ji goro niwa o-kaeri ni narimasu ne.  
Soredewa, shichi-ji sugi ni mō ichi-do o-denwa-sasete-itadakimasu.

\* \* \*

- 2—Yoshida-sensei de irasshaimasu ka? Watashi Yamada desu.  
Go-busata-itashite-orimasu. Sensei mo o-kawari naku, o-genki desu ka? Tokorode, chika-jika, sensei o o-kakomi-shite dōsō-kai o hirakitai to omotte-orimasu. Sensei ni zehi go-shusseki negitai to omoi-mashite....

- 3—Hai, arigatō gozaimasu. Genki de yatte-orimasu. Itsumo sensei ga osshatte-imashita yō-ni, "Sen-ri no michi mo ip-po kara" de ganbatte-orimasu.

- 4—Hai, Kinoshita-kun mo Yamamoto-san mo genki da sō desu.  
Hai, zehi mata sono uchi ni o-ukagai-shitai to omotte-orimasu.  
Tokorode, sensei wa mai-nichi daigaku e dete-oraremasu ka? Ichi-do kenkyū-shitsu no hō e mo o-jama-shitai to omotte-orimasu. Sensei ga nasatta hon'yaku no o-shigoto taihen go-rippa-na mono da to hyōban desu.

- 5—Soredewa, mina de o-machi-itashite-orimasu. Kinoshita-kun ga yo-ji goro o-taku e kuruma de o-mukae ni marimasu.  
Soredewa, kyō wa korede shitsurei-itashimasu.

## Lesson 30 Telephoning a Teacher

- 1—Hello, is this Professor Yoshida's house? Mrs. Yoshida? This is Mr. Yamada, a former student of Professor Yoshida's. Is the Professor in? Oh, he's out now, is he? But he'll be back around seven o'clock, will he? If I may then, I'll call back around seven.

\* \* \*

- 2 Professor Yoshida? This is Yamada. I'm sorry to have been out of touch for so long. .. How have you been? The reason I called is that we would like to have a reunion and would like to invite you. We thought if you could please come ..

- 3—Yes, thank you. I'm fine. I'm plugging away one step at a time just like you told us to.

- 4—Yes, Mr. Kinoshita and Miss Yamamoto are fine.  
Yes, we would all like to come and see you some time. Do you go to the university every day? .. Someday I would like to visit you at your office there too. Everybody's talking about what an excellent job you did with that translation

- 5—Then we will all be looking forward to seeing you then. Mr. Kinoshita will be around about four to pick you up.  
Thank you, and good-bye until the reunion.

### ANSWERS pp 364, 365.

- I. 1. kakareru, o-kaku ni naru 2. matareru; o-machi ni naru 3. kawareru; o-kai ni naru 4. akareru, o-ake ni naru 5. omowareru, o-omoi ni naru  
II. 1. mōshimasu 2. irasshaimasu/oraremasu 3. oraremasu/-irasshaimasu 4. kaerareru/o-kaeri ni naru 5. o-machi-shitemo 6. o-kake (ni natte-) 7. Donata 8. o-kyaku-san 9. ossharu/iwareru 10. o-machi ni natte-irasshaimasu 11. o-matase-shita 12. go-yō 13. mōshimasu 14. marimashita 15. o-kaku ni natte/kakareta 16. o-hanashi 17. o-kiki-shitai 18. ukagai mashita 19. itadaita 20. gozaimasu  
III. O wakare no hi ga tōtō kimashita Watashi ga Kyōto o tatta hi wa ame deshita Tomodachi no Tarō san ga mi okuri ni eku e kite-kuremashita Kare no o-kā san mo kite-kudasamashita. O kā san wa "Shujin mo mairu tsumori deshita ga, kyuyō no tame ni mairu koto ga dekimasen deshita. Anata ni yoroshiku to mōshite-mashita" to osshaimashita O-kā san wa utsukushii *Ieburu koreu* o kudasa mashita Watashi no tame ni somete-kudasatta no desu Tarō san ga "Goran Koko ni anata no namae ga kan-ji de somete-aru yo" to imashita

Hassha no beru ga nani-hajimemashita. O ka san wa, "Mata irasshai ne O machi shite imasu" to osshaimashita

## § 118 The System of 'Honorifics'

Japanese is a language having an intricate system of what are generally called 'honorific' forms, by means of which the speaker expresses his particular respect for the person mentioned in a sentence.

The prefix *o-* or *go-* attached to a Noun referring to a person or a thing belonging to the person is one such form, as you have already seen, especially in the Conversation sections. These prefixes can be attached to adjectives too when they show the state of the person the speaker respects. Generally speaking, *o-* is attached to native Japanese Nouns or Adjectives, and *go-* to Chinese-origin Nouns or Adjectives.

e.g. *Anata no o-tō-san no go-iken wa dō desu ka?*

'What is your father's opinion?'

cf. *Watashi no chichi no iken wa desu.* 'My father's opinion is....'

*Imōto-san wa o-kirei desu ne.* '(Your) sister is pretty, isn't she?'

cf. *Kare no imōto wa kirei desu.* 'His sister is pretty.'

Verbs also take the Honorific forms when the speaker wants to express respect for the person who performs the action expressed by the Verb. There are two general ways by which you can make the Honorific forms: one is to use the Passive form (§ 71), and the other is to use the pattern '*o-/go-* V(Conj. form) ni narimasu (Plain style. *naruu*).

e.g. *Yamada-san ga kore o kakimashita.* 'Mr. Yamada wrote this.' (Neutral)

→ *Yamada-san ga kore o kakaremashita.* (Honorific by Passive)

→ *Yamada-san ga kore o o-kaki ni narimashita.* (Honorific)

*Ano hito wa nani o kenkyū-shite-imasu ka?* (Neutral)

'What is he doing research on?'

→ *Ano hito wa nani o kenkyū-sarete-imasu ka?* (Honorific by Passive)

→ *Ano hito wa nani o go-kenkyū ni natte-imasu ka?* (Honorific)

There are some Honorific forms, however, where it is difficult to find any formal similarities with their 'neutral' counterparts, and these are the ones that are most frequently used in daily conversation.

Neutral	Honorific
<i>ikimasu</i> ('go'), <i>kimasu</i> ('come'), <i>imasu</i> ('be, stay')	<i>irasshaimasu</i> or <i>oide ni narimasu</i>
<i>imasu</i> ('say')	<i>osshaimasu</i>
<i>mimasu</i> ('see')	<i>go-ran ni narimasu</i>

e.g. *Anata wa ashita doko e irasshaimasu ka?* 'Where are you going tomorrow? —Kyōto e ikimasu. 'I am going to Kyoto.'  
*Sha-chō-san wa irasshaimasu ka?* 'Is your President in?'  
 —Hai, imasu. —'Yes, he is in.'

## § 119 The Humble Forms

The speaker can express his respect not only by using the Honorific forms as seen above, but also by using 'Humble' Verb forms to refer to himself and other members of his group. What he does is to 'elevate' others relatively by 'lowering' himself. Most frequently used Humble forms include: *mōshimasu* in place of *imasu* (e.g. *Watashi wa Jon to mōshimasu.* 'I call myself John.' or 'My name is John.');

*mairimasu* in place of *ikimasu* or *kimasu* (e.g. *Mō ichi-do mairimasu.* 'I will come again.');

and *itashimasu* in place of *shimasu*.

## § 120 Additional Remark

The Honorific and Humble forms should be distinguished from the Polite and Plain styles of § 41, although all are related to the speaker's intention to be polite.

In the Polite style, the politeness is always directed to the person spoken to, whereas in the honorific (or humble) expressions it is directed to the particular person mentioned in the sentence, who may or may not be the hearer

*Ano hito wa sō itta.* → *Ano hito wa sō osshatta*  
 'He said so.'  
*Ano hito wa sō imashia.* → *Ano hito wa sō osshaimashita.*



## I. Make the honorific forms as shown in the example

Ex yomu → yomareru; o-yomi ni naru.

1. kaku
2. matsu
3. kau
4. akeru
5. omou

## II. Replace the underlined parts with their Honorific or Humble forms

Buraun: Gomen kudasai. Watashi wa Buraun to imasu Yamada sensei wa imasu ka?

Joshu<sup>1</sup>: Yamada-sensei wa ima kaigi ni dete-imasu.

Mō sugu kaeru to omoimasu ga...

B: Ā, sō desu ka. Sukoshi koko de mattemo ii desu ka?

J: Kono isu ni kakete-kudasai.

Yamada: Dare ka kyaku desu ka?

J: Hai, Buraun-san to iu kata ga saki-hodo kara matte-imasu.

Y: Ā, sō desu ka. Mataseta yō desu ne. Watashi ga Yamada desu ga donna yō<sup>2</sup> desu ka?

B: Watashi wa Buraun to imasu Igitoku kara kimashita Sensei no kata hon o yonde, zehi ichi-do hanashi o kikitai to omotte tazunemashita.

Koko ni watashi no kyōju ni moratta shōkai-jō<sup>3</sup> ga arimasu.

## 語句

- 1 joshu assistant
- 2 yō = yōji errand, business
- 3 shōkai-jō letter of introduction/  
recommendation

- 4 tōtō at last, finally
- 5 tats-u start, leave
- 6 ru-okur-u see off
- 7 shujin master; husband

## III. Put the following into Japanese, using Honorific and Humble forms where appropriate.

The day of parting finally<sup>4</sup> came. It was raining the day I left<sup>5</sup> Kyoto. My friend Taro came to the station to see me off.<sup>6</sup> His mother came too. She said, "My husband<sup>7</sup> was going to come too, but could not come because of unexpected business. He sends you his best regards." She gave me a beautiful tablecloth.<sup>8</sup> She had dyed<sup>9</sup> it for me. "Look,<sup>10</sup>" Taro said, "here is your name in *kanji*." The bell signaling the train's departure<sup>11</sup> began to ring. His mother said, "Come again. We'll be waiting for you."

▼ Kyoto



- 8 teburi-kurusi 'tablecloth'
- 9 some-ru dye
- 10 goran (Honorific) (Imperative) Look
- 11 hassha (Nv) starting of train, bus,

etc

## MOCHIRON YOROKONDE ....

—Yā, o-matase-shimashita. Kikaku<sup>1</sup>-bu no Tanaka to moshimasu. Daitai<sup>2</sup> no o-hanashi wa Kawai<sup>3</sup>-bu-cho kara kiite-  
orimasu ga, kyō wa saishū-teki<sup>4</sup>-na puran<sup>5</sup> o o-mochi-itadaita wake desu ne.

Hai, watashi-domo no hō demo, sono go iroiro to kentō<sup>6</sup> o kasanemashita kekka, kono mae ni o-shimeshi<sup>7</sup>-kudasatta dai-san-puran de ikō, to iu koto ni iken ga itchi-shimashita.

Kore ga keikaku-sho<sup>8</sup> desu.

—Naruhodo... kore de ikimasuto, hiyō<sup>9</sup> no ten<sup>10</sup> demo, daibu raku ni narimasu ne....

Chodo yokatta. Jitsu wa<sup>11</sup> gogo san-ji kara, watashi-domo no kikaku-kaigi ga gozaimasu node, yoroshikattara,<sup>12</sup> obuzaba<sup>13</sup> to shite go-shusseki-kudasaimasen ka?

Sorry to have kept you waiting. I'm Mr. Tanaka of the Planning Division. I've gotten most of the story from Mr. Kawai. I understand you've brought the final plans today?

Yes After looking everything over, we've agreed on Plan 3 that you showed us last time. And I have the plan right here.

Now let's see. If we do it this way, financially too, it is fairly easy. You've come at just the right time. Actually we're having a planning meeting at 3 p.m. today. If you'd like why don't you attend as an observer?

語句

- 1 kikaku (Nv) planning
- 2 daitai (N) outline
- 3 Kawai (a family name)
- 4 saishū-teki (Na) final
- 5 puran 'plan'
- 6 kentō (Nv) investigation, scrutiny, examination
- 7 shimes-u show, suggest
- 8 keikaku-sho plan, blueprint
- 9 hiyō expense, cost
- 10 ten point
- 11 jitsu wa the fact is, to tell the truth
- 12 yoroshikattara if you don't mind, if you like
- 13 obuzaba 'observer'
- 14 yorokonde with pleasure
- 15 kensetsu (Nv) construction, founding
- 16 hakobi arrangement, stage, process

Of course, I'd be glad to. I expect the construction of the new factory will probably begin the beginning of next year. Before that we'll send five or so of our staff to secure the site.

We're not limited to construction work, so if there's anything else we can do to help, please don't hesitate to say so.

—Say, we seem to have a couple of hours before the meeting. Why don't we go for lunch together?

Yes, thank you.

—Fine. Hey, Nishida, get us a taxi, will you? And tell Mr. Kawai that I'll be out for a while with our guest. Well, let's go. We can leave the plan here with the secretary. Please come this way.

- 17 genchi (N) on the spot
- 18 -mei (Count) for persons
- 19 yōchi site for
- 20 kakuho (Nv) ensure, secure
- 21 kōji (Nv) construction, building work
- 22 hōmen direction, area
- 23 kyōryoku (Nv) cooperation
- 24 oshim-u grudge, hold dear, regret
- 25 nan nani to anything, whatever it is
- 26 moshitsuke-ru give orders, bid
- 27 Nishida (a family name)
- 28 tamae (Polite request usually to juniors)
- 29 husho secretary
- 30 azuke-ru give in trust, deposit

Mochiron yorokonde<sup>14</sup> shusseki-sasete itadaki-masho.

—Rai-nen no hajime niwa, shin-kōjō no kensetsu<sup>15</sup> to iu hakobi<sup>16</sup> ni naru hazu desu ga, sono mae ni genchi<sup>17</sup> ni watashi-domo no sha-in o go-mei<sup>18</sup> bakari okuri, yōchi<sup>19</sup> no kakuho<sup>20</sup> no shigoto o sasetai to omotte-imasu.

Watashi-domo mo, kōji<sup>21</sup>-kankei dake de naku, sono hōmen<sup>22</sup> demo kyōryoku<sup>23</sup> o oshimanai<sup>24</sup> tsumori desu kara, nan-nari<sup>25</sup> to o-mōshitsuke<sup>26</sup>-kudasai.

—Ikaga deshō, kaigi made ni mada ni-jikan bakari aru yō desu shi, go-issho-ni shokuji demo?

Ê, kekkō desu.

—Jā.... Ā, Nishida<sup>27</sup>-kun, kuruma o yonde-kuren ka ne? Sore kara, o-kyaku-sama o o-tsure-shite sukoshi gaishutsu-shite-iru to Kawai-bu-chō ni tsutaete-ote-kure-tamae.<sup>28</sup> Jā, dekaemasho. Keikaku-sho wa hisho<sup>29</sup> ni azukete.<sup>30</sup> okimasho. Dozo, kochira desu.

## はぎの露 —「源氏物語」から—

明石中宮さまは、近く御所にお帰りにならなければなりませんので、薬の  
 1.3 上げ、おやすみになっているおへやに、お別れのごあいさつを申しあげるため  
 に、いらっしゃいました。おりしも秋風が吹いて、はぎが、ほの白く夕やみの  
 中<sup>10</sup>にゆらいでりました。

[illegible]

なりながら、わ氏の君ははらはらとみだをおぼしになって、お歌をお返しになり、露と争って消えてゆくこの世に、だれも先に死に、だれが生、ということがないようにしたいものですとなげられました。

このようにして、紫の上は、明け方<sup>ひらき うき</sup> 近く<sup>あ ちかく</sup>、中宮<sup>ちゅうぐう</sup>にお手を取られながら、<sup>38</sup>  
露<sup>つゆ</sup>のように、はかなくおなくなりになりました。<sup>39</sup>

▼A scene from *Genji Monogatari*



登場人物は○印  
＝夫婦関係  
親子関係

桐壺天皇

〔柴上〕

源氏

明石上

明石中宮

今上天皇

Dew on the Clover—from *The Tale of Genji*

As the Empress Akashi was soon to have to return to the Imperial Court, she went to the room where the ill Lady Murasaki was resting to bid her farewell. As they were talking, the autumn wind blew and the clover fluttered blazing white in the twilight.

Prince Genji came upon this scene and, surprised at seeing Lady Murasaki up and gazing out on the garden, asked if it was all right for her to be up and if she felt better and happier by spending some time with the Empress. Lady Murasaki, moved so deeply by Prince Genji's tender considerations, composed a poem comparing her fleeting life to the soon-disappearing dew on the clover.

Watching the clover in the garden as it shook and seemed indeed to drop its dew, Prince Genji shed profuse tears and composed a poem in reply lamenting that it is not possible in this world where men's lives vie with the dew for transitoriness to break the pattern of some's passing away first and others' staying behind.

In this way, her hand clasped by the Empress, Lady Murasaki ended her dewy brief life and passed away near dawn.

- |    |  |   |   |
|----|--|---|---|
| 1  | Akashi Chûgû Empress Akashi<br>Chûgû (the title given to the<br>Crown Princess)  | 19 itame-ru hurt, give pain, injure   | 20 uta poem, song   |
| 2  | Goshô residence of a member of<br>the Imperial family  | 21 tsuyu dewdrop, dew   | 22 kie-sa-ru vanish, disappear                                |
| 3  | Murasaki-no-ue (the name of the wife<br>of Hikaru Genji; the current empress;<br>mother-in-law of Akashi no Chûgû)   | 23 de arô be likely to  | 24 jishin oneself   |
| 4  | môshi-age-ru (Humble form of -u)   | 25 selimei = inochi life  | 26 hakana-sa transiency ~hakana-i<br>(short-lived, momentary) |
| 5  | orishimo (Archaic) just then, on that<br>occasion  | 27 yure-ugok-u sway, quake, heave   | 28 yure-ru (Vi) shake, rock                                   |
| 6  | aki-kaze cold autumnal wind  | 29 kobore-ochi-ru overflow and drop off   | 30 kobore-ru (Vi) fall, spill                                 |
| 7  | hagi (the name of a flower)  | 31 hara-hara-to (onomat. (the way in<br>which things very light and feeble<br>drop one after another. | 32 kaes-u (Vi) answer; return                                 |
| 8  | hono-jiroku (Adv) pale white, dimly  | 33 araso-u compete, dispute, struggle   | 34 kiete-yuku-i die away, vanish<br>-te-yuku-u -te-ik-u       |
| 9  | yû yami evening twilight, dusk   | 35 saki ni ahead, previously  | 36 iki-nokor-u survive, live longer than<br>possible          |
| 10 | yurag-u sway, shake; flicker   | 37 tai mono desu would like to if<br>possible   | 38 nagek-u lament, grieve                                     |
| 11 | Genji-no-Kimi His excellency/high-<br>ness Genji<br>Genji = Hikaru Genji (the main<br>character of <i>The Tale of Genji</i> )<br>Kimi honorable person; prince | 39 ake gata (N/Adv) at daybreak   | 40 te o toru grasp, take another's hand                       |
| 12 | futon quilt  | 39 nakunaru-u (the -shim-u), disappear  |   |
| 13 | nu body  |   |   |
| 14 | taisô = totemo, hijô-ni  |   |   |
| 15 | yoroshii all right   |   |   |
| 16 | hume-gimi princess   |   |   |
| 17 | hare-ru turn nice, clear up  |   |   |
| 18 | kokoro-zukai care, consideration   |   |   |

# APPENDIX I

## Conjugation of Verbs, Auxiliaries, Adjectives, and Copula

		Dictionary form	Conjunctive form	te form	ta form (Past)	tara form (Conditional)	tari form
VERBS	1st Group	kak-u	kaku	kaite	kaita	kaitara	kaitari
		oyog-u	oyogi	oyode	oyoda	oyodara	oyodari
		os-u	oshi	oshite	oshita	oshitara	oshitari
		yom-u	yomi	yonde	yonda	yondara	yondari
		shin-u	shini	shinde	shinda	shindara	shindari
		yob-u	yobi	yonde	yonda	yondara	yondari
	2nd Group	mats-u	machi	matte	matte	matte	matte
		nor-u	nori	notte	notte	notte	notte
	Irreg	kai(u)-u	kai	katte	katta	kattara	kattari
		tabe-u	tabe	tabete	tabete	tabete	tabete
	Irreg	mi-u	mi	mite	mita	mitara	mitari
		suru	shi	shite	shita	shitara	shitari

AUXILIARIES	Polite	-masu	-masite	-mashite	-mashite	-mashite	-mashite
	Passive	-(r)are-ru	-(r)are	-(r)arete	-(r)arete	-(r)aretara	-(r)aretari
	Causative	-(s)ase-ru	-(s)ase	-(s)asete	-(s)asete	-(s)asetara	-(s)asetari
Adj.		samu-i	samuku	samukute	samukatta	samukattara	samukattari
Copula		da	de	datta	datta	dattara	dattari
		desu	deshite	deshite	deshite	deshite	deshite

Presumptive/Volitional form	Imperative form	reba form (Conditional)	Negative form	Passive form	Potential form	Causative form
kakō	kake	kakeba	kakanai	kakareru	kakeru	kakasuru
oyogō	oyoge	oyogebe	oyoganaï	oyogareru	oyogeru	oyogaseru
osō	ose	oseba	osanaï	osareru	oseru	osaseru
yomō	yome	yomeba	yomanaï	yomareru	yomeru	yomaseru
shinō	shine	shineba	shinanaï	shinareru	shineru	shinaseru
yobō	yobe	yobebe	yobanaï	yobareru	yoberu	yobaseru
matō	mate	mateba	matanaï	matareru	materu	mataseru
norō	nore	noreba	noranaï	norareru	noreru	noraseru
kao	koe	koebe	kawanaï	kawareru	kaeru	kawaseru
tabeyō	tabero	tabereba	tabenai	taberareru	taberareru	tabesaseru
miyō	miro	miereba	minai	mirareru	mirareru	misaseru
shiyō	shiro	sureba	shinai	sareru	(desu) korareru	saseru
koyō	(seyo) koi	kureba	konai	korareru	(kore) korareru	kosaseru
masō	(-mase)	(-masureba)	masen			
-(r)areyō	-(r)arero	-(r)arereba	-(r)arenai			
-(s)aseyō	-(s)asero	-(s)asereba	-(s)asenai	(s)aserareru	(s)aseru	(s)aseraseru
samukarō		samukereba	samuku nai			
darō		nara	de wa nai			
deshō			de wa anaseru			

- NB (1) All 1st Group Verbs whose stems end with the same consonant are conjugated in the same way. For instance, *uru* ('sell'), *toru* ('take'), and *kaeru* ('go home') are conjugated in the same way as *noru* above. The only exception to this general rule is *iku* ('go'), which, although its stem ends with 'k', is conjugated like *itte*, *ittu*, *ittara*, *ittari*, *iko*, *ike*, *ikeba*, *ikanaï*, *ikareru*, *ikeru*, *ikaseru*.
- (2) The grouping of a Verb into 1st Group or 2nd Group is indicated in the footnote where it first appears. In this book, 1st Group Verbs are shown as '...-u', and 2nd Group Verbs as '...-ru'.
- (3) 'Na Adjectives' consisting of the Stem (the form preceding *na*) plus a Copula, conjugation is done with the Copula

- (4) The Presumptive/Volitional forms of Verbs expressing voluntary actions indicate 'volition' as in will, intention, or invitation (See § 49 & § 76), and those of Verbs expressing non-voluntary actions, events, or states, Adjectives; and the Copula indicate the speaker's presumption or assumption.
- (5) The negative forms of Verbs are conjugated in almost the same way as 'i Adjectives', becoming *kakanai*, *kakanakatta*, *kakanakereba*, etc. For 'nakute', however, '-naide' or '-zu-ni' is sometimes used, as in *Kakanaide kudasai*, ('Please do not write.') and *Kakazu ni kaerimashita* ('I went home without writing.')

## APPENDIX II

## Numerals and the Counting System

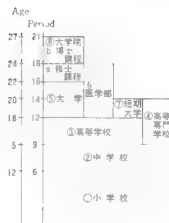
	Chinese-English Numerals		Abstract Number + Counter (See §14)					Native Japanese	
	Abstract Numbers		+ mai	+ satsu	+ hon	+ dai	+ tsū	Things	People
1	ichi	ichi	ma	is-satsu	ip-pon	ichi dai	it tsu	hato-tsu	hato-ri
2	ni	ni-mai	ni-satsu	ni-hon	ni-dai	ni-tsū	futa-tsu	futa-tsu	futa-ri
3	san	san-mai	san-satsu	san-bon	san-dai	san-tsū	mit-tsu	san-min	
4	shi	yo(n)-mai	yon-satsu	yon shi } -hon	yon-dai	yon-tsū	yot-tsu	yo-min	
5	go	go-mai	go-satsu	go-hon	go-dai	go-tsū	itsu-tsu	go-min	
6	roku	roku mai	roku-satsu	rop-pon	roku dai	roku-tsū	mut tsu	roku-min	
7	shichi	shichi } -mai	nana-satsu	nana-hon	nana-dai	nana-tsū	nana-tsu	shichi } -nin	
8	hach	hachi-mai	has-satsu	hachi hon	hachi-dai	hachi-tsū	yat-tsu	hachi-min	
9	kyū	kyū-mai	kyū-satsu	kyū hon	kyū-dai	kyū-tsū	kokonō-tsu	kyū-min	
10	jū	jū-mai	jus-satsu	jup-pon	jū-dai	jū-tsū	tō	jū-min	

11	jū-ichi	100	hyaku	10,000	ichi man
12	jū-ni	156	hyaku go-jū-roku	100,000	jū man
13	jū-san	200	ni-hyaku	1,000,000	hyaku-man
14	jū-shi, jū-yon	300	san-byaku	4,000,000	yon hyaku-man
15	jū-go	400	yon hyaku	10,000,000	sen man
16	jū-roku	500	go hyaku	30,000,000	san zen man
17	jū shichi, jū nana	600	rop pyaku	100,000,000	ichi oku
18	jū hach.	700	nana-hyaku	1,000,000,000	jū oku
19	jū kyū, jū-ku	800	happ-yaku	10,000,000,000	hyaku oku
20	ni-jū	900	kyū hyaku	100,000,000,000	sen oku
21	ni-jū ichi	1,000	sen	1,000,000,000,000	it chō
22	ni jū shi, ni jū yon	1,973	sen-kyū-hyaku-nana jū san		
23	san jū	2,000	ni-sen	0	rei (or zero)
24	yon jū	3,000	san-zen	0.5	rei-ten go
25	go jū	4,000	yon-sen	0 176	rei ten ichi-nana roku
26	roku jū	5,000	go-sen	1/2	ni-bun no ichi
27	nana jū	6,000	roku-sen	3/4	yon-bun no san
28	hach jū	7,000	nana-sen		
29	kyū jū	8,000	has-sen		
30	kyū jū kyū	9,000	kyū-sen		

## APPENDIX III

## Education System

- 1 Primary (or Elementary) School
- 2 Junior High (or Middle) School
- 3 High School
- 4 Technical College
- 5 University (or College)
- 6 School of Medicine
- 7 Junior College
- 8 Graduate School
  - a. Master's Course
  - b. Doctorate Course



## Main Fields of Study

Bungaku	Literature	Igaku	medical science
Koku-bungaku	Japanese literature	nai-ka	general medicine
or Nihon bungaku		ge ka	surgery
Ei-bungaku	English literature	Shi gaku	dentistry
Gengo-gaku	linguistics,	Yaku gaku	pharmacology
	philology	Kenchiku( gaku)	architecture
Tetsugaku	philosophy	Doboku kōgaku	civil engineering
Shaka-gaku	sociology	Tosh keikaku	urban planning
Shinri gaku	psychology	Kikai kōgaku	mechanical engineering
Rekishi(-gaku)	history	Senpaku kōgaku	shipbuilding
Chiri(-gaku)	geography	or Zōsen-kōgaku	
Hōritsu(-gaku)	law, jurisprudence	Denki kōgaku	electrical engineering
Seiji gaku	political science	Denshi kōgaku	electronic engineering
Keizai(-gaku)	economics	Yakin gaku	metallurgy
Keiei gaku	business administration	Jōhō kōgaku	information science
Tōkei gaku	statistics	Nō gaku	agriculture
Kyōiku-gaku	education	Ryōgō	forestry
Sugaku	mathematics	Nōgyō keizai gaku	agricultural economics
Butsun(-gaku)	physics	Suisan-gaku	fishery
Kagaku	chemistry	Bi-utsu	fine arts
Dōbutsu gaku	zoology	Onpaku	music
Shokubutsu gaku	botany	Engeki gaku	theater
Seibutsu gaku	biology		

## INDEX

The index gives each entry first in romanized and then in Japanese script as it is commonly written. The first number following an entry is the page on which it first appears, while larger-type page numbers are for relevant grammatical explanations.

2 Verbs and other words which change with use are given in their dictionary forms.

† For reference, this index also includes words given in foot notes to help explain other words even when these do not appear in the text proper.

## A

	Akagisan 赤城山	179	anna 案内	150	
	Akahige 赤城山	179	anna shu 案内書	150	
A	akai 赤い	29	ano あの	22, 26	
	Akari 赤い	227	anishi 赤い	121	
A	Akashi Chugyu 赤城山	179	aren 赤い	121	
a		27	ao 青い	71	
abiru 浴びる	124	Aka-tonbo 赤とんぼ	154	aoi 青い	71
abunai あふない	125	ake 一あげ	94	aoshingo 青信号	107
achikori 赤城山	272	akebono 赤城山	179	Araki 荒木	71
achira 赤い	15	akegata 赤城山	179	Arashi yama 荒山	71
achiragawa 赤城川	104	akeru 赤城山	179	arayo 荒山	71
adana あだ名	139	aki 秋	68	arawareru 現われる	272
afureru あふれる	139	aki no 秋の	68	arawaru 現われる	272
agaru 上がる	304	akamatsu 秋祭り	92	are あれ	10, 15
ageru 上げる	202, 206	akamatsu 秋祭り	92	are hodo あれほど	10, 15
-teageru	202, 207	akadion アコーディオン	166	-areru	190, 194
ai 愛	248	aku あく	89, 126	arerugi アレルギー	163
aida 間	123	okushon	126	argatita 阿加地	189
no ada	118, 190	Ama no Gawa 天の川	179	argato 阿加地	189
ansatsu あいさつ	107	amari あまり	22, 27, 178	(dewa)armasen	
a summasen		amaru 雨	22		
あいすみせん	331	amari ...あまり	46	arimasu あります	38
ate 相手	164	ame 雨	68	Ariyoshi Sawako 有吉 佐和子	160
atekuu 阿てく	174	ame ga agaru 雨が降る	179		160
atsude あいつで	308	ameagari 雨上がり	250	(...de)aru ...であらう	368
a 味	347, 350	Ameriko アメリカ	68	aru ある	34
aji ga suru	350	ana 穴	104	netsu ga aru	113
Ajia アジア	248	anata あなた	11	-tearu	250, 254
Ajio-taniku		anata-gata あなたがた	11	aru ある	191
アジア大陸	248	ane 姉	138	arute 歩いて	140
aka 赤	106	ani 兄	233	aruma あるいは	140
aka-chan 赤ちゃん	263	anna あんな	27, 155	aruku 歩く	31
akadashi 赤出し	114	annai あんなに	27	Arupusu アルプス	102

asa 朝	46	Bakufu 幕府	200	-bu 一能	152
asagohan 朝ご飯	46	ban 晩	53	bubin 部分	164
asahi 朝日	233	banashi ( hanashi ) 話	184	bucho 部長	234
asa-nebo 朝寝	316			bucho	57
asay 朝夕	272	bango 番号	189	budoshu ぶどう酒	57
asatte あさって	113	bangohan 晩ご飯	89	buhin 部品	280
aseru 朝方	190, 195	bangumi 番組	160	bukan ( -fukan ) 溝い	360
ash 月	71	bannen 晩年	356	buke 武家	320
Ashikagashi 足利氏	200	banso 伴奏	248	buwa ぶわ	120
ashita 明日	56	bara い	10	buki o toru	320
asobi 遊び	223	barai 一払い	198	bukka 物価	236
asobu 遊ぶ	82	baransu	176	Bukkyo 仏教	188
asoko あそこ	11, 15	baransu o toru	176	Bukkyōto 仏教徒	344
asu あす	94	bare-bōru バレーボール	127	bumon 部門	260
Asuka-jidai 飛鳥時代	128	barke 脇力	17	bunno 一部分の	68, 147
atama 頭	104	Basho 芭蕉	71	bungaku 文芸	186
atama ga itai	161	basu バス	57	bungaku sakuhin	221
ataeru 入る	130	bosuda	304		
atarashi 新しい	22	bazukete-bōru	127	bungaku-shi 文学史	332
atarashisa 新しい	298	バスケットボール	127	bungaku 文語	295
atari あたり	22, 30	bata-bata (to)	271	bungobun 文語文	295
atashi 俺	110			bunkei 文芸	96
atataka 雄かい	115	ben 便	89	bunka-kai 分科会	335
atesau あいさす	177	benchi 便所	85	bunmei 文芸	290
ato 後	107, 157	benkyo 貧血	13	Bunraku 文楽	246
ato de 後で	91, 123	beru 別	26	bunsho 文書	188
atsu 熱い	115	berō 別当	82	bunseki 分析	356
atsu 暑い	118	beranda ベランダ	250	buntai 文体	188
atsumar 熱い	315	beru 別	246	butabuta	262
atsumaru 集まる	91	besuto-serā	245	butanko 文芸	82
atsumaru 集まる	91	betsu 別	235	buri ぶり	232
atsuryoku 能力	308	betu 別	114	but ぶり	278
atsuda 熱い	118	betsuru 別に	319	bushi 武士	200
atto ru ma 熱い	267	but ぶり	175	bushi 武士	200
au 会う	64	butsu 美術	22	busō 部数	140
-au 一合	215	butsukan 美術館	22	butsudan 仏壇	344
awasete 合わせる	111	bak 笑	11	butsucho 仏壇	365
awaseru 合わせる	111	biru	30	byaku hyaku	154
awateru あわてる	247	biiru ビール	47	byō 一抄	244
ayatsuru 泳ぐ	240	biwa 琵琶	248	byō 病	246
azukeru 預ける	367	bōkei 貿易	176	byōin 病院	176
		boku ぼく	58	byōki 病気	77
		boku no ぼくの	34	byōki nintai	343
		bōnasu ボナス	220		
		bonenkai 忘年会	306		
ba 一ば	275	Bon-odori 盆踊り	119		
ba 場	11	bōringu ボーリング	346		
...ba ...hodo	310, 315	boru ボル	83		
bai 債	143, 147	boru-pen ボールペン	17		
baiko バイク	106	boshu 募集	214		
...bakari ...ばかり	103, 139	bu 一部	140		
...bakari ka	355				

chichi 父	99
chichi-oya 父親	262
Chigamasa 違います	30
chigai nai 違わない	226, 231
chigau 違う	30
to chigatte	356
chiheisen 地平線	95
chiho 地方	118, 128
chiho-shi 地方紙	128
chiwa 地域	272
chisai 小さい	22
chisa-na 小さな	27, 95
chika 地下	58
chika 地面	272
chika-goro 近ごろ	166
chikai 近い	23
ni chika	23, 152
chika-aru 近い合	320
chika-ika 近々	358
chikaku 近く	70, 334
Chikamatsu 近松	248
chika-tetsu 地下鉄	64
chikau 繋ぐ	321
chikuseki 集積	296
chingin 資金	176
chippu チップ	151
chiryō 治療	296
chiryō-hō 治療法	296
chizu 地図	151
chō 長い	138
chū 長い	34
(te)-chōdai	
(一て)ちようだい	343
chōdo ちようど	199
chō-jikan 長時間	308
chōjō 頂上	73
Chōjū-giga 鳥獣戯画	200
cho-kan 長期間	138
choku-go 直後	202
chokusetsu 直接	212
choku yaku 直訳	356
chomin 町人	248
chōsa 調査	140
Chōsen 朝鮮	104
chosetsu 瞬間	311
chotto ちよっと	30
chū 中	233
Chubu-chūhō 中部地方	118
chūcoku 中絶	296
chū-gakko 中学校	152
chugaku 中学	82
chūgaku-sei 中学生	82
Chūgoku 中国	46

Chugoku-fū 中国風	188
Chugoku-go 中国語	46
Chugoku-jin 中国人	56
Chūgū 中宮	368
Chukaryōri 中華料理	114
Chūkyō 中京	272
chūmon 注文	114
chuo 中央	128
chuo-seifu 中央政府	128
chūsei 中世	294
chūsha 中射	163
chūshin 中心	95
chushin 一中心	128
chūshō-kyōgi 中小企業	260
Chuzenkyō 中禅寺湖	246
D	
da	94, 98
dā だ	214
da. a.	92
dā だ	116
dai	116
dai	120
dai	35, 39
dai	198
dai	159, 306
daibu だいぶ	270
daibubun 大部分	344
daibun だいぶん	107
Dabutsu 大仏	79
dadokoro 大所	340
dagaku 大学	17
dagaku-in 大学院	152
daihyō 代表	224
daihyōteki 代表的	332
danchi 第一	166
danchi ni	298
danchi-sangyō	
第一産業	116
Danchi-sekai-taisen	
第一次世界大戦	308
daijōbu だいじょうぶ	103
Daikan 大案	322
dakkyō 大企業	260
dakura 大さき	221
Damonji 大文字	92
Danhi-sekai-taisen	
第二次世界大戦	320
danshi 第	116
第一次産業	116
doirekuto ディレクト	286
da-san さん	286

da-sen さん	286
dare だ	11, 15
dare demo	173
dare ka	196
dare-dare だれだれ	306
dare tari	83
dare	227, 230
daru だるい	163
daru	163
dashi 出し	274
dasu 出す	164, 311
datta だった	94, 98
dattara だったら	278
Da で	307
de	
23, 42, 46, 51, 63, 123, 147	
de aru である	95
de aru gozaimasu	234
de aru できる	166, 170
deku 出かける	124
deku dake	166
deku できる	185, 298
demo でも	163
demo ・・・でも	127
Dengaku 田楽	248
denki 電気	16
denki 電機	140
denki-dai 電気代	198
denki-ōgaku 電気工学	199
denki-mekā 電機メカ	140
denki-seihin 電気製品	272

denkei 電気	16
denrai 伝来	344
densetsu 伝説	80
densha 電車	46
dentō 伝統	143
dentō-bunka 伝統文化	214
dentō-ōgaku 伝統音楽	184
dentō-sangyō 伝統産業	143
dentō-teki 伝統的	284
denwa 電話	34
denwa ga aru	137
denwa ga kakaru	167
denwa o kakeru	52
denwa bango 電話番号	89
depōto デパート	65
dera(tera) 寺	101
deru 出る	59
deshi 弟子	91
deshita でした	70, 74
deshō でしょう	78, 226, 230
desu です	10, 14
desukara ですから	53
detsu-kuru 出てくる	184
dewa では	142
Dewa mata	164
dewa arimasen	
ではありません	10, 14
dezain デザイン	178
dō とう	328
dō とう	23, 27
Dō desu	126
Do flashmashite	30
dō だ	286
dō ka shite-ru	347
do shite	329
do shitemo	298
do 銅	116
do 一度	80
do 一室	330
do だ	34
dobu どぶ	355
dobu-gawa どぶ川	355
Doborūzaku	
ドボルザーク	250
dobutsu 動物	257
dobutsu-en 動物園	257
dochira	
どちら	15, 90, 142, 146
dochira mo	142
dochira sama	
どちらさま	90
dōgu 道具	284

Doitsu ドイツ	57
Doitsu-jin ドイツ人	57
dōjō 道場	190
dōjō ni	190
do どの	11, 15
doko ka	226
dokujō 独自	200
dokusen 独自	200
dōkyū 同級	306
domo どうも	18
donata だな	15
donatsu ドーナツ	272
dondon(to)	272
dōn(dōn) どん(と)	267, 271
donna どん	23, 27
donna-ni	27
dono どの	26, 250
dore どれ	15, 66
dore gurai	66
dori 道	40
dorobō どろぼう	196
dōro-seibi 道路整備	282
doryu ドル	174
doryoku 努力	176
dōshō 同意	358
dōshō-ka 同意会	358
dōtte koto wa nai	319
どうってことはない	319
Doyō 土曜	119
Dōyōbi 土曜日	64
dōzo どうぞ	18
Dōzo yoroshiku	18
E	
e 絵	79
e へ	46, 51
E へ	19
E...to ええ...と	31
eba	278
Eberesuto エベレスト	148
eda 枝	191
Edo 江戸	248
Edo-jidai 江戸時代	248
egaku 描く	332
e-hagaku 絵はがき	79
eien 永遠	284
eiga 映画	64
egakan 映画館	64
Eigo 英語	56
engyo 営業	34

engyō-ka 営業課	34
Ehoku 英国	56
ekyō 影響	140
ekyū 永久	320
EnWa-jen	
英和辞典	154
eki 駅	17
eki-mae 駅前	59
en 一円	46
engan 沿岸	116
enju 演じる	344
enjo 援助	308
en-kei 円形	284
enpitsu 鉛筆	40
enryo 遠慮	281
enryo-naku	281
ensen 沿線	296
ensō 演奏	167
en-yō 遠洋	116
en-yō-gyōgyō 遠洋漁業	116
erabu 選ぶ	196
erabeta エレベーター	58
erabeta-gōru	
エレベーター・ガール	352
ero エロ	299
ero-guro-nonsensu	
エロ・グロ・ナンセンス	299
eru 得る	200
eru	238, 242
Etoawaru エトワール	139
F	
fu 不	76
fū 一風	188
fuben 不便	89
fubo 父母	239
fudan ふだん	104
fudangō ふだん着	104
Fudoki 風土記	224
fue 笛	248
fujūben 不十分	236
fueru ふえる	116
fuirumu フィルム	54
fujin 婦人	104
Fujisan 富士山	148
Fujinwarashi 藤原氏	128
fukai 深い	335
fukei 風景	184
fukatsu 復活	224
fuko 不幸	344
fukoku-kyōheisaku	
富国強兵策	308

fuku 福	65	gaku 学	128
fuku 吹く	83, 100	gaku 一類	176
fukumeru 含める	190	gaku bu ギャブ	152
Fuku no kami 福の神	80	gakufu ギャブ	166
Fukuoka 福岡	53	gakusei ギャブ	11
fukusa 福装	104	gakuseijidai	
fukuzatsu 複雑	76	ザリ時代	119
fukuy 普及	140	gakusha 学者	196
fukuyōritsu 普及率	140	-gashu -がましい	287
fun 一分	31	ganbaru がんばる	263
funo 船	200	ga ne ...がけ	323
funsu 噴水	284	garu -がる	154
Furansu フランス	57	gosu ガス	355
Furansu-go フランス語	118	gata がた	11
Furansu-jin		gata gata (to)	
フランス人	57	がたがた	269
faro ふろ	89	gawa ( kawa) -川	80
furo ni haru	89	-gawa -割	83
furu 降る	68	gewutsu 芸術	186
furu 古い	22	genō 芸能	248
furu-sato ふるさと	184	geki 劇	22
fusai 夫妻	210	gekko 戯作	22
fushinetsu 不親和	76	gekkan 月刊	186
fushu 風習	190	gemu ゲーム	103
fusoku 不足	236	genbun itchi 言文一致	356
Futabatei Shimei		genchi 現地	367
蕨亭四達	356	gendai 現代	188
futatabi 再び	320	gendai Nippongo	
futon ふとん	368	現代日本語	188
futsu 普通	152	gen'in 原因	316
futsugō 不都合	335	Genji 源氏	200, 368
fuyu, 冬	68	Genji Monogatari	
		源氏物語	196
G		Genjino Kimi	
ga が	34, 38	源氏の君	368
ga が	18, 75	genjitsu 現実	332
-gai 一外	334	genkan 玄関	137
-gai 一街	355	genki 元気	77
gaiko-bukku		genkō 原稿	250
ガイドブック	94	genkō yōshi 原稿用紙	250
gaiō 外交	320	Genrokujidai	
gaiōkan 外交官	321	八木時代	332
gaikoku 外国	116	genron 論議	308
gaikoku-go 外国語	173	genryō 原料	176
gaikokujin 外国人	154	Genshō 現象	272
gaikokujin		genshō 歳少	272
外国人用	154	genzai 現在	190
gaikokusei 外国製	139	genzai 現在	236
gaishutsu 外出	47	gera gera (to)	
gaka 画家	31	ゲラゲラ(と)	298
gaku 楽器	136	getsu -月	92
gakkō 学校	57	Getsu-yōbi 月曜日	76
		が 着	65

gichō 議長	196	gichō 議長	196
gin 議員	308	gin 議員	308
giutsu 技術	176	giutsu 技術	176
gimon 疑問	287	gimon 疑問	287
gimu 義務	152	gimu 義務	152
gimu-kyōiku 義務教育	152	gimu-kyōiku 義務教育	152
ginō 銀行	11	ginō 銀行	11
ginshon-shiki 銀婚式	202	ginshon-shiki 銀婚式	202
GINZA 銀座	65	GINZA 銀座	65
girei 儀礼	344	girei 儀礼	344
giri 義理	332	giri 義理	332
giron 議論	320	giron 議論	320
gishin (to)	272	ぎっしり(と)	272
gitō ギター	244	gitō ギター	244
go- ゴー	91, 362	go- ゴー	91, 362
gobusatasuru		gobusatasuru	
gochō 長	119	gocho 長	119
Gochōsama		Gochōsama	
gohan ご飯	130	gohan ご飯	130
Gomen kudasai	90	Gomen kudasai	90
ごめんください	90	ごめんください	90
Gomen nasai	127	Gomen nasai	127
ごめんなさい	127	ごめんなさい	127
go ゴー	91	go ゴー	91
go-ro-zu ゴー	24	go-ro-zu ゴー	24
go ゴー	17	go ゴー	17
go 語	154	go 語	154
goe (-koe) 一声	119	goe (-koe) 一声	119
Go gatsu 五月	56	Go gatsu 五月	56
gogo 午後	59	gogo 午後	59
gōkei 合計	344	gōkei 合計	344
goran	365	goran	365
goran ni naru	363	goran ni naru	363
ごらんになる	363	ごらんになる	363
(te) goran-nasai	198	(te) goran-nasai	198
ごらんなさい	198	ごらんなさい	198
goro ゴー	46, 51	goro ゴー	46, 51
gorufu ゴルフ	42	gorufu ゴルフ	42
gorufu ゴルフ場	176	gorufu ゴルフ場	176
gosei 歳	176	gosei 歳	176
gōsenkei 公成織機	368	gōsenkei 公成織機	368
goya (koya) -小屋	102	goya (koya) -小屋	102
gozamasu ございます	234	gozamasu ございます	234
de gozamasu	234	de gozamasu	234
gozen 午前	185	gozen 午前	185
gū-gu (to) ごうぐ(と)	269	gū-gu (to) ごうぐ(と)	269
gun 軍	200	gun 軍	200
gun (kuni) 一国	68	gun (kuni) 一国	68
...gurai ごらい	31, 51	...gurai ごらい	31, 51

gure グレー	211	gure グレー	211
guro グロ	289	guro グロ	289
gurūpu グループ	103	gurūpu グループ	103
gurupu r'yoku		gurupu r'yoku	
グループ旅行	160	グループ旅行	160
Gurusukine グルスギネ	334	Gurusukine グルスギネ	334
gyaku 虚	260	gyaku 虚	260
gyaku ni	260	gyaku ni	260
gyō 業	116	gyō 業	116
gyō-gyō 漁業	116	gyō-gyō 漁業	116
gyōji 行事	80	gyōji 行事	80
gyōmin 通民	200	gyōmin 通民	200
gyōretsū 行列	318	gyōretsū 行列	318
gyūnyū 牛乳	197	gyūnyū 牛乳	197
H		H	
ha 歯	125	ha 歯	125
Ha? はあ	151	Ha? はあ	151
habamu はばむ	332	habamu はばむ	332
habaku 害く	164	habaku 害く	164
hado ハド	286	hado ハド	286
hagaki はがき	79	hagaki はがき	79
hageshi 激しい	272	hageshi 激しい	272
hagemashi 励まし	347	hagemashi 励まし	347
hagemasu 励ます	347	hagemasu 励ます	347
hagi はぎ	368	hagi はぎ	368
haha 母	90	haha 母	90
Hahā はは	163	Hahā はは	163
haha-oya 母親	196	haha-oya 母親	196
Hai はい	10, 107	Hai はい	10, 107
hawei 摩滅	296	hawei 摩滅	296
handan 判断	128	handan 判断	128
handan o kudasu	128	handan o kudasu	128
handō 反動	356	handō 反動	356
handō-hō 反動期	356	handō-hō 反動期	356
Haneda 羽田	143	Haneda 羽田	143
Haneda-kukō 羽田空港	143	Haneda-kukō 羽田空港	143
han'e 反映	212	han'e 反映	212
hanwa はに輪	104	hanwa はに輪	104
han'jikan 半時間	328	han'jikan 半時間	328
hanjin 犯人	198	hanjin 犯人	198
hansei 反省	320	hansei 反省	320
hantai 反対	138	hantai 反対	138
hanta-andō 反対運動	296	hanta-andō 反対運動	296
hantō 半島	94	hantō 半島	94
hantoshu 半年	208	hantoshu 半年	208
hantsuki 半月	118	hantsuki 半月	118
harahara (to)	77	harahara (to)	77
hajime 始め	77	hajime 始め	77
...no hajime	80	...no hajime	80
hare 晴れ	190	hare 晴れ	190
hareru 晴れる	94, 368	hareru 晴れる	94, 368
haru 春	67	haru 春	67

初めまして	18	初めまして	18
haymeru 始める	46	haymeru 始める	46
haymeru -始める	154	haymeru -始める	154
haka 墓	355	haka 墓	355
hakaba 墓場	355	hakaba 墓場	355
hakama はかま	104	hakama はかま	104
hakana sa はかなさ	368	hakana sa はかなさ	368
hakanai はかない	369	hakanai はかない	369
hakase 博士	153	hakase 博士	153
hakuri (to)		hakuri (to)	
はつきり(と)	210, 267	はつきり(と)	210, 267
hakō 発行	140	hakō 発行	140
hakō-busō 発行部数	140	hakō-busō 発行部数	140
hako 箱	57	hako 箱	57
hakobi はこび	367	hakobi はこび	367
Hakone 箱根	42	Hakone 箱根	42
haku はく	104	haku はく	104
haku -泊	151	haku -泊	151
hakushi 博士	152	hakushi 博士	152
hakushikatei 博士課程	152	hakushikatei 博士課程	152
hōmonika ハーモニカ	83	hōmonika ハーモニカ	83
han 半	46	han 半	46
hana 花	10	hana 花	10
hana mi 花見	93	hana mi 花見	93
hanareru 離れる	140	hanareru 離れる	140
hanashi 話	76	hanashi 話	76
hanashiau 話し合う	215	hanashiau 話し合う	215
hanashikakeru		hanashikakeru	
話しかける	196	話しかける	196
hanasu 話す	82	hanasu 話す	82
hanbun 半分	116	hanbun 半分	116
handan 判断	128	handan 判断	128
handan o kudasu	128	handan o kudasu	128
handō 反動	356	handō 反動	356
handō-hō 反動期	356	handō-hō 反動期	356
Haneda 羽田	143	Haneda 羽田	143
Haneda-kukō 羽田空港	143	Haneda-kukō 羽田空港	143
han'e 反映	212	han'e 反映	212
hanwa はに輪	104	hanwa はに輪	104
han'jikan 半時間	328	han'jikan 半時間	328
hanjin 犯人	198	hanjin 犯人	198
hansei 反省	320	hansei 反省	320
hantai 反対	138	hantai 反対	138
hanta-andō 反対運動	296	hanta-andō 反対運動	296
hantō 半島	94	hantō 半島	94
hantoshu 半年	208	hantoshu 半年	208
hantsuki 半月	118	hantsuki 半月	118
harahara (to)	77	harahara (to)	77
hajime 始め	77	hajime 始め	77
...no hajime	80	...no hajime	80
hare 晴れ	190	hare 晴れ	190
hareru 晴れる	94, 368	hareru 晴れる	94, 368
haru 春	67	haru 春	67

haru 春	102	haru 春	102
haru はる	286	haru はる	286
hashi 橋	82	hashi 橋	82
hashinrisaru 走り去る	346	hashinrisaru 走り去る	346
hashiru 走る	70	hashiru 走る	70
hassha 発車	365	hassha 発車	365
hatake 畑	239	hatake 畑	239
hataraku 働く	112	hataraku 働く	112
hatsu 初	323	hatsu 初	323
natsu-zuri 初づり	323	natsu-zuri 初づり	323
hatsun 発音	46	hatsun 発音	46
hattatsu 発達	194	hattatsu 発達	194
hatten 発展	104	hatten 発展	104
hatto はっと	346	hatto はっと	346
haya-oku 早起き	59	haya-oku 早起き	59
hayai 速い	143	hayai 速い	143
hayai 早い	268	hayai 早い	268
hayaku 早く	59	hayaku 早く	59
hazu はず	322, 326	hazu はず	322, 326
He? ヘ	283	He? ヘ	283
hei へい	284	hei へい	284
Heian jidai 平安時代	104	Heian jidai 平安時代	104
Heianjūgō 平安神宮	78	Heianjūgō 平安神宮	78
neibon 平凡	356	neibon 平凡	356
neihō- 平方一	68	neihō- 平方一	68
Heke 平家	200	Heke 平家	200
Heike Monogatari		Heike Monogatari	
平家物語	332	平家物語	332
hekon 平均	236	hekon 平均	236
henwa 平和	320	henwa 平和	320
heiya 平野	68	heiya 平野	68
hen 辺	106	hen 辺	106
hen 変	352	hen 変	352
henji 追事	215	henji 追事	215
heru 越る	116	heru 越る	116
heru 越る	344	heru 越る	344
heta へた	166, 170	heta へた	166, 170
heya 部屋	268	heya 部屋	268
heya-dō 部屋代	34	heya-dō 部屋代	34
hi 日 (day)	47	hi 日 (day)	47
hi 日 (sun)	95	hi 日 (sun)	95
hi 火	92	hi 火	92
hi o tsukeru	92	hi o tsukeru	92
hidari 左	38, 40	hidari 左	38, 40
hidari-gawa 左側	281	hidari-gawa 左側	281
hidarite 左手	172	hidarite 左手	172
hidoi ひどい	250	hidoi ひどい	250
higai 被害	296	higai 被害	296
higai-sha 被害者	296	higai-sha 被害者	296
higan 彼岸	322	higan 彼岸	322
higashi 東	142	higashi 東	142
hige ひげ	342	hige ひげ	342
hihan 批判	335	hihan 批判	335



hyon 手紙	140	hoyo 費用	366
hikaku 比較	344	hizue 賃	164
hikar 光	143	ho 法	43
hikaru 光る	82	ho ほう	107, 111, 146
hiki 匹	83	hō ga	106, 111
hikotome	39	...no hō	167
		hō no ga	142
ひき止める	251	ho 法	296
hikukeru ひき受ける	167	Hodaka 峠	102
hikokosu ひき越す	222	...hodo ...ほど	143, 142, 147, 315
hikoku 飛行機	53	are nodo	323
hiku ひく	88	sore hodo	43
kaze o hiku	233	nodo 道	198
hiku 曲	28	nogo 後	200
hima 暇	77	noho 休	341
hime 姫	80	Hono 本	42
himemgi 如	366	hōhō 方法	340
him 一品	176	Hojō 峠	332
hina matsuuri		hoka ほか	68
ひな祭り	80	sono hoka	68
Hina-ningyō ひな人形	80	hoken shaka 日本社会	308
h-node ひの	185	hōken-seido	309
hira-gana ひらがな	175	hōka 放棄	320
hirakareru 開かれる	304	Hokkaido 北海道	68
hiraku 開く	94, 200	hōrō 広	332
hiroi 広い	95	hōkoku 報告	64
hiroku 広く	197	hōkoku sho 報告書	64
hirou 拾	196	Hokuriku 北陸	272
hiru ひる	47	homen 向	367
hirugohan ひる飯	58	hōmen 訪問	137
hiruma 昼間	130	hōmu 母	125
hiruyasumi 休休み	245	hon 本	39
hisan 世	320	hon 本	39
hisashiburi 久	219	hon 本	39
hsho 後	367	hon 本	39
hissori 何	355	hon 本	39
hitei ひてい	212	hon 本	39
hito 人	11	hon 本	39
hitobito 人々	92	hon 本	39
hito no yo 人の日	275	hon 本	39
hitori 人	34, 39	hon 本	39
hitorihitori		hon 本	39
hitotsuyu 節	346	hon 本	39
hito-tachi 人々	28	hon 本	39
hitotsu	74, 39	hon 本	39
hitotsu mo na	126	hon 本	39
no hitotsu	92	hon 本	39
hitsuyo 必要	176	hon 本	39
hitsu-yo to ni	286	hon 本	39
hyaku 飛躍	308	hon 本	39
hyakutek 飛躍的	308	hon 本	39

hosaku 物	92	hoshō 保証書	55
hoshu 物	80	hoshō 保証書	190
hoshe 物	154, 158	hoshō 保証書	55
hoshō 保証書	55	hoshō 保証書	198
hosu 物	250	hosu 物	22
hosu 物	22	hosu 物	22
hoeru-annaisho	150	hoeru-annaisho	150
hotoke 物	284	hotoke 物	284
hotondo ほとんど	47	hotondo ほとんど	47
hyakkaten 百貨店	89	hyakkaten 百貨店	89
hyaku 百	42	hyaku 百	42
hyakusho 百	190	hyakusho 百	190
hyaban 百	176	hyaban 百	176
hyōgen 表現	212	hyōgen 表現	212
hyōmen 表面	272	hyōmen 表面	272
hyōmenka 表面化	272	hyōmenka 表面化	272
hyotto suru to	230	hyotto suru to	230
hyū-hyū (to)	262	hyū-hyū (to)	262

I

ie 家	10	ie 家	10
ie 家	316	ie 家	316
ienai ない	316	ienai ない	316
ienai ない	275	ienai ない	275
ie 家	143	ie 家	143
ie 家	114	ie 家	114
ie 家	342	ie 家	342
ie 家	82	ie 家	82
ie 家	91	ie 家	91
ie 家	107, 162	ie 家	107, 162
ie 家	150	ie 家	150
ie 家	284	ie 家	284
ie 家	47	ie 家	47
ie 家	89	ie 家	89
ie 家	42	ie 家	42
ie 家	190	ie 家	190
ie 家	176	ie 家	176
ie 家	212	ie 家	212
ie 家	272	ie 家	272
ie 家	272	ie 家	272
ie 家	230	ie 家	230
ie 家	262	ie 家	262

ie 家	10	ie 家	10
ie 家	316	ie 家	316
ie 家	316	ie 家	316
ie 家	275	ie 家	275
ie 家	143	ie 家	143
ie 家	114	ie 家	114
ie 家	342	ie 家	342
ie 家	82	ie 家	82
ie 家	91	ie 家	91
ie 家	107, 162	ie 家	107, 162
ie 家	150	ie 家	150
ie 家	284	ie 家	284
ie 家	47	ie 家	47
ie 家	89	ie 家	89
ie 家	42	ie 家	42
ie 家	190	ie 家	190
ie 家	176	ie 家	176
ie 家	212	ie 家	212
ie 家	272	ie 家	272
ie 家	272	ie 家	272
ie 家	230	ie 家	230
ie 家	262	ie 家	262

ie 家	10	ie 家	10
ie 家	316	ie 家	316
ie 家	316	ie 家	316
ie 家	275	ie 家	275
ie 家	143	ie 家	143
ie 家	114	ie 家	114
ie 家	342	ie 家	342
ie 家	82	ie 家	82
ie 家	91	ie 家	91
ie 家	107, 162	ie 家	107, 162
ie 家	150	ie 家	150
ie 家	284	ie 家	284
ie 家	47	ie 家	47
ie 家	89	ie 家	89
ie 家	42	ie 家	42
ie 家	190	ie 家	190
ie 家	176	ie 家	176
ie 家	212	ie 家	212
ie 家	272	ie 家	272
ie 家	272	ie 家	272
ie 家	230	ie 家	230
ie 家	262	ie 家	262



keishiki 形式	164	ku 期	356	Kinyōbi 金曜日	76	kōei 公堂	260	kōkōbin 航空便	293	kono-goro このごろ	118
keishiki 形式的	344	kobaburi 期	175	kinryū 記入	175	kōen 公園	11	kōkuban 黒板	35	konakan この間	200
keizai 経済	142	ki 期	312	kippu 切符	59	kōen 講義	173	kōkudo 国土	296	konpyūto コンピューター	185
keizai-gakusha 経済学者	329	ki 期	164	kirai 嫌い	155, 159	kōfuku 幸福	444	kōkuei 国営	260	konran 混乱	287
ke-zaiseichō-risū 経済成長率	236	kibō 機嫌	186	kirakira (to) きらきらと	263	kōfufu 古墳	104	Koku fūan koku-jidai 国夷時国時代	224	konshū 今週	76
ke-zaiseikatsu 経済生活	236	kibun 気分	270	kiraku 気楽	211	kōfufu 古墳時代	128	koku-go 国語	330	kon'ya 今夜	113
kekki ケーキ	107	xieru 消える	247	kiesaru 消える	368	kōgai 公費	196	koku-go-taku 国語学	330	konzatsu 混雑	272
kekka 結果	140	kiesaru 消えてゆく	368	kieta-yuku 消えてゆく	368	kōgaku 公学	187	kokumin 国民	131	kō-on 高音	311
sona kekka	140	xigae 着替	176	kieta-yuku 消えてゆく	368	kōgaku 工学	187	kokuminsi 国民性	131	korareru 来られる	242
kekko けっこう	130	kigo 季節	284	kieta-yuku 消えてゆく	368	kōgaku kankei 工学関係	187	kokumōsō-seisan 国民総生産	330	kore これ	10, 15
kekko desu	151	xigyo 企業	266	kira 切る	271	kōgi 抗議	173	koku-nai 国内純生産	236	kore hodo	311
kekkon 結婚	67	kiwakagu 幾何学	284	kiru 切る	271	kogitte 小切手	174	koku-nai 国内	116	kore kara	64
kekkon-sekatsu 結婚生活	203	kikaku 機械	28	kisetsu 季節	131	kōgo 口語	164	koku-risū 国算	252	kore kara wa	191
kekkan-shiki 結婚式	104	kikai 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	koreigo これ以後	200
kemuri 煙	222	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	Korekora これこれ	107
ken 拳	59	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	koreka これこれ	116
ken 一圓	272	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	koritsu 公立	152
ken 一編	308	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	(...)koro (...)のころ	104
kenbutsu 見物	78	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōsa 交差	106
kenbutsu-min 見物人	119	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōsaten 交差点	106
kenchiku 建築	19	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōsei 公社	59
kenchiku 建築家	19	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōshiki 公式	188
kenkyū 研究	167	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōshraeru こしらえる	284
kenkyūsha 研究者	334	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōshite こうして	308
kenkyū-shitsu 研究室	359	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōshō 故障	178
kenkyū-sho 研究書	214	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōshū 公衆	306
kenkyū-sho 研究所	281	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōshū-denwa 公衆電話	306
kenpō 憲法	56	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kosode 小袖	104
Kenpō-kunenbi 憲法記念日	56	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōsoku 高速	282
kenri 権利	308	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōsoku-dōro 高速道路	282
kensetsu 建設	367	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōsui 香水	352
kenso 検校	366	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kotae 答え	212
kereba 一ければ	278	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kotaeu 答える	130
keredomo けれども	51	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai 父兄	47
kesa けさ	64	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
keshiki 景色	179	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
kesshite nai	90	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
ketter 決定	320	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
ki 気	106	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
ki ga chisai	316	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
ki ga suru	347, 250	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
ki ni iru	223	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
ki ni suru	211	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
ki o tsukau	107	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
ki o tsukeru	106	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
ki 水	40	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
ki 一機	35	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47
ki 一季	160	kikaku 機会	104	kisha 汽車	83	kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	134	kōtai de	47

kotsu-kosha 交通公社	59	kuru 来る	68	kyūyō 雇用	246	manga 漫画	160	memo メモ	328	mitsudo 蜜度	69
kotsu-ryō 交通屋	282	ni kuru	75			mangetsu 満月	92	menbō メンバー	42	mitsukaru 見つかる	154
kōtsū-teitai 交通停滯	272	te-kuru	126, 184, 255	M		man'in 満員	66	menka 棉花	176	mitsukeru 見つかる	311
kowasu こわす	310	kuru クール	286	Ma まあ	91	man'in densha 満員電車	372	menkyō 免許	176	Mitsubishi 三菱	260
koya 小屋	103	kuruma 車	89	mā まあ	210	man naka まん中	25	men-orimono 綿織物	178	Mitsui 三井	260
koyomi 暦	322	kururi to くりと	346	mā 真一	118	manshō マンション	223	menzei 免税	55	myako 都	128
kōzan 高山	94	kurushi 苦しい	202	ma ni au 間に合う	247	Man'yōshū 万葉集	224	merodi メロディー	155	mizu 水	23
kōzan-shokubutsu		kurushimu 苦しむ	296	machi 町	23	maru 丸い	353	metoru メートル	69	mizu-umi 湖	95
koji 植物	94	kusa 草	274	machu 町	23	masa ますに	356	metani nai		mo も	10, 14
Kōzanji 高山寺	70	Kusamakura 草枕	274	machigaeeru まちがえる	286	masen ません	50	mezuru 目ざめる	17 62	mo ちゅう	58, 62
kōto 構造	172	kurumi 薬	163	machigatta まちがった	286	masen deshita	62	mezurashi 珍しい	356	mo ichinen	221
kōzakai こづかい	208	kute くて	123	machigau まちがう	286	mashta ました	58, 62	mezuru 用いる	43	mochi もち	80
ku 句	284	kutsu かつ	65	machigū 町じゅう	119	mashō ましょう	106, 111	michi 道	368	mochi o tsuku	92
kuchi 口	163	kuwashu かい	284	mada まだ	43, 62	Mashūko 茅渟湖	94	michi-shirube 道しるべ	71	mocheru 用いる	344
ku-damono くだもの	136	kuzusu くずす	290	mada mada まだまだ	236	massugu まっすぐ	65, 281	mochi 餅	191	mochikata 持ち方	335
kudasai ください	54, 110	kyōdi キヤディー	42	made まで	46, 51	masuta マスター	317	mochiron もちろん	71	modan モダン	103
ku-dasai	106, 110	kyaku 客	107	te made	287	masuta-robon		modan Taimusu	91	modan タイムス	298
(handan o) kudasu		kyanpu-faiyā		mado 窓	35	masu ます	317	moji 文字	188	moji 文字	188
(kutsu o) 下す	128	キャンプ・ファイヤー	102	mae 前	35, 38, 52	masu ます	50	mokuteki 目的	294	mokuteki 目的	294
ku gatsu 九月	58	kyō 景	58	...no mae ni	38	masu-komi マスコミ	160	mokuyōbi 木曜日	76	mokuzai 木材	116
kūki 空気	23	kyōdai 兄弟	43	...mae (ni)	123, 125	masu-masu ますます	272	momiji もみじ	68	momo 桃, もも	10
kōkō 空港	143	kyōgen 狂言	248	mae motte 前もって	250	masu また	92, 94	momi 母	164	mon 門	275
ku-mai 組合	308	kyōiku 教育	152	magaru 曲がる	281	matomoru まとめる	214	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
ku-materu		kyōiku-seido 教育制度	152	mai 舞	248	matu 待つ	54, 88	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
組み立てる	172	kyōjū 教授	295	mai 舞	46	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kumo 雲	94	kyōkai 教会	352	mai 舞	39, 41, 54	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kumori 曇り	232	kyōkasho 教科書	137	maiba 舞	46	Matsumoto Seichō	160	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kumoru 曇る	340	kyōka 句	11	maiba 舞	46	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kun 訓	188	kyōkyū 供給	116	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kuon 一音	107	kyōmi 興味	214	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
ku nai くない	22, 26	kyōnen 少年	67	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kumi 組	17	kyōryoku 協力	367	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
ku-niguri 国々	308	Kyosanto 共産党	320	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
ku-nizakai 国境	274	kyōshitsu 教室	152	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kūō クーラー	178	kyōshi 教師	152	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kurabete 比べる	236	kyōsōritsu 競争率	188	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
ku, ni kurabete	280	kyōten 競争	152	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kurai 暗い	66	Kyōto 京都	17	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kurai 位	200	Kyōto-eki 京都駅	71	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
Kurashiku 合戦	160	kyū 急	71	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kurasu 暮らす	138	kyū-ni 急に	322	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kuroso クラス	311	kyū 一級	306	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kure 暮れ	92	kyūfu 給付	236	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kureba 来れば	278	kyūfugaku 給付額	236	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kureru 暮れる	130	kyuka 休暇	161	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kureru くれる	203, 206, 207	kyūko 急行	66	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
te-kureru	202, 207	kyūkutsu 急送	275	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kurikaeshi くり返し	332	kyūryō 給料	67	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
Kuritsumori		kyūryōbi 給料日	328	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
クリスマス	208	Kyushū 九州	47	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kurō 秀秀	316	kyōsoku 急送	116	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kurō 黒い	82	kyūsoku 急速に	116	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275
kuroku naru	102	kyūtei 宮廷	104	mairi 舞	343	matsu 松	238	mon 門	260	mon 門	275





Sapporo 札幌	94	seisan-butsu 生産物	116	sen-zen 戦前	260	shijō 市場	170	shinri 心理	212	shitsuren 失恋	226
sarada サラダ	160	seisan dai 生産高	176	senzo 先祖	92	shika しか	79	shinru 種類	139	shitte-iru 知っている	83
sarari man サラーマン	184	seisan sei 生産性	260	se o mukeru 背を向ける	346	shika...nai しか…ない	104	Shin-sekai yori 新世界より	250	shiyō しよう	218
saru する	346	serishu 正式	104	se-ou 背負う	191	shikaru しかる	196	shinsen 新鮮	298	shiyō 私用	188
Sarugaku 猿楽	248	serishin 精神	128	se-ou 背負う	191	shikashi しかし	47, 51	shinsen sa 新鮮さ	298	shiyō 使用	235
sasaeru ささえる	176	serishin 清新	356	se-ou セーター	208	shikata しかた	59	shinsetsu 新設	298	shiyō-chū 使用ちゅう	235
saseru させる	197	serishin-teki 精神的	128	Seto naikai 瀬戸内海	200	shikata ga nai しかたがない	59	shinsetsu 親切	298	shiyū 私有	200
-saseru させる	190, 195	serishutsu 性質	224	setsubi 設備	185	shiken 試験	76	shinshi 紳士	280	shiyū chi 私所有地	200
sasete-itadaku させていただく	358	seishun 青春	202	Setsubun 節分	80	shiken o ukeru 試験を受ける	152	shin shin tomo 新々とも	347	shizen 自然	95, 164
sashimi さしみ	115	seishun jidai 青春時代	202	setsumei 説明	172	shiki 式	104	Shinshū 信州	238	shizen-kai 自然界	344
sashigeru さしげる	206, 207	seitō 政党	320	sewa 世話	151	-shiki 一式	150, 260	shinshutsu 進出	176	Shizen-shugi 自然主義	356
sasou さそう	221	seikai 世界	116	o-sewa ni naru オース・エフ	151	shiki 四季	160	shinshutsu 進出	176	Shizen shugi sha 自然主義者	356
sassoku さっそく	162	seikai dai 世界第 1 位	140	sha しゃ	47	shikari (to) しかり(と)	263, 267	shinshutsu 進出	176	shizoku 氏族	128
sasu さす	211	seikai yūdō 世界有数	224	-sha 者	152	Shikoku 四国	68	shinshutsu 進出	176	shizuka 静か	22
Sate さて	114	seki 碁	59	shaberu しやべる	251	shima 島	68	shinshutsu 進出	176	shizuma 沈む	90
satsu 札	55	sekitan 石炭	116	sha-chō 社長	184	shima-gumi 島国	68	shinshutsu 進出	176	shizun シーズン	92
-satsu 一冊	34, 39	sekiyu 石油	116	sha-in 社員	47	shimada 島田	68	shinshutsu 進出	176	shō 章	235
sawagashi 騒がしい	119	sekkaku せっかく	222	shakai 社会	190	shimaru しまる	89	shinshutsu 進出	176	shō 抄	356
Sayōnara さようなら	18	sekkaku hoshō seido 社会保険制度	190	shakai hoshō seido 社会保険制度	190	te-shimau てしまふ	247, 255	Shiretoko hantō 知床半島	94	-sho 一書	55, 137
se 背	346	sekkai-teki 社会的	356	shakai-teki 社会的	356	shime nawa しめのなわ	80	shirai 知り合い	167	sho 一冊	150
se ga takai	149	sekkai sha 設計者	340	Shakai-tō 社会	320	shimeru しめる	112	shiritsu 私立	152	shōchi 承知	234
-sei 一生	43	semai 狭い	125	shakkei 借景	284	shimeru 占める	176	shiroi 白い	89	shōchū 養中	164
-sei 一製	101	semeru 収める	200	shamisen 味線	248	shimesu 示す	366	shiru 知る	23	Shōchū-mai 養中忌書	164
-sei 一版	152	Shanzerize ヤンゼリゼ	149	Shanzerize ヤンゼリゼ	149	shimin 市民	167	shirushi 商標	128	shō-gakkō 小学校	152
(...no) sei (のせい)	262	shasei 写生	82	shasei 写生	82	shimin-kakan 市民会館	167	shiryō 資料	128	shōgaku-sei 小学生	83
seibi 整備	282	shashin 写真	17	shashin 写真	17	shin- 新	356	shisei 氏性	128	Shō-gatsu 正月	80
seichō 成長	236	shatsu シャツ	161	shatsu シャツ	161	shin- 新	356	shisei seido 氏性制度	128	shō-gyō 商業	142
seido 制度	128	shawō シャワー	124	shawō シャワー	124	shinai 品切れ	330	shisei 姿勢	296	shōhin 商品	308
seifu 政府	128	shu 手	356	shu 手	356	shinbin 新聞	16	shisetsu 施設	236	shōji 障子	271
seigaku 音楽	166	shu 手	187	shu 手	187	shinbin sha 新聞社	214	shishi mai しし舞	248	shōkai 紹介	91
seigen 制限	283	shu 手	128	shu 手	128	shinda 死んだ	344	shi shōsetsu 私小説	356	shōkai-jō 紹介状	364
seihin 製品	176	shu 手	140	shu 手	140	shinda 死んだ	344	shisetsu 施設	236	shokubutsu 植物	94
seiji 政治	95	senkyo 選挙	304	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shita 下	38, 40	shokudō 食堂	56
seiji-ka 政治家	220	senkyo ken 選挙権	308	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shitagatte したがって	332	shokujī 食事	114
seiji seido 政治制度	128	senmon 専門	140	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shitagau 従う	164	-shoku tsuki 一食付	150
seiji taisei 政治体制	128	senmon-gai 専門外	334	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingaku 進学	152	Shōnan kaigan 湘南海岸	103
seiji-teki 政治的	320	senmon-shi 専門紙	140	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingaku-ritsui 進学率	152	shokoku 諸国	308
seika 成果	334	senpaku 船舶	176	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106	shomin 市民	332
seikatsu 生活	152, 202	sen-ri 千里	359	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106	shōrai 将来	220
seiken 政権	320	Sen-ri no michi mo ipō kara 千里の道も一歩から	359	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106	shōsetsu 小説	28
seiki 世紀	104	senryū 諷刺	28	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106	shōsetsu-ka 小説家	160
seime 生命	368	senryū 諷刺	28	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106	shōtai 招待	167
seimitsu 精密	176	senryū 諷刺	28	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106	shoten 書店	331
seinen 青年	227	senryū 諷刺	28	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106	shoten 書店	331
Seio 西欧	200	senryū 諷刺	28	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106	shoto 小島	54
seirei 精霊	344	senryū 諷刺	28	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106	shotoku 所得	236
seiri 整理	214	senryū 諷刺	28	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106	Shōtoku Iai-shi 聖徳太子	128
seiryoku 勢力	128	senryū 諷刺	28	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106	shōtotsu 衝突	344
seisaku 政策	200	senryū 諷刺	28	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106	-shu 一冊	57
seisan 生産	116	senryū 諷刺	28	shu 手	186	shinda 死んだ	344	shingō 信号	106		

shū 週	47	sōgō-zasshi 総合雑誌	186	soshō 訴訟	296	supido スピード	268	tada-ima ただいま	330	tanjō 誕生	208
shū 一集	224	soitsu そいつ	307	sō-sū 総数	260	supōsu スポーツ	92	tadashii 正しい	154	tanjō-bi 誕生日	208
shūchū 集中	143	sōji そうじ	92	soto 外	38, 66	supū スープ	114	tagaini 互いに	215	tannaru 単なる	356
shūdan 集団	272	soko そこ	11, 15	sotsugyō 卒業	152	sureba すれば	278	ta-gaku 多価	308	tanaru 単なる	356
shufu 主婦	186	sokudo そこ	274	sotsugyō-sha 卒業生	152	suru する	64	ta-hata 田畑	248	tanomu 頼む	208
shugaku 就学	152	sokudo 速度	283	sū 一数	188, 260	...ni suru	58, 128	-tai -たい	154, 158	tanoshii 楽しい	71
Shugakuin-rikyū 修学院難宮	148	sokudo-seigen	283	subarashii すばらしい	94	o...suru	54	-tai mon desu	368	tanoshimi 楽しみ	239
shūgaku-ritsu 就学率	152	sokuten-kyōshi	356	subete すべて	188	suruto すると	246	-tai 一体	164	tanoshimu 楽しむ	310
Shūgin 衆議院	308	sonai 相談	296	sude-ni すでに	224	susamaji すさまじい	272	-tai 一隊	320	tansu たんす	272
Shūgin-gin 衆議院議員	308	sonna そんな	27, 164	sue 求	138	susanda すさんだ	347	taifu 台風	68	tantō 担当	320
shūhen 周辺	272	sonna-ni	27, 31	Suēden スウェーデン	140	sushi すし	58	taigun 大軍	200	taoreru 倒れる	308
shūhen 周辺	272	sono なのに	27, 31	sūgaku 数学	167	sushiya すし屋	114	taihen たいへん	23, 27, 66	-tara -たら	274, 278
shūhin 手法	332	sono 26, 28	26, 28	sugata 姿	347	suso すそ	104	tain 温泉	342	...tarazu ...たらず	294
shujin 主人	365	sono hoka	68, 166	...sugi ...過ぎ	358	susumeru 進める	272	Taika-no-kaishin	128	-tari ...たり	83, 87
shūkaku 収帳	95	sono go	262	(...ni) suginai	308	susumeru 勧める	275	大化の改新	128	-tari, ...tari	87
shūkan 習慣	151	sono go	262	(...に) すきない	308	sutau 進む	116	taiki 大気	272	tashika 確か	138, 322
shūkan 週刊	186	sono hoka	68, 166	sugiru 過ぎる	283	sutauru スタイル	104	taiki-osen 大気汚染	296	tasū 多数	344
shūkan-shi 週刊誌	186	sono go	262	-sugiru ...すぎる	335	sutafando スタンド	16	taiko 太鼓	248	tatakawasu 戦わす	320
shukkin 出勤	262	sono kowari	59, 208	sugu すぐ	106	sutareru すたれる	259	taiki-koku 大國	296	tataku たたく	269
shūkyō 宗教	344	sono uchi	152, 227	sugu soko	106	-sute 一捨て	190	kaipu タイプ	172	tatari たたり	344
shumi 趣味	42	sono ue	272	sugu (-ni) すぐ(に)	235	sutereo ステレオ	47	kaipu-raito	286	taichi タチ	286
Shunbun 春分	322	sōon 癒合	222	sugureta すぐれた	176	suteru 捨てる	190	タイプライター	28	tatemono 建飾	22
shuppan-sha 出版社	199	sora 空	71	suigin 水銀	296	sutoroiki ストライキ	317	tairiku 大陸	200	tateru 立てる	80
shuppatsu 出発	113	Sui-yōbi 水曜日	76	suigin chūdoku 水銀中毒	296	sōtsu スーツ	211	taiki-osen 大気汚染	296	tateru 建てて	128
shūri 修理	199	suisan-gyō 水産業	116	sui-yōbi 水曜日	76	sūto すーと	346	taisei 休閑	128	tatoeba たとえば	186
shurui 種類	34	Suwaru すわー	124	suiji 筈	346	suyasuya すやすや	269	taishu 太史	79	tatsu たつ	130
shusai 主催	55	suzushi 涼しい	118	zukejōru スケジュール	220	suzushi 涼しい	118	Taishi 太子	128	tatsu たつ	365
shōshi 修士	152	Sore mo sō (da)	342	sukēto スケート	239	taisō たいそう	368	taisō たいそう	368	tazuneru 尋ねる	101, 131
shōshi-katei 修士課程	152	sore ni	114	suki 好き	154, 159	(...ni) taisuru	308	(...に) 対する	308	te 手	232
shōshoku 就職	125	sore yori	342	suki スキー	239	ta 田	248	taitei たいてい	27, 42, 46	te o toru	368
shōshū 収束	43	sorede それで	58	sukari スキ	239	-ta 一た	94, 98	taitei タイトル	214	-te	87
shusetsu 出張	244	soredewa それでは	17	sukkari すっかり	106	-ta mama	119, 123	taiyō タイヤ	22	-te-ageru	
shutō 出張	47	soreja それじゃあ	139	sukkiri (to) すっきり(と)	270	loboko たばこ	16	taiyō 太陽	323	てあける	202, 207
shutō-ryōkō 出張旅行	59	soreka それから	275	sukoshi 少し	47	loboko o suu	53	taizai 滞在	138	-te-aru ーてある	250, 254
shuto 首都	17	Sō-ren ソ連	68	sukoshi mo...nai	77	loboko-o suu	57	takai 高い	138	-te-chōdai	
shuto-ken 首都圏	272	Sōrento ソレント	166	suku すく	161	taberomo 食べ物	136	Taketori Monogatari	224	てちょうだい	343
shuyō 主要	260	soretomo それとも	102	sukunai 少ない	68	taberu 食べる	46	-te-goran ーてごらん	198	te-iku ーていく	254
sō そう	10, 14, 27	Sorewa-sorewa	186	sukunakutomo	233	tabi 旅	347	te-ku ーてくる	126, 184, 255	te-made ーてまで	287
Sō desu ka	19	sore-zore それぞれ	186	sumi すみ	212	tabi-saki 旅先	347	-te-kudasi	106, 110	-te-kureru	
sō 暑	320	soroban そろばん	148	sumi すみ	35	tabun たぶん	162, 230	tame ため	310, 314	tamashii 魂	92
sō 就	334, 338	sore-sore そろそろ	267, 270	Sumitomo 住友	260	tachi たち	11	tameru ためる	316	tana たな	331
sō- 総一	236	sorotte そろって	166	Sumitomo 住友	83	tachi-aru	356	tana たな	331	Tanabata たなばた	80
soba そば	35	sorou そろう	246	sumō o toru	83	tachi-noboru	347	Tango no Sekku	80	端午の節句	80
soba そば	238	sōryo 僧侶	188	sumō-gu スモッグ	296	tada ただ	115, 298	tango 単語	154		
sobo soba	238	sosen 祖先	344	sumu 進む	83						
sobo soba	238	sōsenkyō 総選挙	304	sumu 進む	83						
sochira そちら	15	soshiki 組織	260	sunde-iru 住んでいる	83						
sōdan 相談	222	sōshiki 葬式	344	sunde-iru 遊んでいる	92						
soderu 育てる	202	sō shita naka de	308	Supein スペイン	56						
sode そで	104	soshite そして	46, 51	Supein-gu スペイン語	56						
sōgō 総合	186			supichi スピーチ	211						



-te ne ーてね 222  
te-oku  
ーておく 250, 254  
te-shimau  
ーてしまう 247, 255  
te,...-te 87  
-tewa ikenai  
ーてはいけない 107, 111  
-te-yuku ーてゆく 368  
fēburu テーブル 40  
fēburu-kurosu  
テーブルクロス 365  
tegami 手紙 53  
te-goro 手ごころ 310  
tei- 鉄一 176  
tei-chingin 低賃金 176  
teien 庭園 284  
teika 定価 55  
teinei ーてない 164  
tei-on 伝音 311  
teiryū-jo 停留所 100  
teitai 停滯 272  
-teki ー的 128  
teki-suru 通ずる 104  
tekka 鉄火 114  
tekkō 鉄鍋 260  
-temo ii desu  
ーてもいいです 107, 111  
ten 点 106, 152, 366  
ten-in 店員 238  
tenisu テニス 126  
tenisu-shūzu  
テニス・シューズ 127  
tenki 天気 70  
Tennō 天皇 128  
Tennō-ke 天皇家 128  
tenpo テンポ 272  
tenfo テント 102  
tenran-kai 展覧会 221  
teppō 鉄砲 200  
tēpu テープ 154  
tera 寺 78  
terebi テレビ 40  
terebi-komasharu  
テレビ・コマmercial 287  
terebik-ko テレビっ子 140  
tesaki 手先 176  
tesū-ryō 手数料 151  
tetsu 鉄 116  
-tetsu ー鉄 64  
tetsudō 鉄道 136  
tetsuya 徹夜 161  
tetsuzuki 手続き 76

to とも 39, 58, 74  
...to ieba 274  
...to iu 130, 134, 135  
...to iu koto ni naru 299  
...to iu yori 310  
...to omou 134  
...to shite 104  
-to ーと 274, 279  
-tō ー党 320  
tobu 飛ぶ 100  
tochi 土地 200  
todokeru 届ける 331  
todomeru とどめる 284  
tōgi 討議 320  
Tōhoku 東北 272  
tōhyō 投票 308  
tōi 通い 28  
toi-awase 問い合わせ 167  
tōji 当時 104  
toi-kata 間い方 212  
tōjō 登場 356  
tōjō-jinbutsu  
登場人物 356  
...tōka ーとか 140  
tokai 都会 152  
Tōkaidō-sen 東海道線 143  
tokaku (ni) とかく(に) 275  
tokai とき 119, 122  
...toki ni 130  
toki niwa 284  
tokidoki とときどき 46  
toki-ori 時おり 346  
tokoro-no-ma 床の間 271  
tokoro 所 136, 227  
tokoro-ko ところ 310, 314  
tokorode ところで 42  
tokoroga とこが 399  
toku 通く 232  
tōku 通く 83  
tōku no 75  
tokubetsu 特別 105  
tokuchō 特産 284  
Tokugawa 徳川 200  
tokui- 得意 170, 173  
tokuni 特に 140  
tokutei 特定 224  
Tōkyō 東京 17  
Tōkyō-eki 東京駅 17  
tomaru 泊まる 102  
tomaru 止まる 113  
tomato-jūsu  
トマト・ジュース 160

...tomo ...とも 104  
...tomo ...とも 139  
tomodachi 友だち 64  
tonari 隣 40  
tonbo とんぼ 154  
tonneru トンネル 274  
ton-ton トントン 269  
toroberōzu-chekku  
トラベラーズ・チェック 174  
toranjisulā  
トランジスター 198  
loranjisulā-rajio  
トランジスター・ラジオ 268  
tori 鳥 41  
tōri 通り 107  
tōri とおり 311, 315  
-tōri ー通り 329  
tori-ire 取り入れ 92  
tori-reru 取り入れる 93  
torikumu 取り組む 296  
torimaku 取り巻く 355  
tōron 討論 335  
toru 取る 71, 282  
tōru 通る 90, 280  
tōsan 倒産 304  
Tōsa Nikki 土佐日記 224  
toshi 年 92  
toshi 都市 149  
toshin 都心 143  
toshiyori 年寄り 259  
tosho 図書 17  
toshō-kan 図書館 234  
tōsu 通す 234  
tōtei...nai 355  
...tōte ーとて...ない 355  
totemo (tottemo)  
とても 27, 47, 274  
tōtō ととう 365  
totsuzen 突然 262  
...totte (totte) ...とて 176  
...totte-kuru ...とて来る 127  
Toyotomi Hideyoshi  
豊臣秀吉 200  
tou 問う 213  
tōzen 当然 332  
-tsu ーつ 39  
tsue つづ 292  
tsugi 次 30  
tsugi ni 164  
tsugō 都合 307  
tsugu 次ぐ 141  
tsui つい 262  
...tsuide ...とて...ない 140

tsuikyū 追家 356  
tsuitachi ついたち 76  
...tsuite  
...に...ついて 104  
tsuite-iku ついていく 319  
...tsujite  
...を...通じて 344  
tsukaki-kata 使い方 286  
tsukamaeru  
つかまえる 196  
tsukare 疲れる 95  
tsukareru 疲れる 47  
tsukau 使う 107, 124  
ki o tsukau 107  
-tsuke ーつけ 162  
tsukeru つける 92, 125, 162  
hi o tsukeru →hi  
ue 上 34, 38  
tsuki 月 92  
-tsuki ー付き 150  
tsuki-mi 月見 92  
tsūkin 通動 272  
tsūkō 通行 283  
tsuku 着く 70  
tsukue 机 34  
tsukuri-dasu 作り出す 332  
tsukuru 作る 71  
tsuma 妻 138  
tsumami つまみ 311  
tsumarana つまらない 28  
tsumari つまり 152  
tsumetai 冷たい 71  
tsumori つもり 210, 215, 219  
tsunagaru つながる 344  
tsune ni 常に 284  
tsupisu ツーピース 104  
tsurai つらい 262  
tsurayuki 責へ 224  
tsureru 遅れる 92  
...tsurete  
...に...つれて 296  
tsurete-iku 遅れていく 114  
Tsurezure-gusa  
徒然草 332  
tsuri つり 55  
tsuri つり 186  
tsuru つる 186  
tsuri-ba  
つり場 323  
tsuri-zuki  
つり好き 323  
tsutaeru 伝える 128  
tsutomeru 勧める 139

tsutsumu 包む 343  
tsuyoi 強い 22  
tsuyu つゆ 94  
tsuyu 露 368  
tsuyu-ake つゆ明け 94  
tsuzukeru 続ける 167  
-tsuzukeru ー続ける 299  
tsuzuku 続く 118  
-tte? ーって 282, 315

uri-ba 売り場 11  
uru 売る 140  
ushi 牛 80  
ushi-kai 牛飼い 80  
ushinau 失う 347  
ushiro うしろ 35, 38  
ushiro-sugata うしろ姿 347  
usu-kimi-warui  
薄気味悪い 212  
uta 歌 83, 368  
utagoe 歌声 245  
utau 歌う 82  
utsu 打つ 172  
utsukushi 美しい 68  
uchi うち 190  
utsukushi-a 美しさ 284  
utsuru 移る 128  
uttae 訴え 128  
uttaeru 訴える 222

# W

wa は 10, 14, 351  
wa 輪 119  
...wa ...か 159  
-wa ー羽 39  
Wa-Eijiten 和英辞典 154  
waga わが 128  
waga-kuni わが国 128  
waka 和歌 295  
wakai 若い 28  
waka-mono 若者 190  
wakare 別れ 164  
wakareru 別れる 130  
wakaru わかる 128, 170  
wake 訳 191, 322, 327  
wake no wakaranai 212  
wakeru 分ける 280  
Wakō 渡辺 200  
wa ne わね 102  
wompisu ワンピース 104  
wan-wan ワンワン 269  
warai 笑い 119, 212  
warai-goe 笑い声 119  
warai-dasu 笑い出す 352  
warau 笑う 119  
ware 我 346  
ware ni kaeru 346  
wariai 割合 322  
...wari ni  
の割りに 322  
warui 悪い 162  
waru 壊れる 238  
Wa-shoku 和食 114

Wasshoi, wasshoi		Yayoi-bunka 弥生文化	128
わっしよい わっしよい	319	Yayoi-jidai 弥生時代	128
wasure-mono 忘れ物	247	yo よ	27, 31
wasureru 忘れる	127	...yo ...よ	307
wataru 渡る	80	-yō よう	214, 218
watashi わたし	11	yō 用	364
watashi-domo		yō- 洋一	104
わたしども	235	-yō 一用	154
watashi-tachi		-yō 一様	354
わたしたち	11	yo-ake 夜明け	94
wazawaza わざわざ	210	-yobi 一曜日	47
wazuka わずか	236	yōbō 予防	344
wazurawashiku		yōbu 呼ぶ	139, 196
わずらわしく	347	yōchi 用地	367
		yō よう	334, 339
		yō-na ような	339
		yō-ni ように	339
		...yō-ni naru	
		...ようになる	344, 356
ya や	34, 39	yo-dōshi 夜通し	119
...ya ...や	284	yō-fuku 洋服	104
Ya やあ	19	yōgore よこれ	272
-ya 一屋	57	yōgoreru よこれる	116
yōdo ヤード	42	yoi よい	78
yagate やがて	71	yōin 要因	260
yahari (=yappari)		yōji 用事	164
やはり	294	Yokkaichi 四日市	296
yake ni naru		yoko 横	35
やけになる	347	yokattara よかったら	275
yaku 約	116	yoku よく	47
yaku 焼く	352	-yoku 一浴	118
yakunin 役人	104	yomi-gana 読みがな	188
yakusha 役者	258	yomi-kata 読み方	188
yakusoku 約束	284	yomi-mono 読み物	224
yakuwari 役割り	344	yōmō 羊毛	176
yakyū 野球	127	yomu 読む	47
yama 山	23	yonaka 夜中	92
yama-goya 山小屋	102	(...ni) yoreba	
yama-michi 山道	71	(...に)よれば	334
yama-yama 山々	118	...yori ...より	128, 146
yameru やめる	221, 316	yorokobu 喜ぶ	139
yamu やむ	89	yorokonde 喜んで	367
yane 屋根	31	Yoroppo ヨーロッパ	124
yappari やっぱり	270	yoroshii よろしい	368
...yara ...やら	222	yoroshikattara	
yaru やる	127	よろしかったら	366
yasai 野菜	197	(Dōzo) yoroshiku	
yasashii やさしい	28	(どうぞ)よろしく	18
Yasuda 安田	260	(...ni) yoroshiku	
yasui 安い	28	(...に)よろしく	164
yasumi 休み	47	yoru 夜	260
yasumu 休む	47	yoru osoku 夜おそく	140
yatte-kuru やってくる	318	(...ni) yoru (...に)よる	176
yatto やっと	296		
yawarakai 柔らかい	352		

yo-sa よさ	298	zenbu 残念	173
yoru 誇る	210	zannen nagara	222
yo-sasō よさそう	338	zaseki 座席	59
yōshi 用紙	175	zaseki-shitei-ken	
yō-shiki 洋式	150	座席指定券	59
yōsho 洋書	187	zasshi 雑誌	140
yōsho-bu 洋書部	187	zā-zā ザーザー	269
yosō 予想	212	Zeami 世阿弥	248
yosu よす	319	zēhi ゼビ	119
yōsu 様子	164, 226	zei 税	55
Yotsuya 四谷	30	zeikin 税金	151
(...ni) yotte (...に)よって	194	-zen (=sen) 一千	151
you 酔う	262	zenbu 全部	34
yowai 弱い	197		
yowameru 弱める	308		
yoyaku 予約	317		
yū- ター	95		
yūbe ゆうべ	58		
yūbin 郵便	11		
yūbin-kyoku 郵便局	11		
yūdai 雄大	102		
yūgata 夕方	119		
yūgen 幽玄	248		
yū-hi 夕日	95		
yūjin 友人	191		
yuki 雪	68		
yuki-guni 雪国	274		
yukkuri (to) ゆっくり(と)	47, 267		
(-te)-yuku (-て)ゆく	368		
yume 夢	184		
yume o miru	184		
yūmei 有名	22		
...de yūmei	23		
yūniku ユニーク	95		
yuragu 揺るぐ	368		
yureru 揺れる	368		
yure-ugoku 揺れ動く	368		
yurusu 許す	200		
yū-ryō 有料	282		
yū-ryō-dōro 有料道路	282		
yushutsu 輸出	176		
yushutsu-hin 輸出品	176		
yuttari-shita			
ゆったりした	246		
yū-yami タヤミ	368		

# Z

-za 一座	258
zaibatsu 財閥	260
zaisei 財政	128
zaisei-teki 財政的	128

zenbu de	34
zenbun 前文	164
zendo 全土	296
zen'in 全員	247
zenkoku 全国	47
zenkoku-shi 全国紙	140
zenkoku-teki 全国的	186
Zen'yaku 前略	164
zenshū 全集	275
zentai 全体	68
zentai ni	68
zenzen...nai	173
全然...ない	

zeppan 絶版	304
zōka 増加	152
-zoku 一族	140
zōsen 造船	176
zubon ブゾン	268
zuibun ずいぶん	116
zukei 図形	284
-zuki 一軒き	323
zōmu renzu	
ズーム・レンズ	54
...zutsu ...ずつ	35
zutto ずっと	77, 142



# 日本地図

